

A detailed anatomical illustration of a male runner in profile, facing right. The muscles are color-coded: purple for the upper back and shoulder area, red for the chest and upper arm, orange for the neck and shoulder blades, and light blue for the lower back, legs, and feet. The runner is in a mid-stride position, with the right leg forward and the left leg pushing off the ground.

# SCIENCE *of*

ANALYSE YOUR TECHNIQUE, PREVENT INJURY, REVOLUTIONIZE YOUR TRAINING

# RUNNING

**Chris Napier, PhD**





# SCIENCE *of*

ANALYSE YOUR TECHNIQUE, PREVENT INJURY, REVOLUTIONIZE YOUR TRAINING

# RUNNING

**Chris Napier, PhD**



Penguin  
Random  
House

Senior Editor **Salima Hirani**  
 Senior Designer **Clare Joyce**  
 Project Editor **Shashwati Tia Sarkar**  
 Project Art Editor **Philip Gamble**  
 Editor **Megan Lea**  
 Designer **Alison Gardner**  
 Editorial Assistant **Kiron Gill**  
 Producer, Pre-Production  
**David Almond**  
 Producer **Francesca Sturiale**  
 Jacket Designer **Amy Cox**  
 Jacket Co-ordinator **Lucy Philpott**

Senior Editor **Alastair Laing**  
 Managing Editor **Dawn Henderson**  
 Managing Art Editor  
**Marianne Markham**  
 Art Director **Maxine Pedliham**  
 Publishing Director  
**Mary-Clare Jerram**

Illustrations **Arran Lewis**

First published in Great Britain in 2020  
 by Dorling Kindersley Limited,  
 80 Strand, London, WC2R 0RL

Imported into the EEA  
 by Dorling Kindersley Verlag GmbH,  
 Arnulfstr. 124, 80636 Munich, Germany

Copyright © 2020 Dorling Kindersley Limited  
 A Penguin Random House Company  
 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1  
 001-315326-Feb/2020

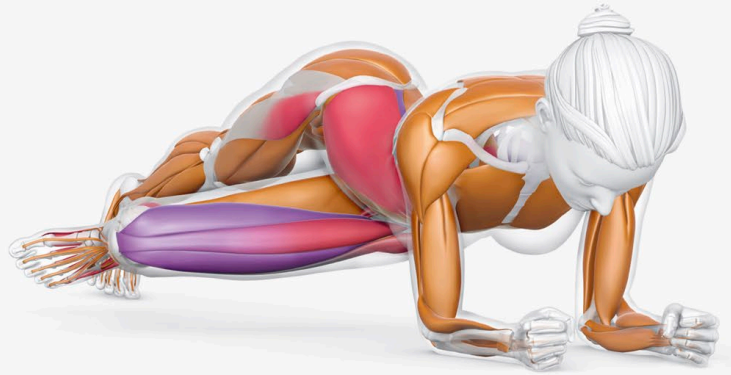
All rights reserved. No part of this publication may  
 be reproduced, stored in or introduced into a  
 retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form, or by  
 any means (electronic, mechanical, photocopying,  
 recording, or otherwise), without the prior  
 written permission of the copyright owner.

A CIP catalogue record for this book  
 is available from the British Library.  
 ISBN: 978-0-2413-9451-9  
 Printed and bound in China.

A WORLD OF IDEAS:  
**SEE ALL THERE IS TO KNOW**  
[www.dk.com](http://www.dk.com)

# CONTENTS

Foreword	6	Deep gluteal syndrome	62
Introduction	8	Gluteal tendinopathy	62
Terminology guide	10	Stress fracture	63
<b>RUNNING ANATOMY</b>	12	Avoiding injury	64
		Running cycle	66
		Individual gait	70
		Running form	74
		Running routine	76
How we run	14	<b>DYNAMIC STRETCHES</b>	
Mechanics of movement	16	Forward leg swing	78
Powering movement	32	Side leg swing	80
Controlling movement	38	Calf stretch	82
External factors	46	<b>DRILLS</b>	
<b>PREVENTING INJURY</b>	52	Running As	84
		Running Bs	85
		Running Cs	86
		Strides	87
		Bounding	88
		Carioca	89
		<b>RECOVERY STRETCHES</b>	
		Modified pigeon	90
		TFL ball release	92
		Piriformis ball release	94
Injury risks	54		
<b>COMMON INJURIES</b>	56		
Patellofemoral pain	57		
Achilles tendinopathy	58		
Medial tibial stress syndrome (MTSS)	59		
Plantar heel pain	60		
Iliotibial band pain	61		



## STRENGTH EXERCISES

96

Planning your drills

98

### FOOT AND ANKLE

Foot doming

100

Resisted toe

104

Heel drop

108

Ankle turn out

112

Ankle turn in

114

### HIP AND KNEE

Hip hike

118

Step down

120

Step up

122

Standing hip rotation

126

Hip extension

130

Traditional deadlift

132

Single leg ball squat

136

Hamstring ball roll-in

140

Lunge

142

## CORE

Front plank with rotation 144

Side plank with rotation 148

Box jump 150

Single leg hop 154

## HOW TO TRAIN

156

Why train? 158

Your training goals 160

Assessing your fitness 162

Tracking your training 168

Training tips 170

Choosing and using a training plan 176

Easy continuous running 180

Fast continuous running 181

Interval training 184

Hill training 186

Cross training 187

## THE TRAINING PROGRAMMES

188

Beginner 5km 190

Beginner 10km 192

Advanced 10km 194

Beginner half marathon 198

Advanced half marathon 200

Beginner marathon 204

Advanced marathon 206

Racing tips 210

Glossary 214

Index 216

Bibliography 222

About the authors and acknowledgements 224

# FOREWORD

**Running is easy.** You just put one foot in front of the other and go. So why learn the science behind it? When you scratch the surface, you find there is more to this biomechanical and physiological phenomenon than meets the eye. If your aim is to enhance performance and prevent injury, familiarizing yourself with the science behind running can help you achieve your goals and take more pleasure in a sport that millions enjoy worldwide.

## WHY RUN?

There are many good reasons to run, in addition to the sheer pleasure of it. Regular running is associated with many health benefits that can improve your quality of life. Running makes you stronger and healthier, and as your body becomes increasingly robust in response to this dynamic activity, you become less likely to develop disease or physical disability.

Recreational running can help prevent obesity, hypertension, type 2 diabetes, osteoarthritis, respiratory disease, and cancer, and improves sleep quality. Even in low doses, running is associated with a substantial reduction in risk of death from all causes, including cardiovascular disease.

The psychological benefits of recreational running include stress relief, mood boosts, and potentially

protection against depression, anxiety, and dementia. Social interaction through running groups and involvement in group events such as Parkrun also improves wellbeing.

While the health potentials involved are clearly considerable, running is not without its own risks. In fact, certain injuries are associated specifically with running, “runner’s knee” being one example. However, there is much you can do to mitigate the risks, and that is where the science comes in.

## USING THE SCIENCE

As a physiotherapist I have helped thousands of runners, from novice to elite, continue with the activity they love. My work is informed by my research into running-related injury, and I have seen time and again in my clients how an understanding of why injury occurs, and how best to recover, can improve their experience of running.

But the science of running can help with more than just injury prevention. If you want to improve as a runner, understanding the physiology and biomechanics involved is a game changer. Small adjustments in form can lead to big improvements if you know what to look out for and how to address it. And even a modest strength-training programme can reap rewards on the roads, trails, or track, if

“ ”

***Regular running is associated with many health benefits that improve quality of life***

you know which exercises target the key muscle groups used in running.

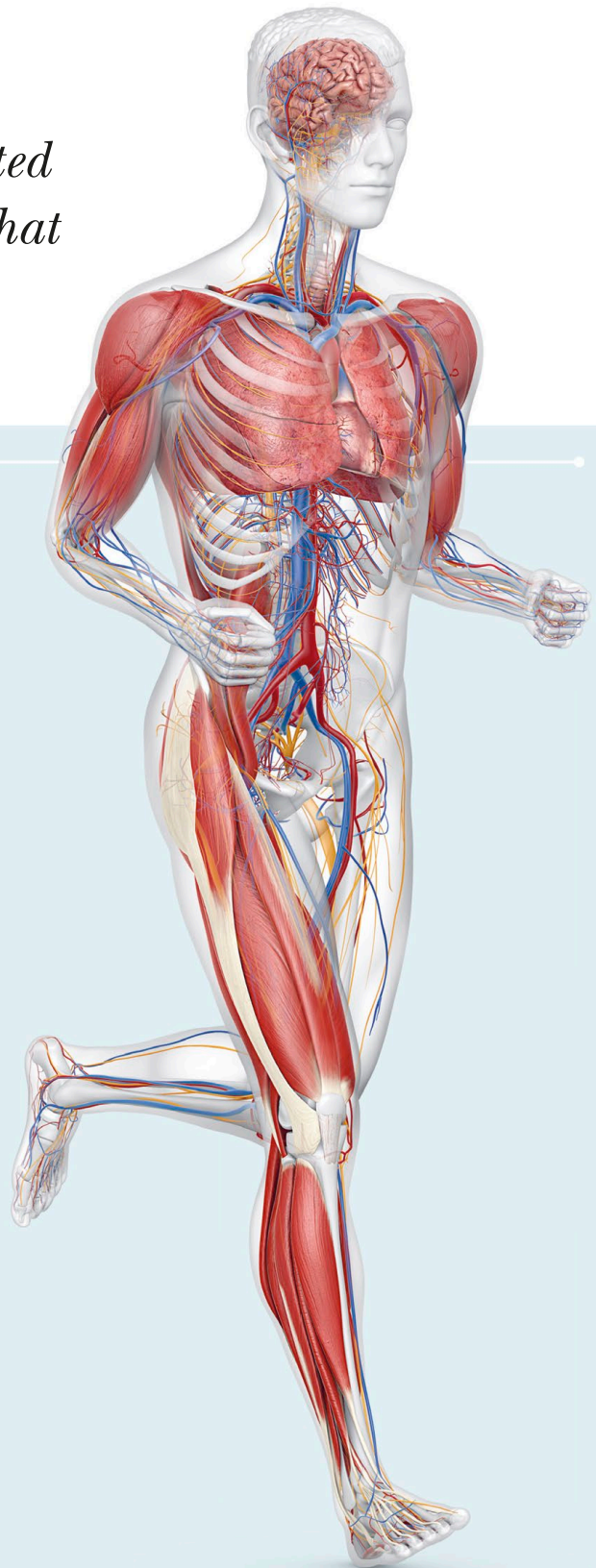
Runners are known for having an obsession with numbers, from tracking mileage to recording personal bests, but knowing how to use the data to maximize performance is what makes the difference. Similarly, knowing how your body works allows you to work with it optimally. To be a better runner, you should know which types of training make you faster, which exercises make you stronger, and which race-day strategies help you perform at your best. Jerry Ziak, my co-author on the chapter *How to Train*, is an experienced coach who has designed thousands of training programmes for athletes of all levels. We hope the knowledge we share enhances your performance and training experience, and helps you enjoy a lifetime of pain-free running.



**Chris Napier, PT, PhD**

*Sport Physiotherapist*

2:33 marathon PB



# INTRODUCTION

**When it comes to running, a little knowledge can take you a long way towards enhancing performance and preventing injury. This book offers the latest research into running biomechanics alongside advice on training techniques that have been proven to work under laboratory conditions, on the track, and out on the trails.**

“ ”  
*Understanding  
how your  
body responds  
to running  
enables you to  
optimize speed,  
strength, and  
performance*

## ABOUT THIS BOOK

No matter what your level of ability, motivations, or goals may be, applying the science of running to your training, with this book as your guide, will bring you significant benefits as a runner.

Chapter one, *Running Anatomy*, delves into the physiology of running. It will help you to understand what happens within your body in order to enable you to run, as well as what your body needs to be able to do so optimally.

Chapter two, *Preventing Injury*, explores how running-related injuries occur. It outlines measures you can take to reduce your own risk of injury, or recover quickly if you do become injured, which is likely at some point.

All runners can improve their form and running experience by incorporating into their training regime some or all of the *Strength Exercises* in chapter three. These have been specially selected to target the most important muscle groups in running, to make them strong enough to withstand the impact and training load of endurance running. These exercises are also valuable to the injured runner looking to rehabilitate.

Chapter four, *How to Train*, outlines all you need to know to train effectively and safely. Whether you want to learn how to design a bespoke training plan and adapt it as you progress, are looking for a race-specific plan to help you prepare for a particular event, or need a walk-run programme that will take you from zero to 5K safely and quickly, this chapter provides expert guidance to help you meet those personal targets and succeed at racing.

### A note on terminology

On pages 10–11 you will find illustrated definitions of the clinical terms used to describe body movements. Being able to follow these terms as you study the subject of running enables you to understand the movements involved accurately, and you can apply this understanding to your own anatomy and running gait. Knowledge of these terms will also help you to follow the instructions for the strength exercises in this book.



# MYTH BUSTING

Runners quickly discover that there is plenty of contradictory advice out there. With so much conflicting information readily available, running can become a confusing subject to explore. Do not be misguided by the common myths shown here, which have all been debunked by research.

## MYTH

“ ”

*Running will hurt my knees and result in arthritis when I am older*

## FACT

### HELPS TO PREVENT OSTEOARTHRITIS

There is growing evidence to show that recreational running can protect against the development of knee osteoarthritis. There is also evidence to suggest that even if you have osteoarthritis, running may not make it worse, and could in fact improve the associated symptoms.

“ ”

*I was injured because I didn't stretch enough before I ran*

### YOU SHOULD DO DYNAMIC STRETCHING

Research shows that static stretching does not reduce the risk of injury, and can actually decrease performance. It will not assist in recovery post-workout, but may improve joint flexibility and aid relaxation. Include dynamic stretching (involving movement) as part of a general warm up (see p.76).

“ ”

*I was injured because I wore the wrong shoes for my foot type*

### SHOE TYPE DOES NOT MATTER

Evidence is lacking to support the idea that any particular shoe type, whether minimalist, maximalist, traditional, or otherwise, can help to prevent injury. Runners should, however, avoid any rapid changes in shoe type (see p.64) and monitor their overall training load (see pp.168–69) to reduce their risk of injury.

“ ”

*I should do high-rep, low-resistance strength training to build the strength I need for running*

### HIGH-RESISTANCE TRAINING IS BEST

This is a misconception. Muscular endurance is improved during running, so endurance exercises should not be the focus of resistance training. A heavy resistance-training programme, twice weekly for six weeks or longer, has been shown to improve running performance and reduce injury risk.

“ ”

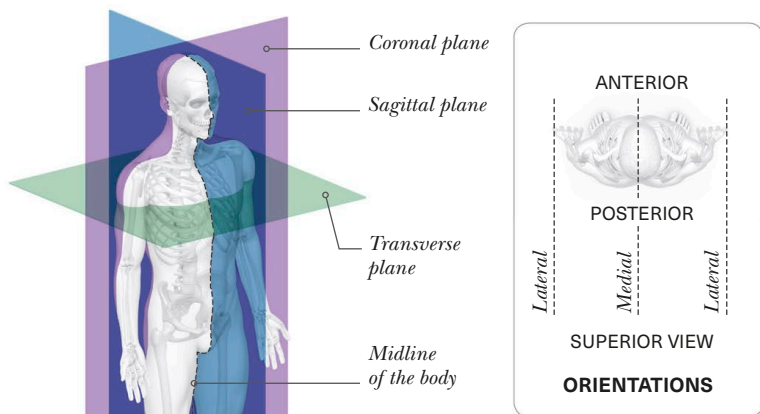
*If I want to run faster and be injury-free, I need to forefoot strike*

### NEITHER FOOTSTRIKE PATTERN IS BETTER

The idea that a forefoot strike reduces injury risk and improves running economy is false. While the type of injury may vary depending on where on your foot you land, the overall incidence of injury does not vary between rearfoot and forefoot strikers.

# TERMINOLOGY GUIDE

The body's joints accommodate a range of movements, and each type of movement can be described precisely using the terms illustrated here. I use these terms throughout this book, notably in the instructions for strength exercises on pages 100–155, so mark this page for easy reference.



## PLANES OF MOTION

### PLANES OF MOTION

Three imaginary lines drawn through the body form the planes. Movements parallel to a line fall within its plane. Forward-backward movements occur within the sagittal plane; side-to-side movements fall within the coronal or frontal plane; rotational movements occur within the transverse plane.

## Hip

Being a ball-and-socket joint (see p.21), the hip joint is capable of a large range of motion in multiple planes of movement. The hip is able to move into flexion/extension, adduction/abduction, and internal/external rotation.



**ADDUCTION**  
The thigh moves inwards towards the midline.



**ABDUCTION**  
The thigh moves away from the midline.



**EXTERNAL ROTATION**  
The thigh rotates outwards.



**INTERNAL ROTATION**  
The thigh rotates inwards.

## Ankle and foot

There are more than 30 joints in the ankle and foot, allowing for complex and varied movements. The ankle, primarily a hinge joint (see p.20), produces dorsiflexion and plantarflexion. Eversion and

inversion occur at the subtalar joint, just below the ankle. Movements such as pronation and supination are combined movements, involving the foot and ankle.



**DORSIFLEXION**  
Bending at the ankle so that the toes point upwards.



**PLANTARFLEXION**  
Bending at the ankle so that the toes point downwards.



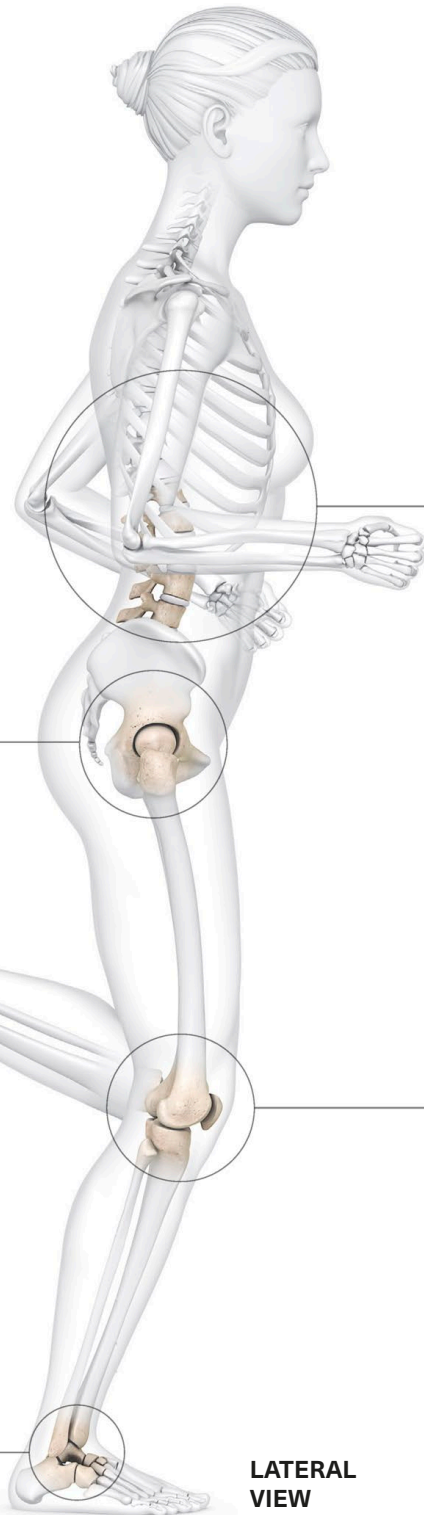
**EVERSION**  
Turning at the ankle so that the sole of the foot faces outwards.



**INVERSION**  
Turning at the ankle so that the sole of the foot faces inwards.



**PRONATION**  
Combination of dorsiflexion, eversion, and abduction.



**LATERAL VIEW**



**EXTENSION**

The thigh extends backwards, straightening the body at the hip.



**FLEXION**

The thigh moves forwards, bending the body at the hip.



**SUPINATION**

Combination of plantar-flexion, inversion, and adduction.

**Spine**

The spine provides structural support for the upper body and transfers loads between lower and upper body. It is capable of flexion, extension, rotation, side flexion, and combinations of these.



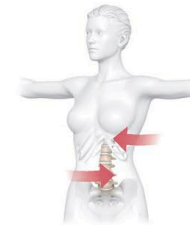
**EXTENSION**

Bending at the waist to move the torso backwards.



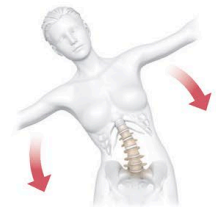
**FLEXION**

Bending at the waist to move the torso forwards.



**ROTATION**

Turning the trunk to the right or left on the midline.



**SIDE FLEXION**

Bending the trunk to the right or left from the midline.

**Knee**

The knee, a modified hinge joint (see p.20), sustains loads of up to 10 times body weight during running. Flexion and extension are the main movements, although it is also capable of some abduction/adduction and internal/external rotation.



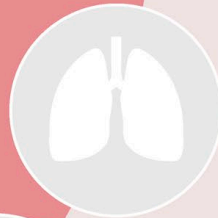
**FLEXION**

Bending at the knee, which decreases the joint angle.



**EXTENSION**

Straightening at the knee, which increases the joint angle.



# RUNNING ANATOMY

**Running motion requires the body to work like a complex machine,** with many functions taking place simultaneously in order to achieve this dynamic action. An understanding of the biomechanics and physiology involved can help you improve your performance and keep yourself safe and injury-free. This chapter explores the body systems that enable running and explains which particular system can be adapted to help you become a faster, more efficient runner.



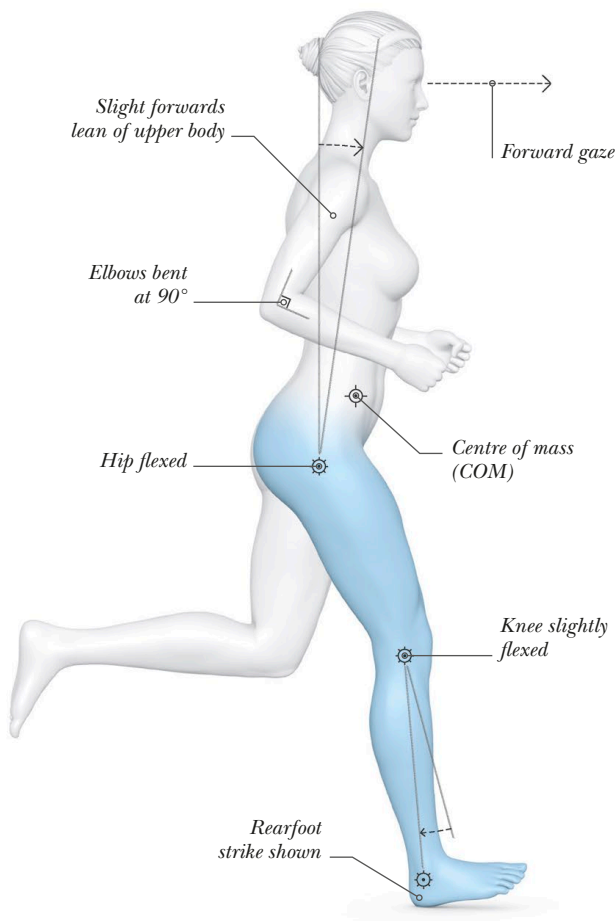


# HOW WE RUN

The simple act of putting one foot in front of the other requires the integration of muscles, joints, and the nervous system. Each component is important for optimal performance, technique, and safety, and with a little understanding of anatomy, each can be improved through training.

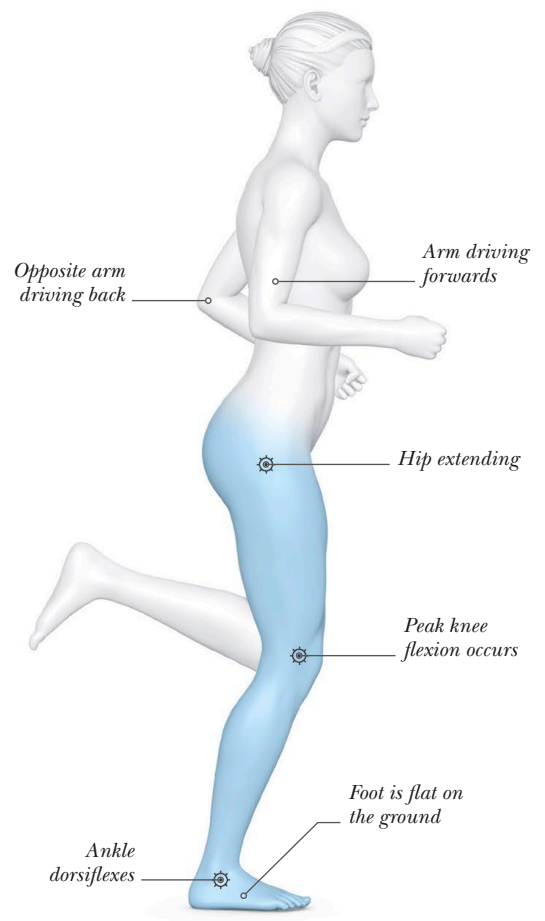
## THE RUNNING CYCLE

When you run, your body combines specific joint and muscle actions to enable each leg to perform a sequence of movements in tandem with the other. This cycle is repeated thousands of times during a run. The running cycle is defined by four key events in the sequence: initial contact, midstance, toe-off, and swing. With each step, the body manages the significant ground reaction force (GRF, see pp.46–47) experienced on impact and recycles the energy into the next step.



### INITIAL CONTACT

Most runners land on the heel, others on the mid-foot or forefoot. Footstrike pattern (see p.72), the leg's posture at footstrike, and where the foot lands in relation to the body's centre of mass (COM) all affect how the GRF is distributed through the body.



### MIDSTANCE

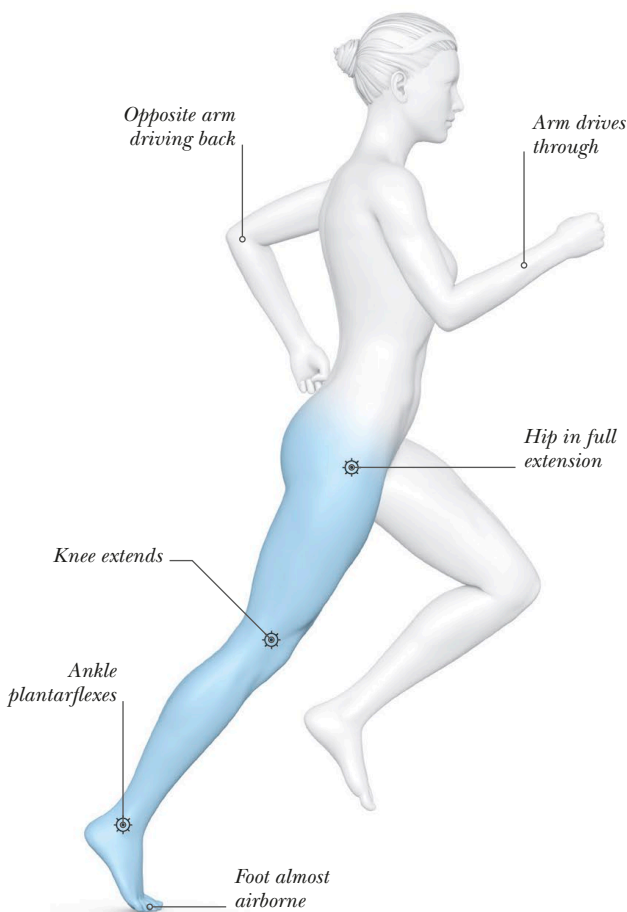
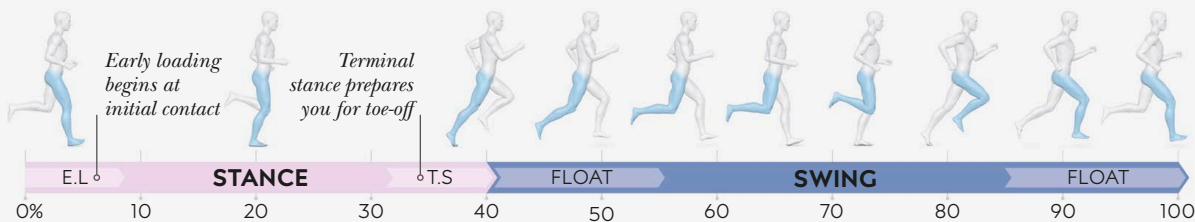
At this point, halfway between initial contact and toe-off, the vertical GRF is at its maximum, stretching muscles and tendons in the leg. The leg goes from experiencing the initial braking force to generating propulsion force. The COM is now at its lowest.



## Events and phases

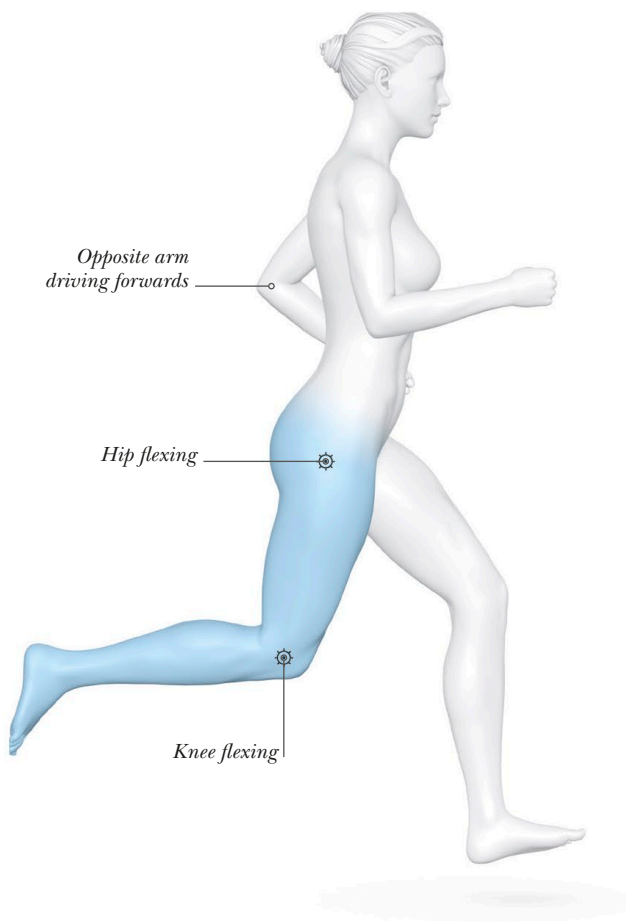
The running cycle comprises a sequence of moments or “events” that are grouped into two main phases – stance and swing. When a leg is in contact with the ground, it is in stance phase. This phase

begins at initial contact and ends at toe-off, and is made up of three sub-phases (see pp.66–68). Swing phase begins when the foot leaves the ground. It starts and ends with a “float” sub-phase, when both feet are off the ground (see p.69).



### TOE-OFF

The hip and knee extend and the ankle plantarflexes to propel the body into toe-off. As the foot leaves the ground, the ankle is maximally plantarflexed, and the hip and knee are maximally extended to drive the body forwards.



### SWING

While off the ground, the leg swings from its toe-off position behind the torso to just ahead of the COM, ready for initial contact. Most of the energy required for this movement is generated by the elastic recoil of muscles and tendons stretched during stance phase.

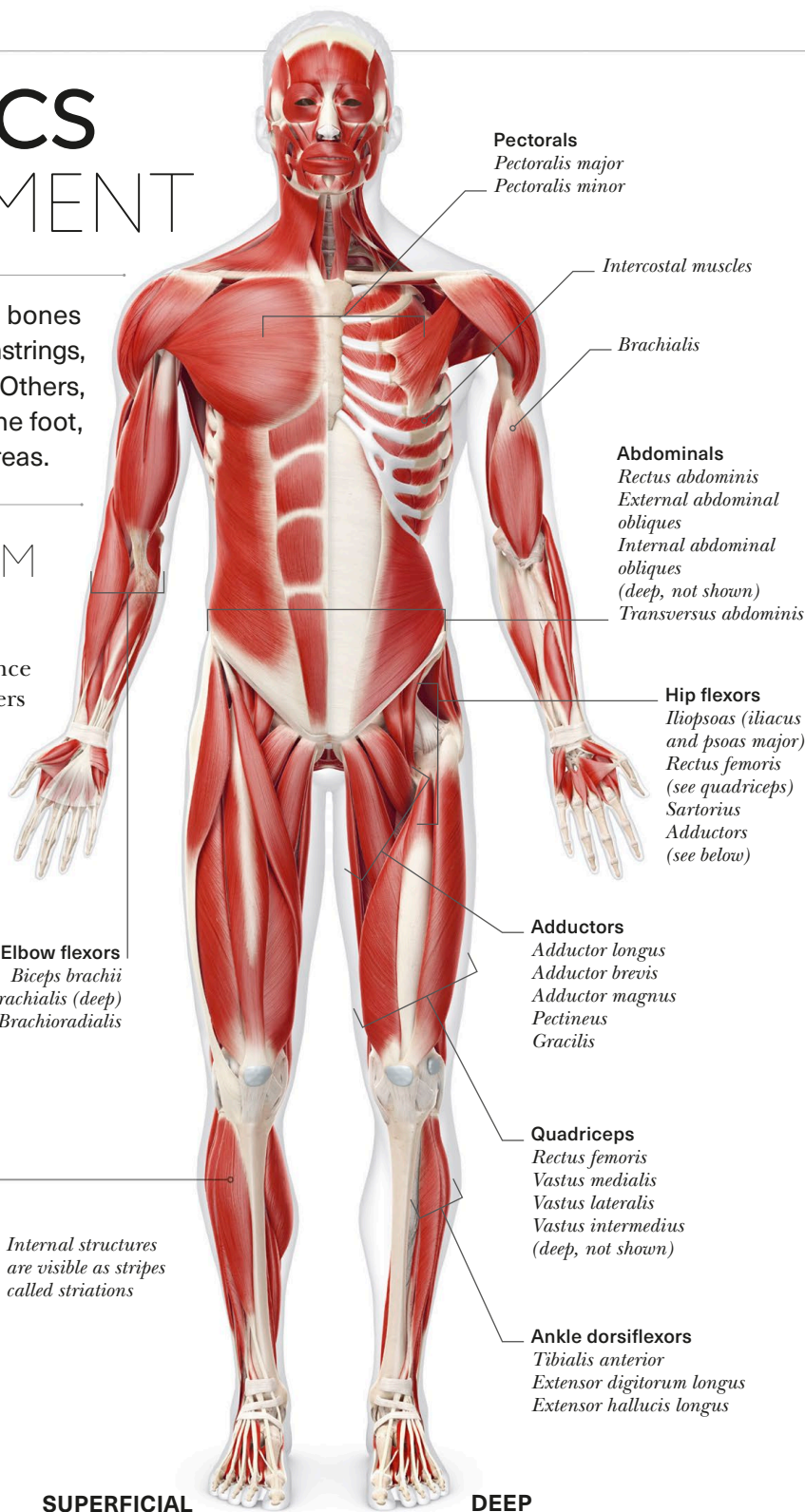


# MECHANICS OF MOVEMENT

**Skeletal muscles** are attached to bones by tendons. Some, such as the hamstrings, are long and cross multiple joints. Others, such as the intrinsic muscles of the foot, are short and confined to small areas.

## MUSCULAR SYSTEM

Muscles create movement through thousands of forceful contractions, demonstrating endurance and resilience in response to repetitive usage. Runners need strong legs, but also strength in the core and arms to drive movement. Strength training (see pp.96–155) can improve running performance and help prevent injury.



Muscle fibres run in parallel



**Elbow flexors**  
Biceps brachii  
Brachialis (deep)  
Brachioradialis

Internal structures are visible as stripes called striations

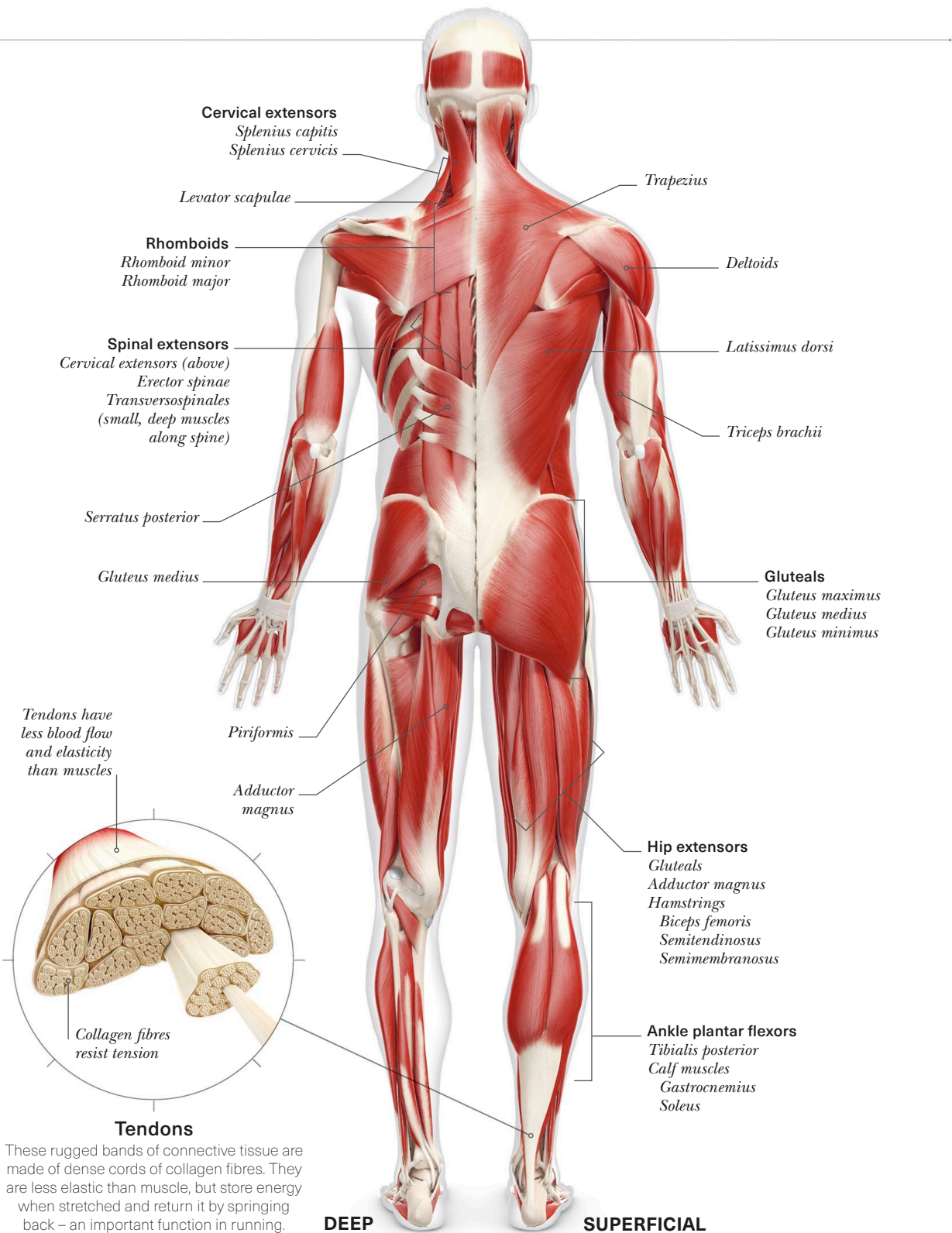
### Skeletal muscle fibres

These fibres are made up of sliding micro-filaments, which contract to create movement. Training improves blood flow and nerve supply to fibres, enabling muscles to produce more power and endure longer contractions.

**SUPERFICIAL**

**DEEP**





**Cervical extensors**  
*Splenius capitis*  
*Splenius cervicis*

*Levator scapulae*

**Rhomboids**  
*Rhomboid minor*  
*Rhomboid major*

**Spinal extensors**  
*Cervical extensors (above)*  
*Erector spinae*  
*Transversospinales*  
*(small, deep muscles along spine)*

*Serratus posterior*

*Gluteus medius*

*Piriformis*

*Adductor magnus*

*Trapezius*

*Deltoids*

*Latissimus dorsi*

*Triceps brachii*

**Gluteals**  
*Gluteus maximus*  
*Gluteus medius*  
*Gluteus minimus*

**Hip extensors**  
*Gluteals*  
*Adductor magnus*  
*Hamstrings*  
*Biceps femoris*  
*Semitendinosus*  
*Semimembranosus*

**Ankle plantar flexors**  
*Tibialis posterior*  
*Calf muscles*  
*Gastrocnemius*  
*Soleus*

*Tendons have less blood flow and elasticity than muscles*

*Collagen fibres resist tension*

**Tendons**

These rugged bands of connective tissue are made of dense cords of collagen fibres. They are less elastic than muscle, but store energy when stretched and return it by springing back – an important function in running.

**DEEP**

**SUPERFICIAL**



# HOW MUSCLES WORK


Most of the body's muscles are skeletal muscles. They attach to the skeleton and are under voluntary control. Their fibres respond to the firings of motor neurons, which are controlled by the central nervous system (see p.38). Skeletal muscles often work in pairs that operate on either side of a joint to control the direction of movements. Nerve impulses trigger muscle fibres to pull on the bones via tendons to produce muscle movement.

## Types of contraction

There are three main types of muscle contraction:  
**Concentric:** the muscle shortens during contraction;  
**Eccentric:** the muscle lengthens during contraction;  
**Isometric:** the length of the muscle remains unchanged during contraction.

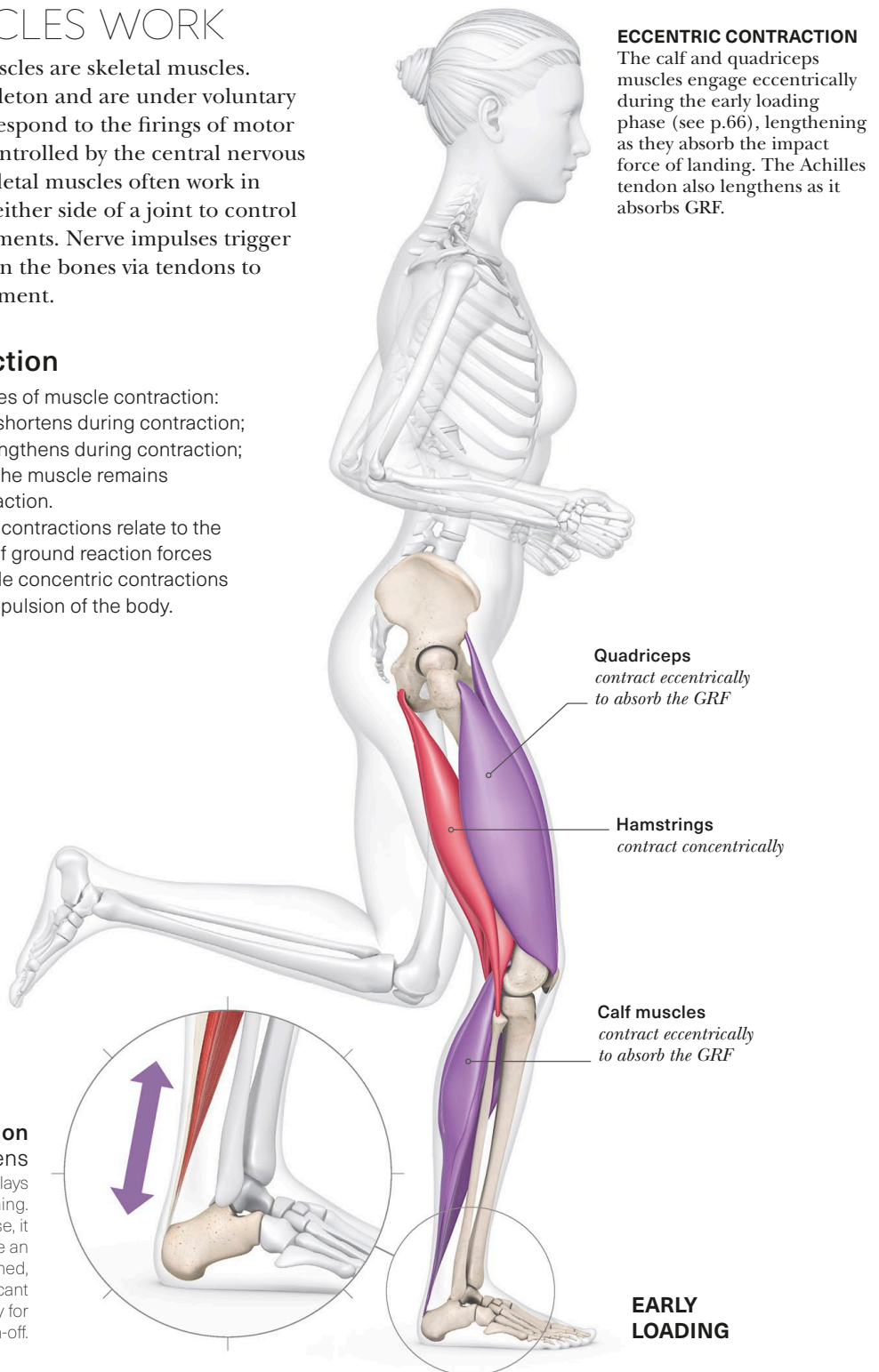
In running, eccentric contractions relate to the absorption and storage of ground reaction forces (GRF, see pp.46–47), while concentric contractions relate to the forwards propulsion of the body.

### MUSCLE KEY

-  Concentric: Shortening under tension
-  Eccentric: Lengthening under tension
-  Lengthening without tension (stretching)
-  Isometric: Held muscles without motion

### Achilles tendon lengthens

The Achilles tendon plays an important role in running. During the early stance phase, it lengthens under tension, like an elastic band being stretched, thereby storing a significant amount of the GRF energy for use during the push-off.



### ECENTRIC CONTRACTION

The calf and quadriceps muscles engage eccentrically during the early loading phase (see p.66), lengthening as they absorb the impact force of landing. The Achilles tendon also lengthens as it absorbs GRF.

**Quadriceps**  
*contract eccentrically to absorb the GRF*

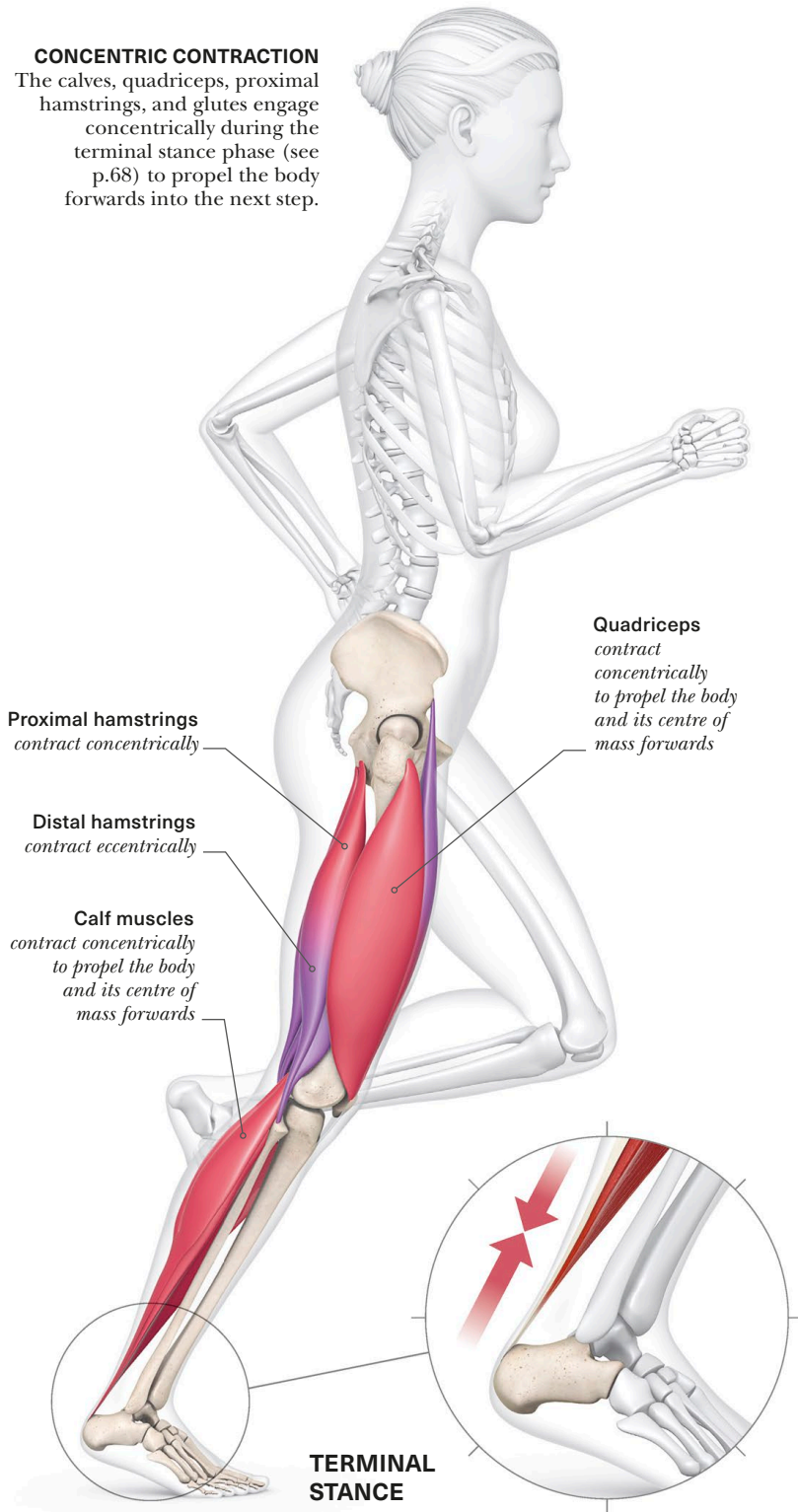
**Hamstrings**  
*contract concentrically*

**Calf muscles**  
*contract eccentrically to absorb the GRF*

**EARLY LOADING**

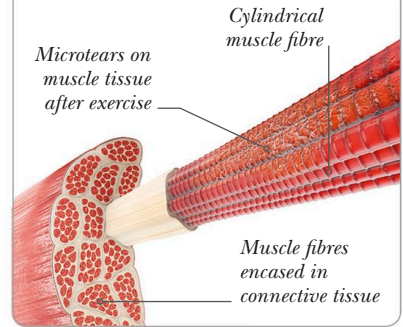
**CONCENTRIC CONTRACTION**

The calves, quadriceps, proximal hamstrings, and glutes engage concentrically during the terminal stance phase (see p.68) to propel the body forwards into the next step.



**Muscle repair**

Muscles are made of cylindrical cells bundled together and covered in connective tissue. Muscle damage triggers the repair process. White blood cells clear dead tissue, then new fibres and connective tissue form, while new blood vessels and nerves are generated.



TRAINING ADAPTATIONS

**Slow- and fast-twitch muscle fibres**

There are two types of skeletal muscle fibre: slow-twitch and fast-twitch. Slow-twitch fibres, being relatively resistant to fatigue, are used during steady state aerobic exercise. Fast-twitch fibres are able to generate explosive force and activity, but can only sustain this for short periods. Although training cannot change fibres from one type to the other, the kind of training you do determines which type increases in size and/or quantity within muscle.

*Slow-twitch fibres power a steady run*



*Fast-twitch let you sprint to finish*

**HALF-MARATHON**

**Achilles tendon shortens**

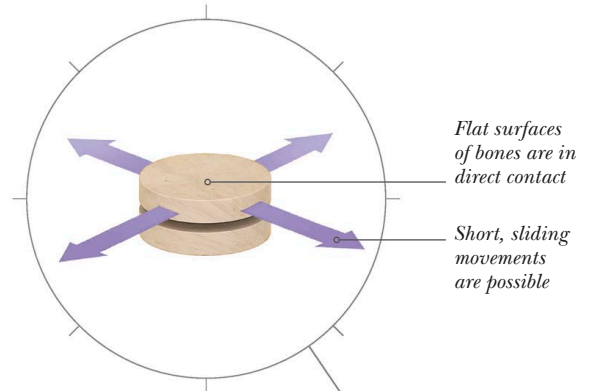
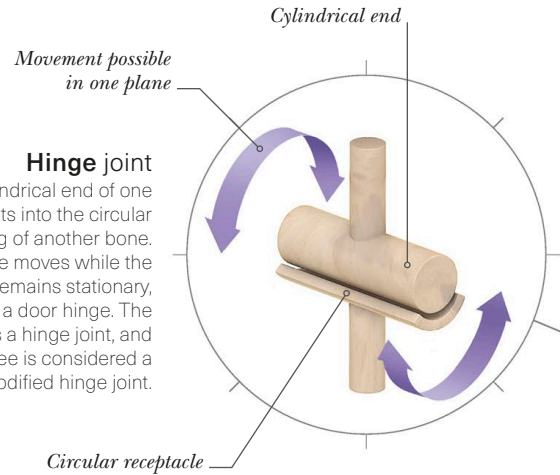
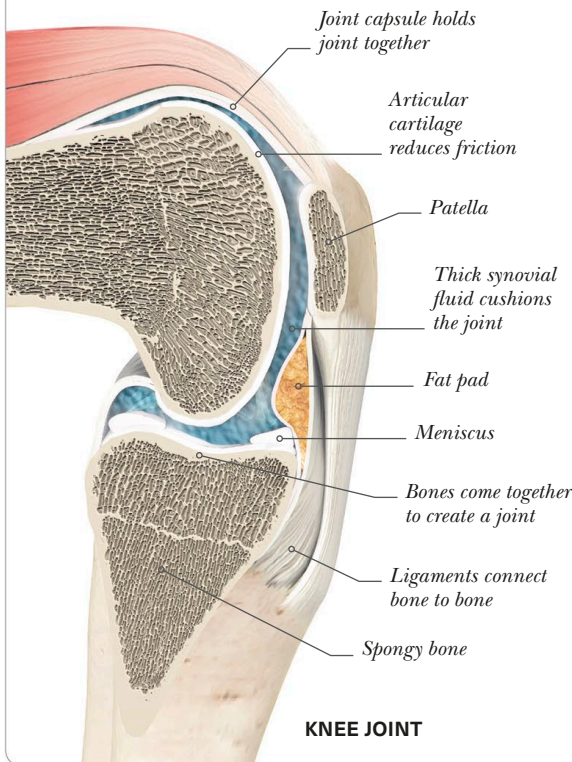
At toe-off, the spring-like Achilles tendon recoils, allowing the elastic energy stored during the loading phase to assist in propulsion.

# JOINTS

Connections between bones are called joints. These can be fibrous (as in the sutures of the skull), cartilaginous (as in the pubic symphysis), or synovial (as in the knee). In synovial joints, the articulating bones are well cushioned in a fluid-filled cavity. These joints are further categorized according to their shape and structure. The types of synovial joint used most in running are gliding, hinge, and ball-and-socket joints.

## Inside a synovial joint

Adjoining bones sit within a cavity filled with synovial fluid. This lubricates the joint, reducing friction between the bones and enabling greater movement. The bones are capped with smooth, dense cartilage, allowing them to glide across one another with minimum friction. A capsule of connective tissue surrounds the joint, supporting movement while resisting dislocation. Ligaments around and within the joint hold the bones together.



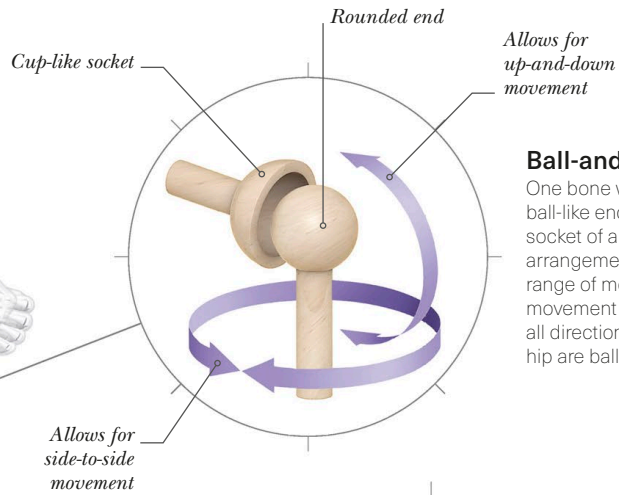
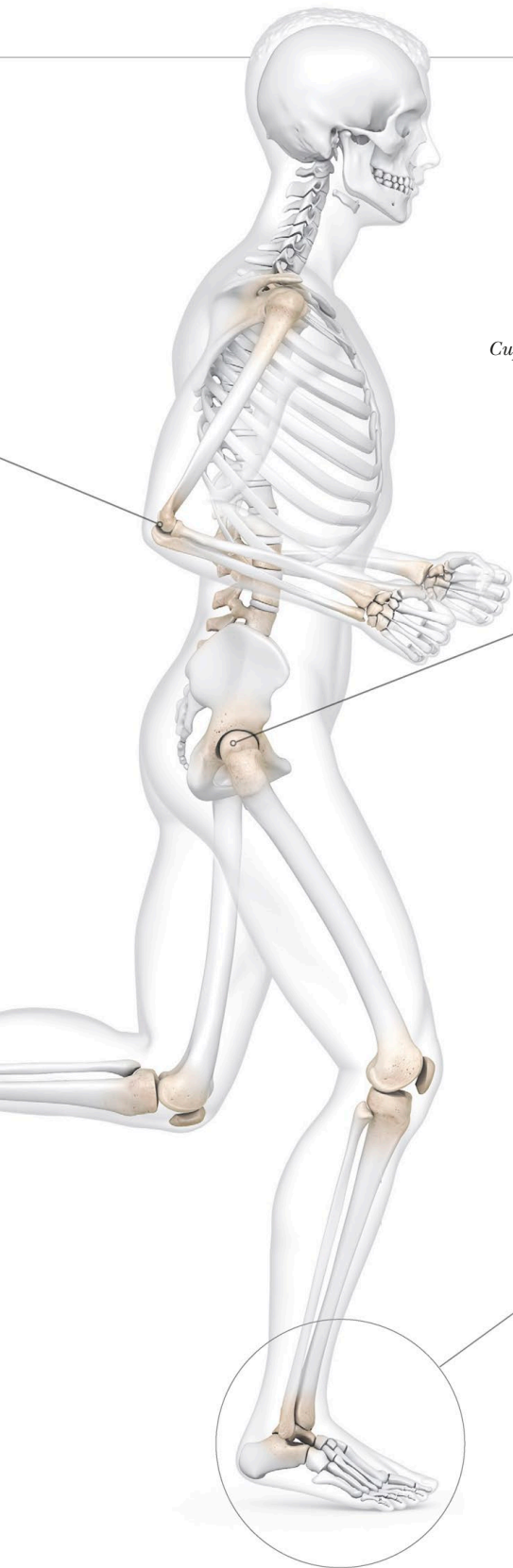
## Gliding joint

Bones with flat or slightly curved surfaces make direct contact in gliding joints. Range of motion is limited and does not involve rotation. These joints are found between vertebrae and in the tarsal bones of the foot, where their gliding action enables the necessary flattening of the longitudinal arches on landing during running.



## TYPES OF SYNOVIAL JOINT

The body coordinates the actions of many joints in order to run, and the movements allowed by each type of joint dictate how the body moves while running. The shape and structure of each joint determines the range of movement it will enable.



**Ball-and-socket joint**

One bone with a rounded, ball-like end fits into the cup-like socket of another bone. This arrangement allows the greatest range of motion, meaning all movement types are possible in all directions. The shoulder and hip are ball-and-socket joints.



**Ligaments**

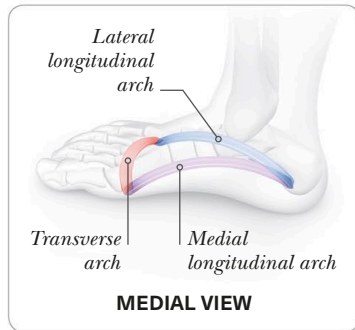
Bones are connected by dense fibres called ligaments. These attach to the ends of the adjacent bones, holding them together and preventing them from twisting too much or moving too far apart and dislocating.

# ANKLE AND FOOT

The ankle and foot provide the foundation for every step you take. This stable base absorbs the ground reaction force (see pp.46–47) and generates strength for push-off. The ligaments of the foot form an arch-like triangular framework, which sits above a branched fibrous band spanning the sole. This unique structure allows the foot to work as both a lever, pivoting the leg during the transition from braking into accelerating, and a spring for toe-off.

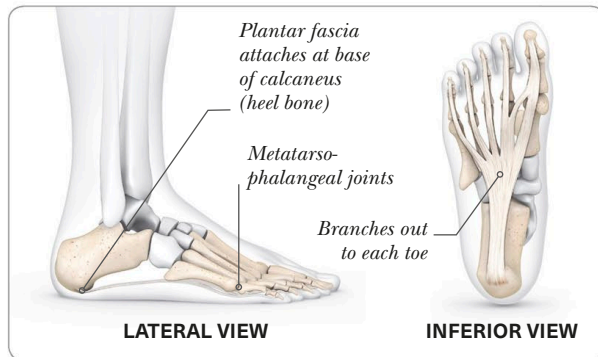
## Foot core

The interplay between the intrinsic and extrinsic muscles of the foot (see p.102), its tendons, and the sensory and motor nerves that control the arches, provides strength and stability for each step. How these elements work together is similar to how the core stabilizes the lower back and pelvis.



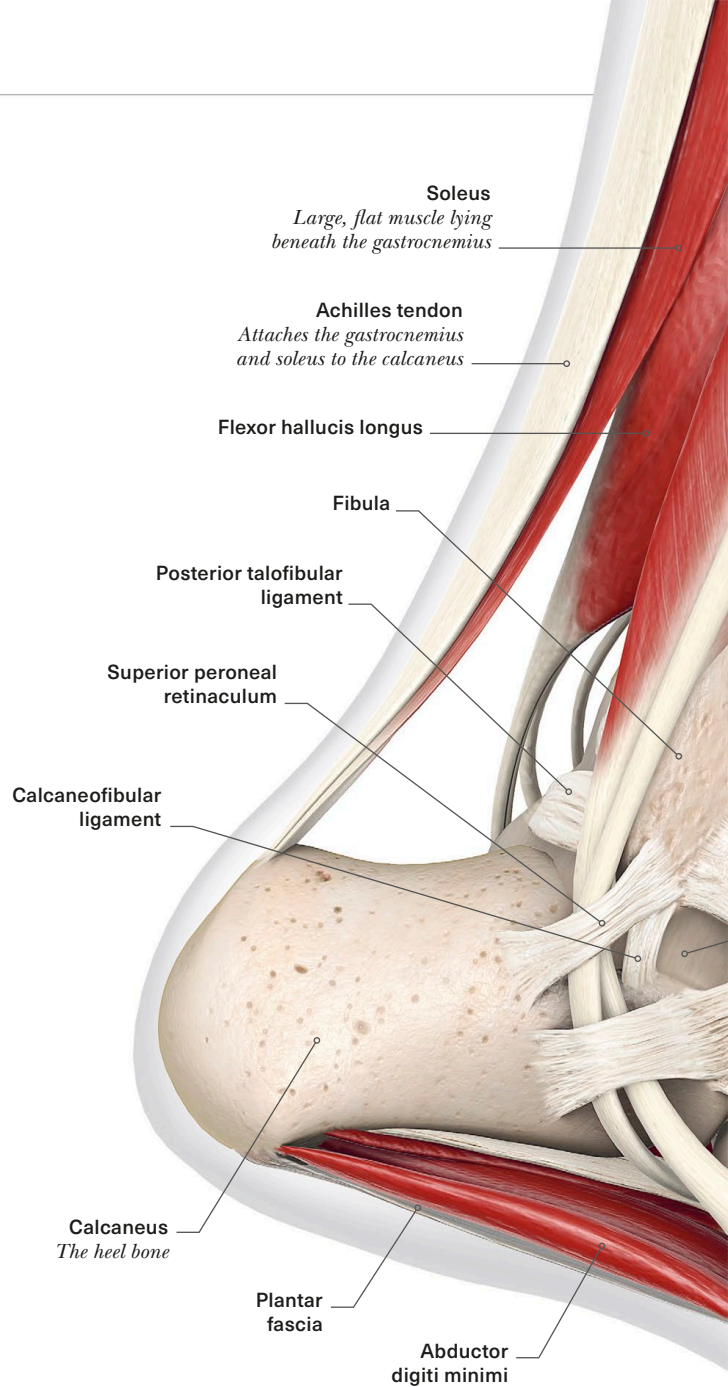
### FOOT ARCHES

The tarsal and metatarsal bones (see p.106) connect to form three arches, braced by ligaments, muscles, and tendons. This framework spans from the heel across to the metatarsal bones on either side of the foot, creating a stable triangular strut.



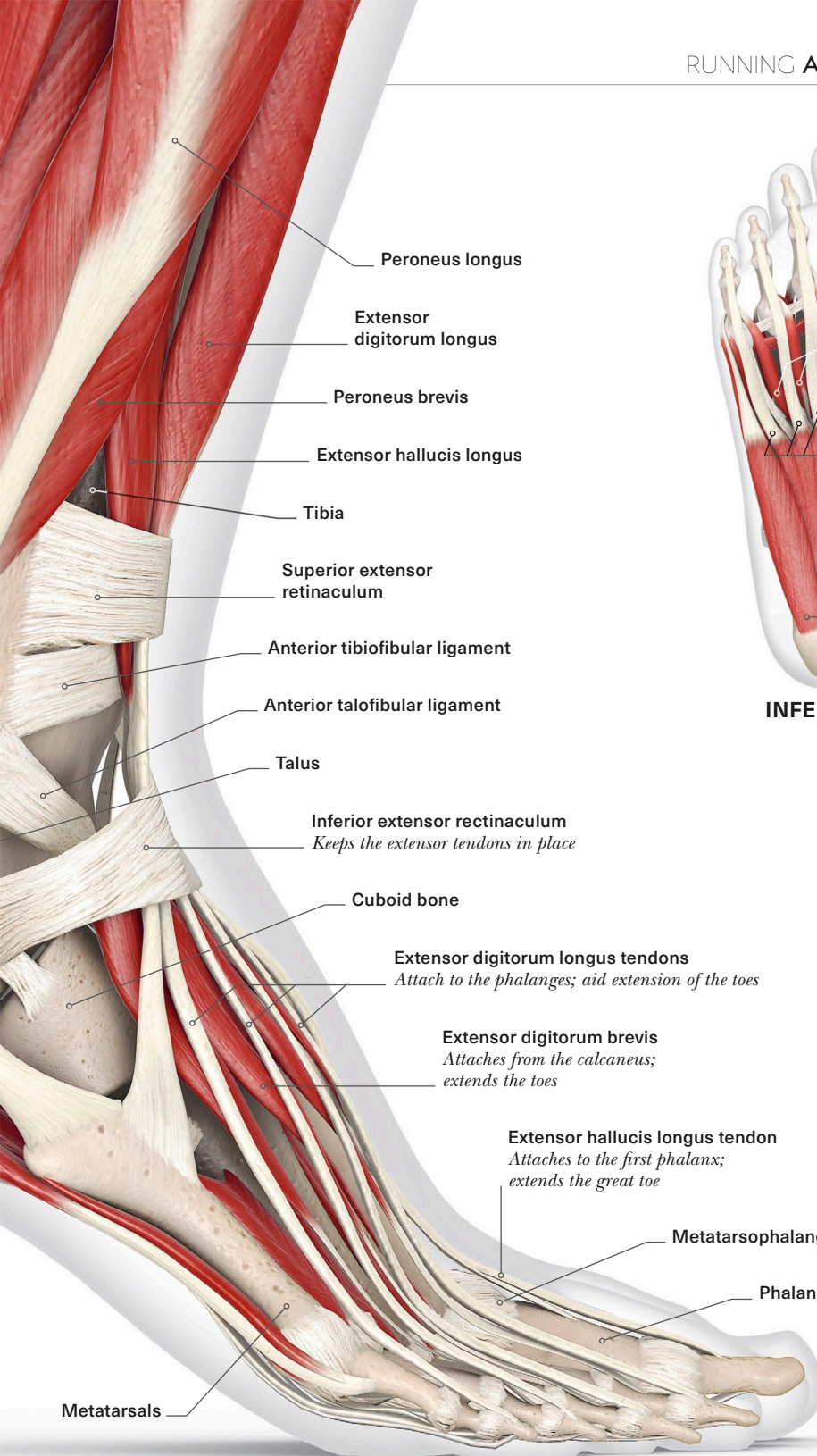
### PLANTAR FASCIA

This strong fibrous band runs across the base of the foot and branches out to each toe, constraining collapse of the medial longitudinal arch. It acts like a cable joining the calcaneus and the metatarso-phalangeal joints, and shortens when the toes are dorsiflexed (see p.111), stiffening the arch.



### FOOT STRUCTURE

There are three arches, 26 bones, 33 joints, and more than a hundred muscles, tendons, and ligaments in the foot. This complex structure is regularly subjected to loads of up to three times body weight during running.



Metatarsals

Peroneus longus

Extensor digitorum longus

Peroneus brevis

Extensor hallucis longus

Tibia

Superior extensor retinaculum

Anterior tibiofibular ligament

Anterior talofibular ligament

Talus

Inferior extensor retinaculum  
*Keeps the extensor tendons in place*

Cuboid bone

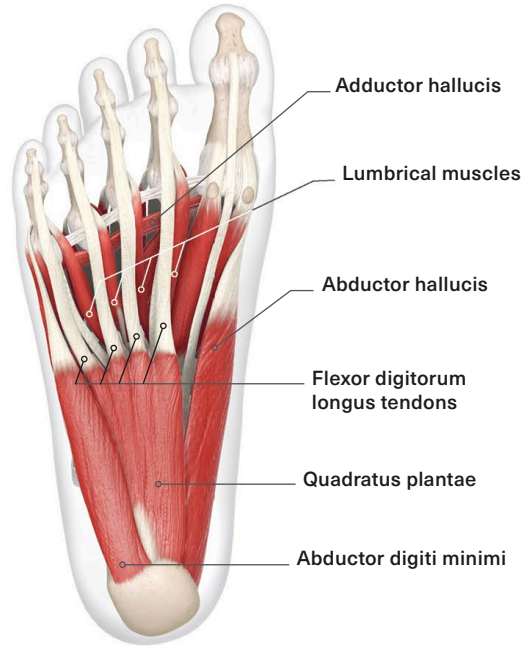
Extensor digitorum longus tendons  
*Attach to the phalanges; aid extension of the toes*

Extensor digitorum brevis  
*Attaches from the calcaneus; extends the toes*

Extensor hallucis longus tendon  
*Attaches to the first phalanx; extends the great toe*

Metatarsophalangeal joints

Phalanges



Adductor hallucis

Lumbrical muscles

Abductor hallucis

Flexor digitorum longus tendons

Quadratus plantae

Abductor digiti minimi

**INFERIOR VIEW**



**ANATOMICAL VARIATIONS**

**Arch height**

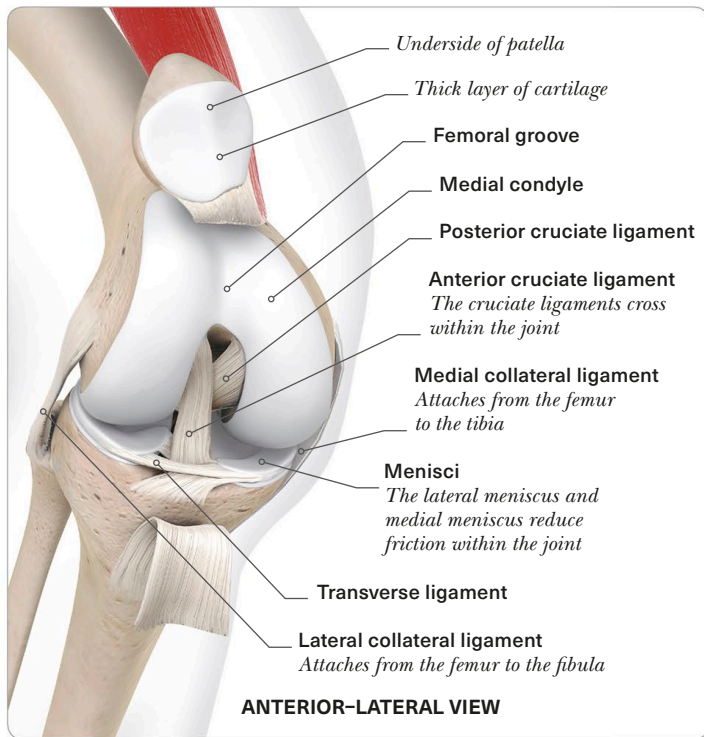
There is considerable variation in arch height among individuals. However, despite common myths on this subject, there is little evidence that variations such as low or high arches are associated with increased injury risk. In fact, arch height when static, with the foot raised off the floor, is actually a poor predictor of how much the arch collapses during the stance phase of running.

**LATERAL VIEW**



# KNEE

The knee is the body's largest joint. It is the meeting point of the femur and tibia, capped by the patella. Primarily a hinge joint, the knee can perform some gliding action (see p.20) and internal and external rotation. When we run, the knee bears enormous weight (equal to 8–12 times body weight) while providing flexible movement, making it vulnerable to injury.



**Vastus lateralis**  
*A large part of the quadriceps*

**Iliotibial band**  
*Thick connective tissue stretching over the outer thigh*

**Biceps femoris long head**

## Behind the patella

The patella sits in a groove between two projections (condyles) on the femur. Most of its joint surface is covered in cartilage, which dissipates the large compression forces created during running. Impact forces or rotation can cause the patella to shift within the groove, causing patellofemoral pain. Strong ligaments crossing behind the patella help to stabilize the knee from within, while ligaments on either side harness the sides of the joint.

**Lateral collateral ligament**  
*Attaches from the femur to the fibula*

**Fibula**

**Penoneus longus**

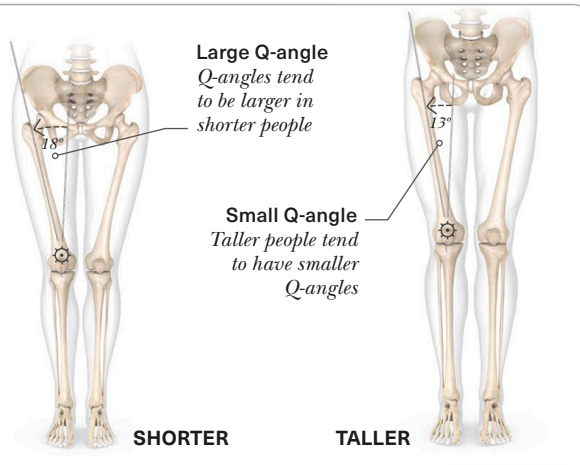
**Soleus**



## ANATOMICAL VARIATIONS

### Q-angles

The Q-angle is the angle between two lines. One is drawn between the Anterior Superior Iliac Spine (ASIS) and the centre of the patella, and the other extends from the tibial tubercle up through the centre of the patella. It ranges from 13–18°. The size of this angle has more to do with overall height than with sex or pelvic width. A larger Q-angle has been associated with an increased injury risk, and in particular to patellofemoral pain (see p.57), but research does not support this link.





**STRUCTURE OF THE KNEE JOINT**

The knee joint is encased within a protective capsule, with strong ligaments stabilizing the medial and lateral sides of the joint as well as crossing within it. Two crescent-shaped menisci (fibrous cartilage pads) help to disperse body weight and reduce friction during movement. The muscles that surround the knee are capable of absorbing and generating significant forces throughout the running cycle.

**Vastus medialis**  
*Part of the quadriceps*

**Rectus femoris**  
*Part of the quadriceps;  
flexes the hip and  
extends the knee*

**Quadriceps tendon**  
*Attaches the quadriceps  
to the knee at the patella*

**Patella**  
*Sits in the groove between  
the femoral condyles*

**Patella retinaculum**  
*The medial retinaculum and  
lateral retinaculum help hold  
the patella in place*

**Patellar tendon**  
*The continuation of the  
quadriceps tendon below  
the patella*

**Tibial tuberosity**  
*The patellar tendon  
attaches to the tibia  
at this point*

**Tibialis anterior**

**Tibia**

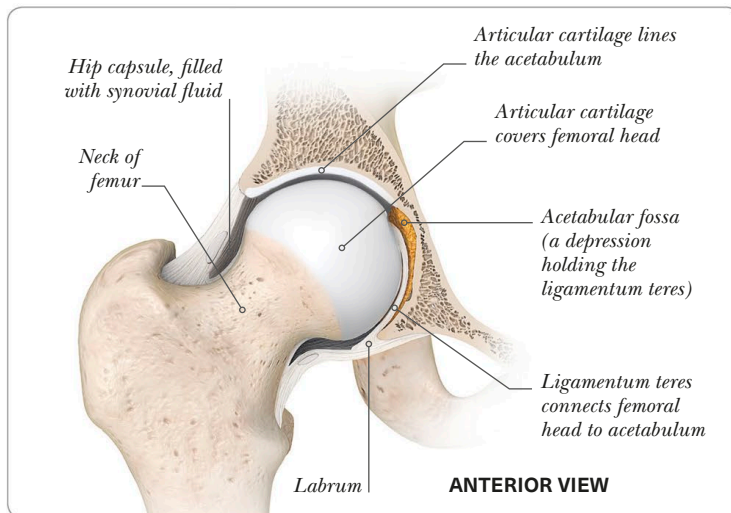
**Medial gastrocnemius**

**ANTERIOR-  
LATERAL VIEW**



# HIP

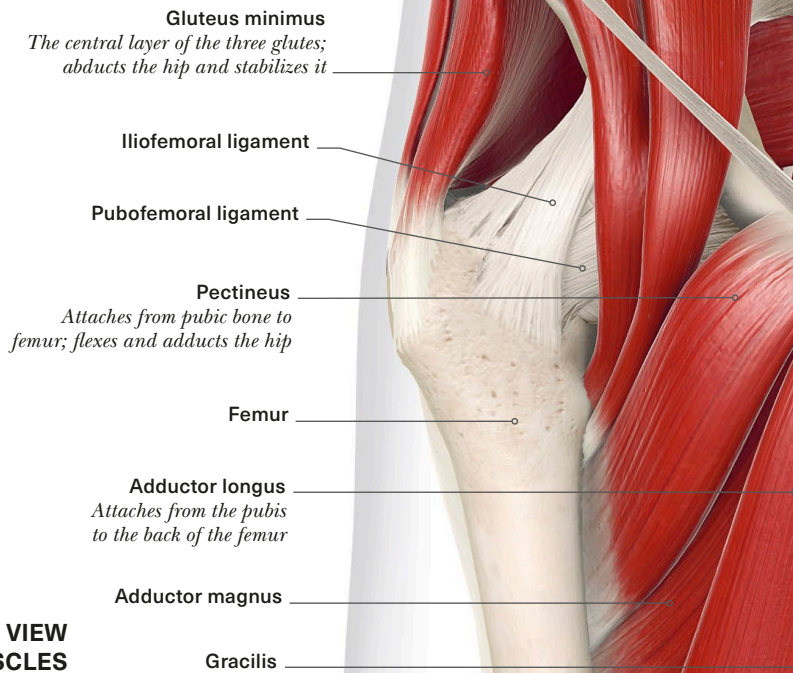
The head of the leg's femur bone fits into the pelvis at the hip, which is a synovial joint (see p.20). Although its ball-and-socket structure allows for a broad range of movement in all three planes, the hip joint's main function is to provide stability, as it must bear our body weight when we stand or move.

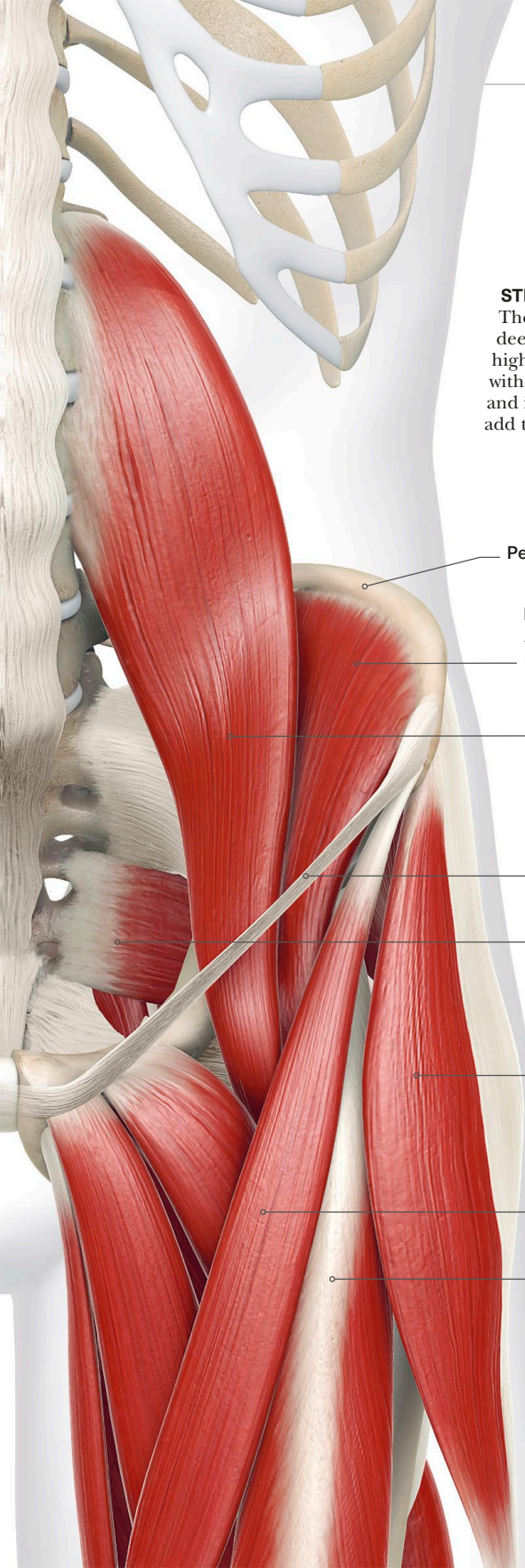


## Hip cross-section

The hip joint enables the swinging motion of the legs during running as well as internal rotation during the early loading phase (see p.66). The deep acetabulum (the "socket") securely encompasses nearly the entire head of the femur (the "ball"), creating a large surface area within the joint, improving stability. The joint is surrounded by strong ligaments and a thick capsule of connective tissue. A horseshoe-shaped layer of fibrous cartilage (the labrum) borders the acetabulum, further increasing the depth of the socket.

## ANTERIOR VIEW DEEP MUSCLES





**STRUCTURE OF THE HIP JOINT**

The acetabulum is a particularly deep socket, making the hip highly stable. The labrum, along with the iliofemoral, pubofemoral, and ischiofemoral ligaments all add to the stability of the joint.

Pelvis

**Iliacus**

*Part of the iliopsoas; attaches to the iliac fossa and iliac crest*

**Psoas major**

**Inguinal ligament**

*Stretches from the anterior superior iliac spine to the pubic tubercle*

**Piriformis**

**Tensor fasciae latae**

*Attaches from the iliac crest and inserts into the iliotibial band*

**Sartorius**

*Flexes, abducts, and laterally rotates the hip, and flexes the knee*

**Rectus femoris**

*Part of the quadriceps; flexes the hip and extends the knee*

**SUPERFICIAL MUSCLES**



**ANATOMICAL VARIATIONS**

**Hip-socket impingement**

The shape of the hip joint varies between individuals. The acetabulum can be deep or shallow; the femoral head can be round or cone-shaped. Some variations can lead to femoroacetabular impingement (FAI), in which the ball pinches against the socket at the anterior side of the joint, causing pain in the hip or groin area during certain complex movements in early loading (see p.66) involving a combination of flexion, adduction, and internal rotation.

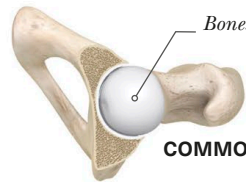
ANTERIOR



*Hip socket and femoral head*

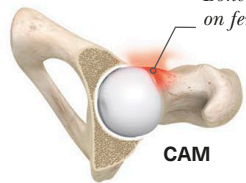
POSTERIOR

**SUPERIOR VIEW**



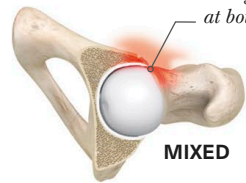
*Bones fit perfectly*

**COMMON**



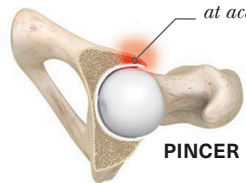
*Bone overgrowth on femoral head*

**CAM**



*Overgrowth at both sites*

**MIXED**



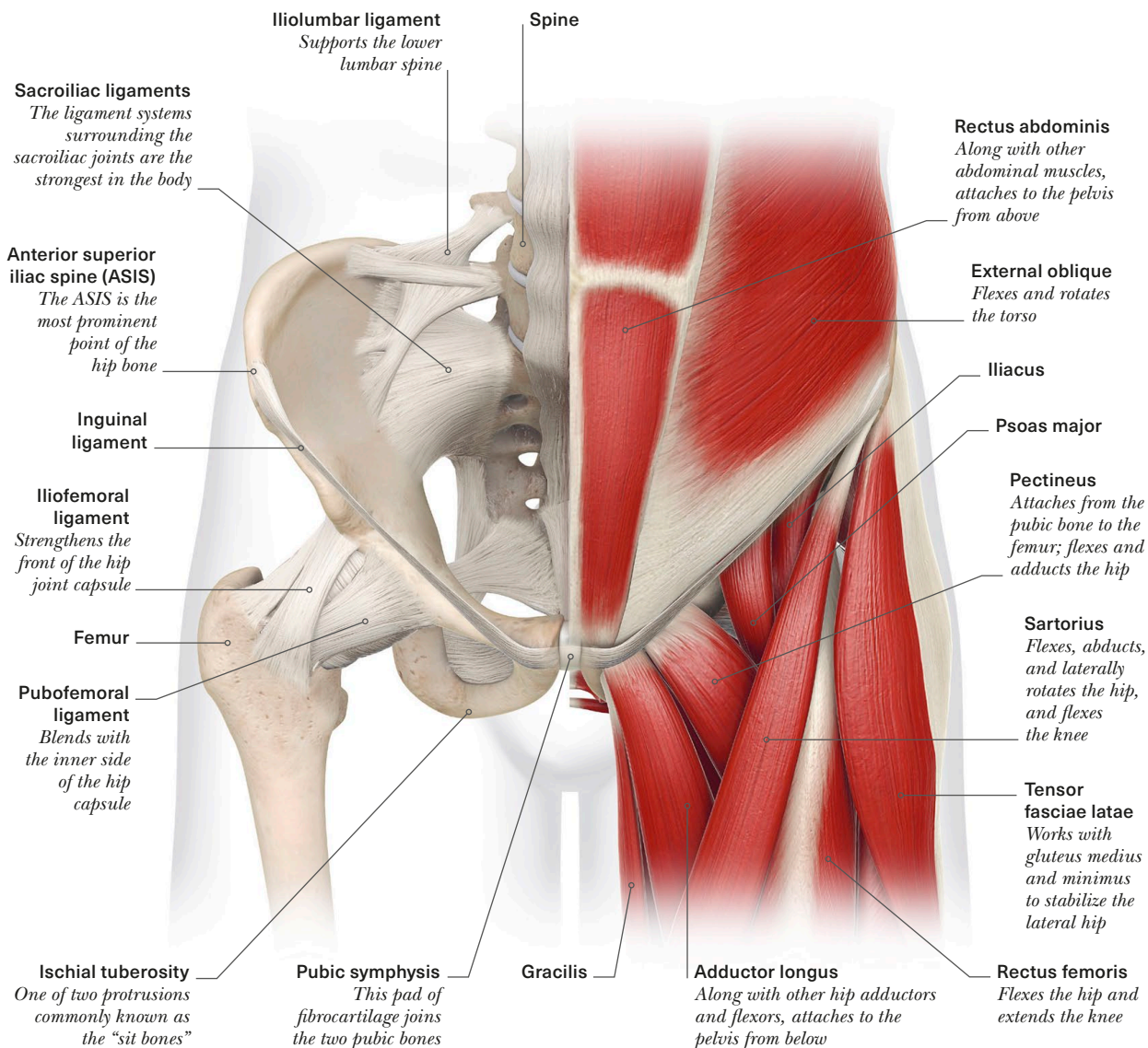
*Bone overgrowth at acetabulum rim*

**PINCER**



# PELVIS

The pelvis consists of two large, curved hip bones and the sacrum (tailbone), with three joints and a web of strong ligaments holding everything together in a bowl-like structure that protects the internal pelvic organs. Pelvic stability and alignment are important considerations for runners. The pelvis supports the weight of the upper body when you sit, and transfers it to the legs when you stand. It also serves as an attachment point for many muscles in the trunk and legs.



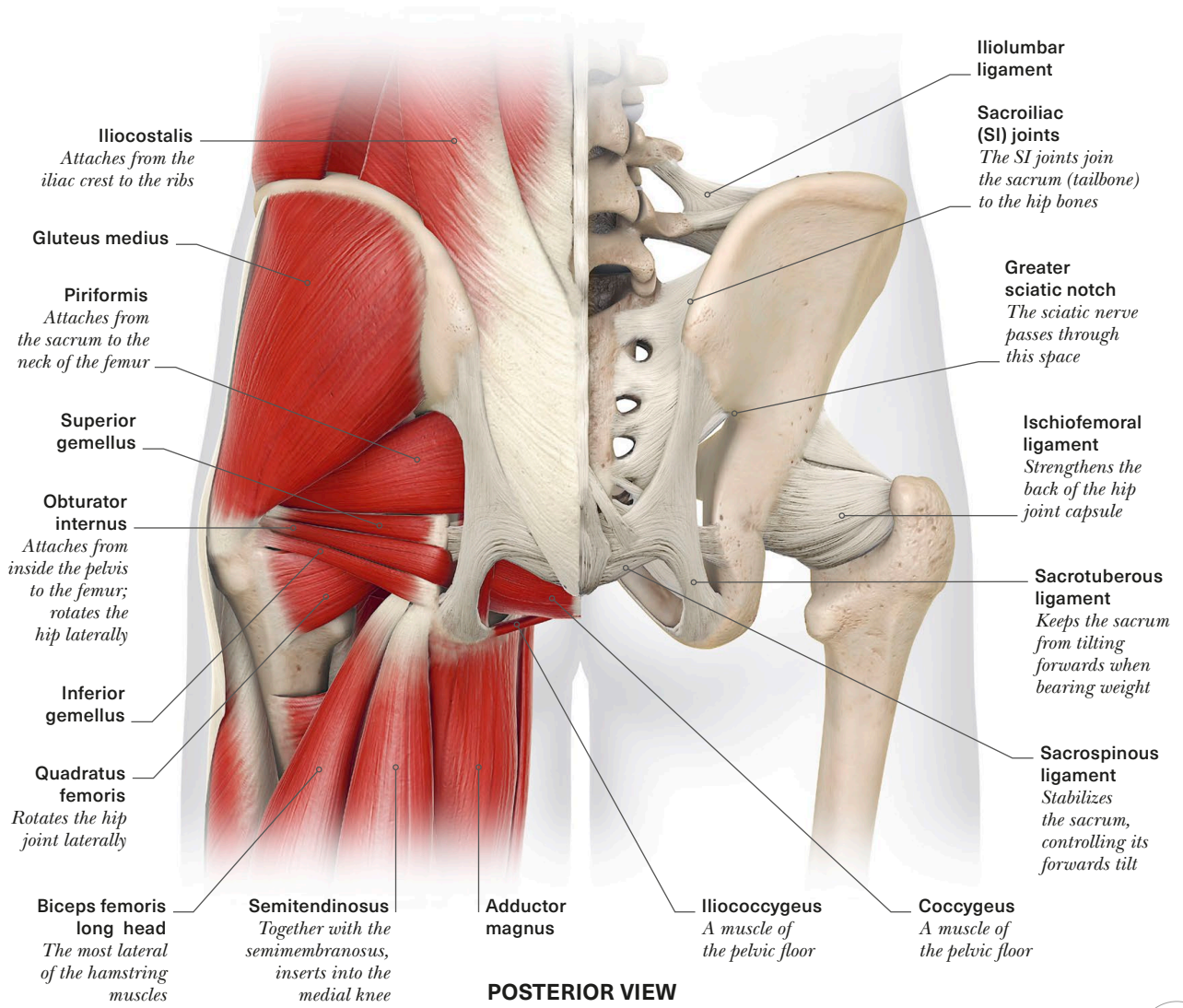
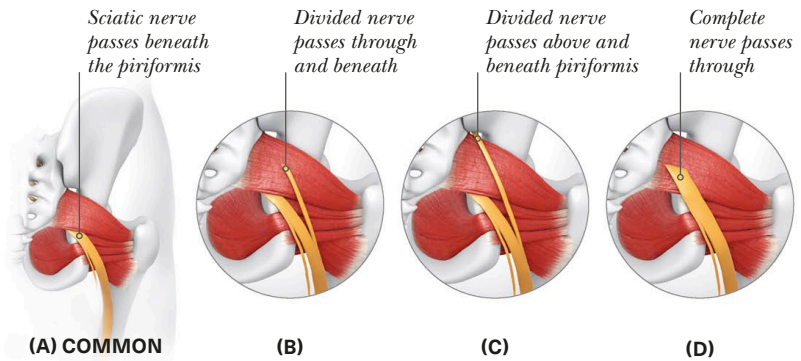
**ANTERIOR VIEW**



ANATOMICAL VARIATIONS

**Position of sciatic nerve**

There are various paths the sciatic nerve can take as it passes the piriformis muscle. It may pass below, above, or even through the piriformis, and it may be divided or undivided. Some variations may contribute to entrapment of the sciatic nerve when the piriformis is tight due to prolonged running, producing pain deep in the buttock and posterior thigh (see Deep Gluteal Syndrome, p.62). The Modified Pigeon and Piriformis Ball Release stretches (see pp.90 and 94) can help to bring relief.



**POSTERIOR VIEW**

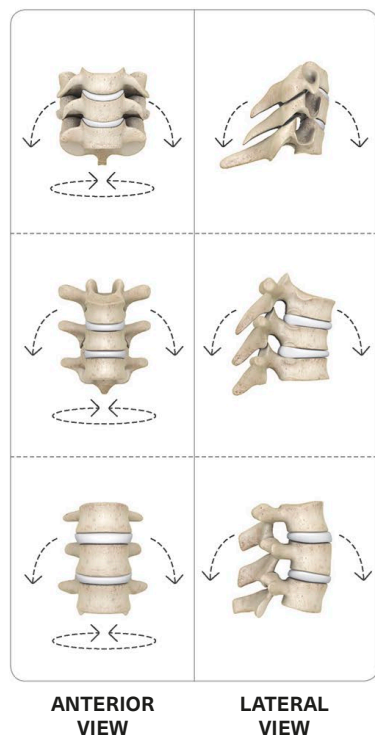
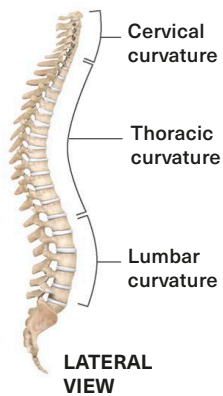


# CORE

The muscles in the midsection of your body make up the core. This area coordinates the movements of upper and lower body. When you run, a well-functioning core allows you to control your trunk over your planted leg, maximizing the production, transfer, and control of force and motion to your lower limbs. The spine supports the trunk.

## Spine

The spine encases and protects the spinal cord and supports the body's weight. It is made up of three sections: cervical, thoracic, and lumbar. Its three natural curves combine to form an "S" shape, across which the body's weight is evenly distributed, enabling the spine to withstand stress. The different regions of the spine enable a range of movements involved in running. (See p.147.)



**CERVICAL SPINE**  
The cervical spine comprises the upper seven vertebrae, located in the neck. These allow for a large range of movement: extension, flexion, side flexion, and rotation.

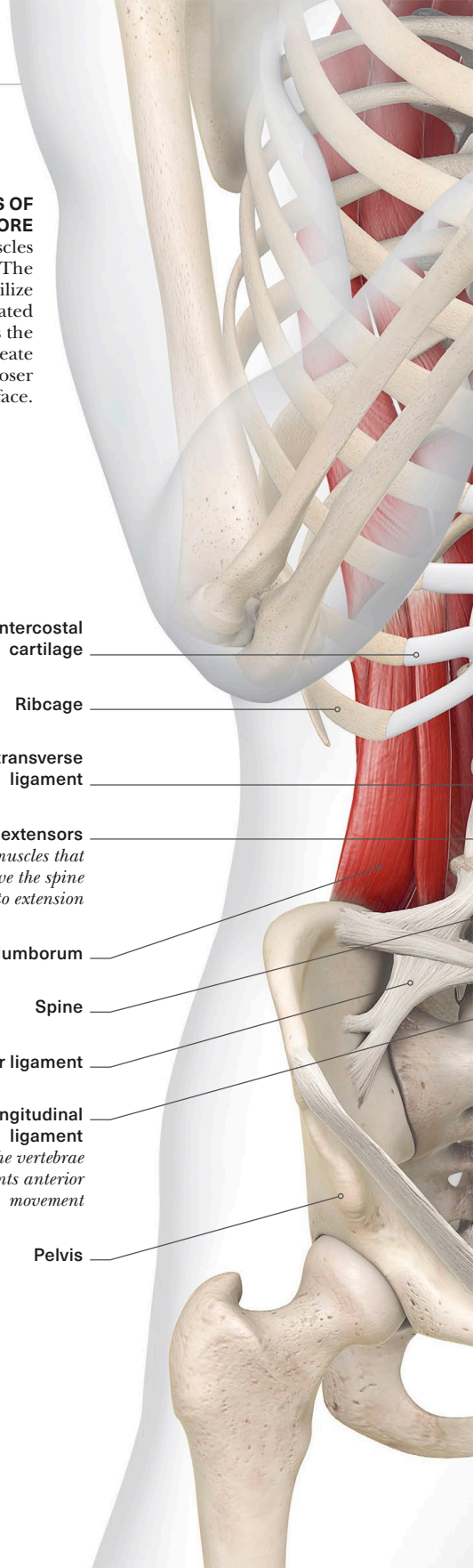
**THORACIC SPINE**  
The central twelve vertebrae in the chest section make up the thoracic spine. Most of the torso's rotation is produced at these joints. The ribs attach to the thoracic spine.

**LUMBAR SPINE**  
The lumbar spine consists of the five largest vertebrae, although some people have six. This section enables flexion and extension, as well as some side flexion and rotation, and bears much of the body's weight.

## MUSCLES OF THE CORE

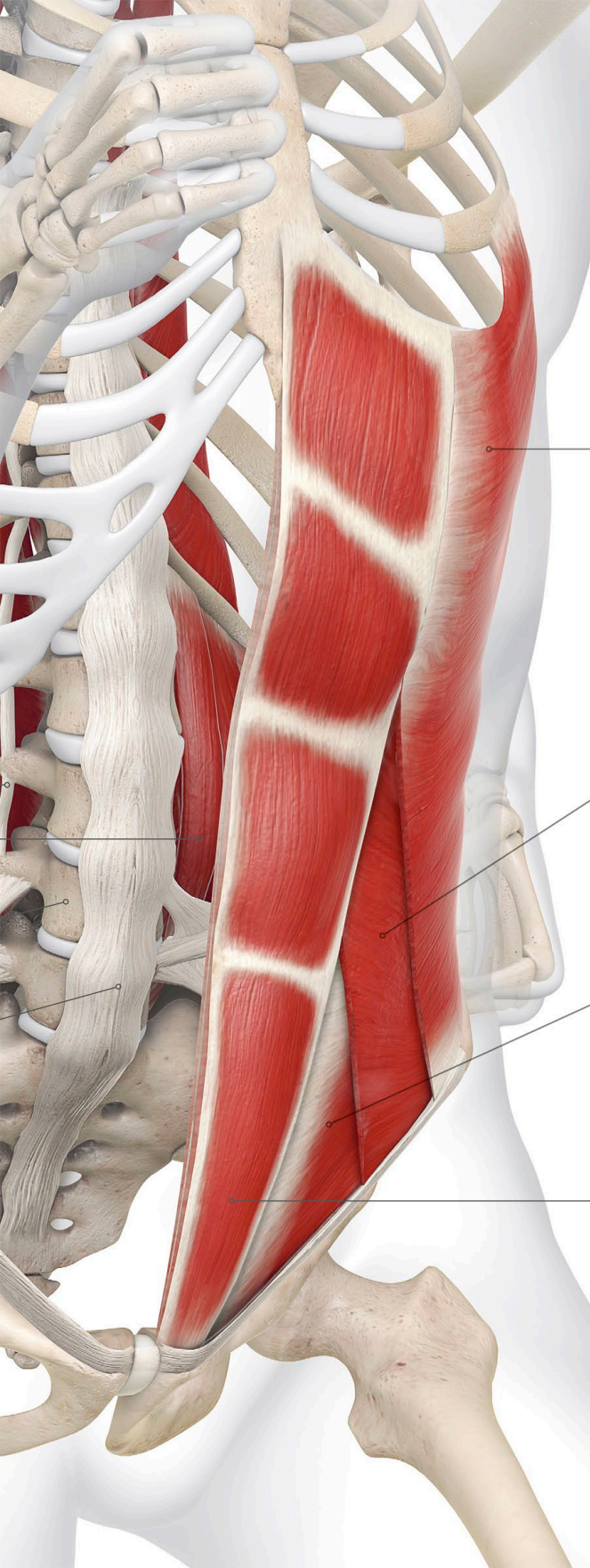
The core muscles are multi-layered. The muscles that stabilize the trunk are situated deeply, whereas the muscles that create movement are closer to the surface.

- Intercostal cartilage
- Ribcage
- Intertransverse ligament
- Spinal extensors  
*Long muscles that move the spine into extension*
- Quadratus lumborum
- Spine
- Iliolumbar ligament
- Anterior longitudinal ligament  
*Stabilizes the vertebrae and prevents anterior movement*
- Pelvis



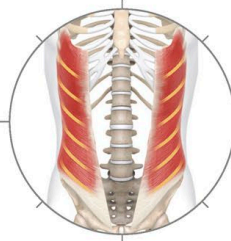
## Abdominal muscle fibres

Your abdominal muscles move, control and support your lower spine and pelvis. The fibres in each layer of muscle run in varying directions, allowing the core to provide power and withstand the forces involved in movement in all planes of motion. Together the core muscles provide stability and mobility for highly coordinated movements like running.



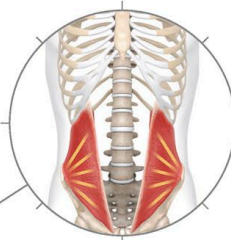
**Rectus abdominis**  
The “six-pack” muscle  
flexes the torso

**ANTERIOR-  
LATERAL VIEW**



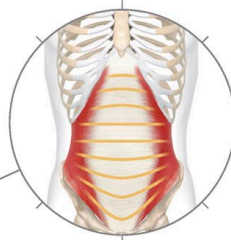
### External Oblique

The largest and outermost of the abdominals covers the side and front of the trunk. When both external obliques act together they flex the trunk. Acting alone, each rotates the trunk and causes side flexion.



### Internal Oblique

This broad, fine muscle lies beneath the external oblique, with the fibres of each running in opposite directions. The muscle contracts to cause side flexion and rotation of the trunk, and acts with other muscles to twist and flex the torso.



### Transversus Abdominis

The deepest of the abdominals, this sheet of muscle wraps around the abdomen from the spine to the front. It sits beneath the internal oblique, and contracts in anticipation of body movement to protect the spinal joints, ligaments, discs, and nerves. Its fibres run horizontally.

### Lower back pain

Lower back pain is extremely common, with up to 70 per cent of people experiencing it at one point in their lives. It is related to sedentary lifestyles. If you have back pain, it is important to consult a physiotherapist to establish how best to address it. Back pain can affect how your core muscles engage, putting you at greater risk of further injury when you run. However, running has been shown to improve the health of intervertebral discs, so appropriate training may help to reduce pain.



# POWERING MOVEMENT

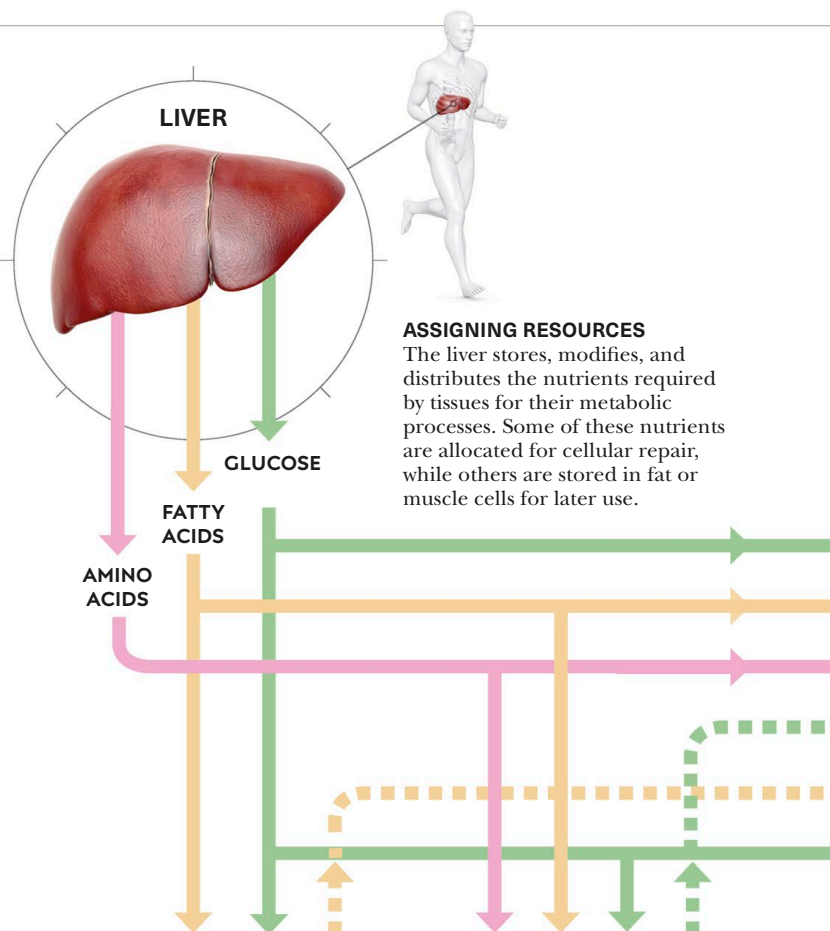
**Nutrients from the foods we eat,** combined with oxygen from the air we breathe, provide the raw materials needed to generate the energy that powers movement. The body uses these resources in a complex interplay between the cardiorespiratory and digestive systems to deliver the muscles their power supply.

## SOURCES OF ENERGY

The stomach and intestines process the foods we consume. When running, we rely mostly on energy derived from carbohydrates, but in certain situations the body uses fat and protein sources. Carbohydrates are processed and stored as glycogen in the liver and muscles. Fats are processed and stored in the liver as fatty acids (triglycerides) or as fat in adipose tissue. Proteins break down into amino acids and are the building blocks for new muscle tissue.

### Increased glycogen stores

With proper training, the body learns to store higher levels of glycogen in the muscles, and also becomes more efficient at conserving it at your race pace. This is particularly important when running for longer than 90 minutes, by which time glycogen stores are typically depleted. Since glycogen is the most efficient fuel source, it is advantageous to have it last for as long as possible.



### ASSIGNING RESOURCES

The liver stores, modifies, and distributes the nutrients required by tissues for their metabolic processes. Some of these nutrients are allocated for cellular repair, while others are stored in fat or muscle cells for later use.



### FAT CELLS

Energy-rich triglycerides are stored as fat in muscle and adipose tissue, then broken down into free fatty acids and released into the bloodstream when required, to be used by cells as an energy source. Excess glucose is also converted to fat.



### MUSCLE CELLS

Glycogen is stored in muscle cells, where it is later released to provide energy for muscle contractions. It is also released from muscle into the bloodstream to raise blood glucose levels if they fall.



## ENERGY SYSTEMS

The molecule adenosine triphosphate (ATP) stores, transports, and releases the energy used for muscle contractions. The body has three ways of accessing ATP, or three energy systems. The primary system it draws on depends on the duration and intensity of the exercise.

The first port of call is stored ATP in cells. Muscle fibres store enough ATP to power contractions for up to 10 seconds, providing lots of energy rapidly, but for immediate, short-term use and maximum intensity efforts only. (Once used, it takes up to 5 minutes to restore this supply.) When you start to run, this system kicks in first to get you moving.

After the stored ATP is depleted, food energy, usually glucose, is converted to ATP within muscle cells and maintained in steady supply, either through anaerobic or aerobic cell respiration.

For high-intensity running in which the oxygen supply is unable to meet the demand, the body uses anaerobic cell respiration. This system fires up when you start to run, and powers movement until the aerobic system (see below), which takes longer to kick in, catches up.

Aerobic cell respiration is the primary system used to power moderate or low-intensity work. It can draw on glucose stores for up to 90 minutes. Distance running is mostly an aerobic activity, but any time the body needs a short burst of extra energy that cannot be accommodated by the aerobic system – when sprinting across the finish line of a race, for instance – the body draws on the anaerobic system.

Both aerobic and anaerobic respiration begin with a process known as glycogenolysis, which releases glucose from glycogen, after which a chain reaction known as cell respiration (see pp.34–35) takes place to convert the glucose into ATP so that it is available to power muscle contractions.

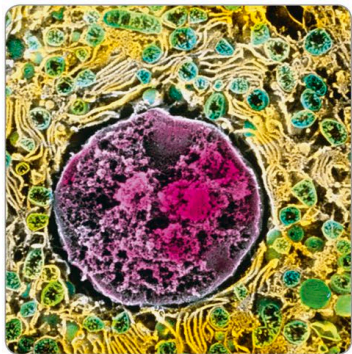
### LIVER PATHWAYS

- Glucose leaves the liver to be used
- Glucose released from storage
- Fatty acids leave the liver to be stored
- Fatty acids released from storage
- Amino acids leave the liver to be used



### ACCESSING ENERGY

Muscle growth, renewal, and repair, as well as contractions of the major muscle groups when running, all require energy. The body draws a supply of the appropriate energy directly from the liver, with back-up supplies available from muscle and fat cells.



### LIVER CELLS

Excess glucose is stored inside liver cells as glycogen granules, which are then released as required.

# CELL RESPIRATION

Muscle cell respiration is so named because it takes place within muscle cells. First, glucose is released from glycogen, which has been stored within the muscle or supplied directly by the liver. The body then relies on either aerobic or anaerobic cell respiration to transform the glucose into the molecule ATP, which provides the energy needed for muscle contractions.



## MITOCHONDRIA

Aerobic cell respiration takes place within mitochondria, making them the “workhorses” of the cell. These structures can increase in number and size with endurance training, improving the body’s aerobic cell respiration efficiency.



## CAPILLARIES

Small branches of blood vessels, known as capillaries, deliver both oxygen and nutrients to cells for aerobic respiration. Endurance training increases capillary density and function, which improves muscle endurance performance.

## Aerobic and anaerobic respiration

In aerobic cell respiration, the body uses oxygen to convert glucose into ATP. During strenuous exercise, if there is a shortage of oxygen (due to inadequate delivery or high rate of use), the body relies on anaerobic respiration. While this process does not require oxygen, it does cause lactate accumulation. Far from being a metabolic waste product, lactate provides a valuable energy source when sufficient oxygen becomes available (once pace slows). Its accumulation causes a burning sensation in the muscles and induces fatigue, so anaerobic cell respiration is a limited resource.

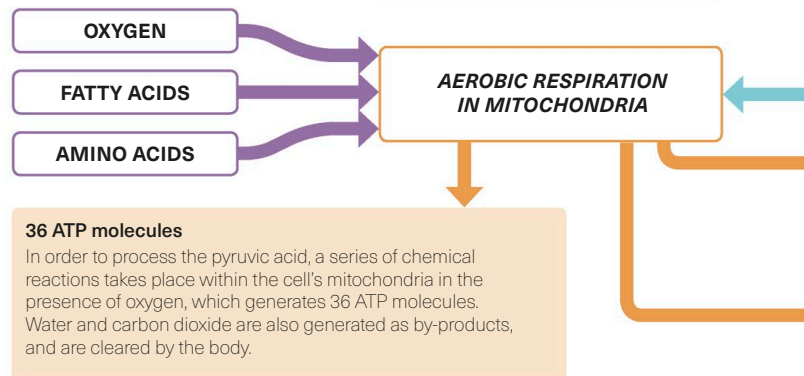
## ENDURANCE

### AEROBIC RESPIRATION

Aerobic respiration has tremendous energy-yielding capacity and, as a result, is the primary method of energy production during endurance exercise. A total of approximately 38 ATP molecules can be generated from one molecule of glycogen.

#### 2 ATP molecules

The first stage of aerobic cell respiration takes place in the cytoplasm within the cells of muscles. This process of glycolysis breaks down glucose into pyruvic acid, generating 2 ATP molecules for use. The pyruvic acid then moves into the cell’s mitochondria for the next stage of aerobic cell respiration.

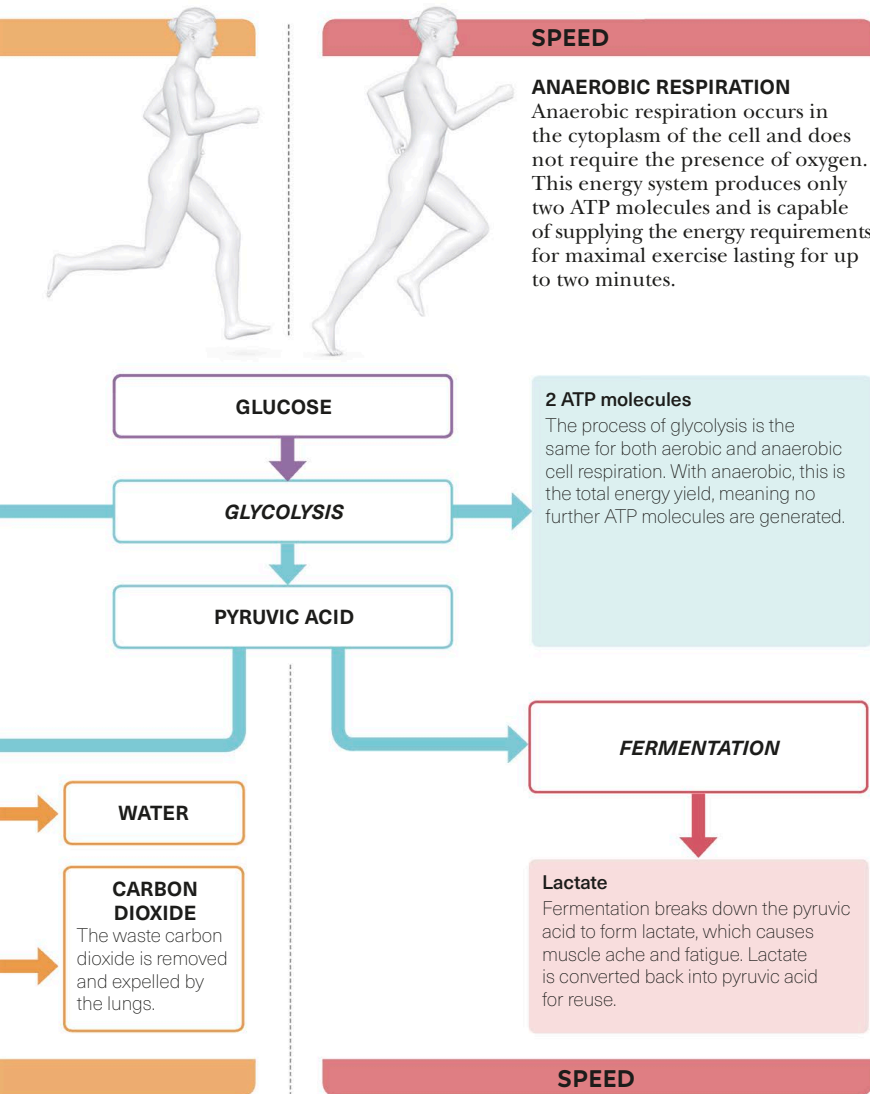


## ENDURANCE



### Lactate threshold

During steady-state exercise, aerobic cell respiration matches the energy needs of muscles. When intensity increases beyond the capacity of aerobic respiration, blood lactate accumulation begins to rise exponentially. Your lactate threshold (LT) represents the highest intensity you can manage before your body begins to exponentially accumulate lactate. Your LT significantly contributes to your distance-running capacity because it reflects the rate at which your muscles can sustain aerobic energy production.



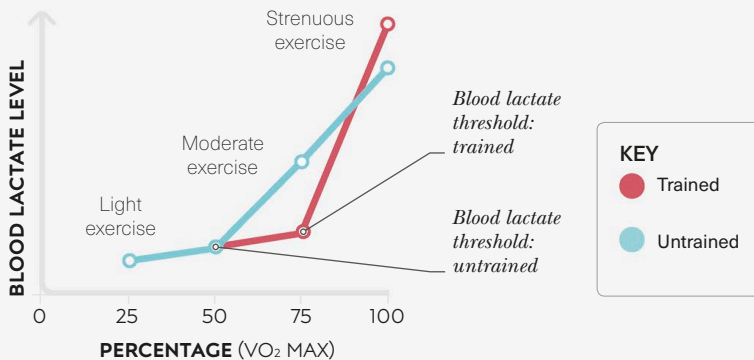
## Metabolizing fats

When glycogen stores run out, muscle cells turn to fat for energy. The body's fat stores can deliver up to thirty times more energy than its glycogen reserves. To be used for energy, triglycerides must be broken down into free fatty acids in a process called lipolysis, then circulated in the bloodstream to reach the muscles for cell respiration.

### Efficient use of fat stores

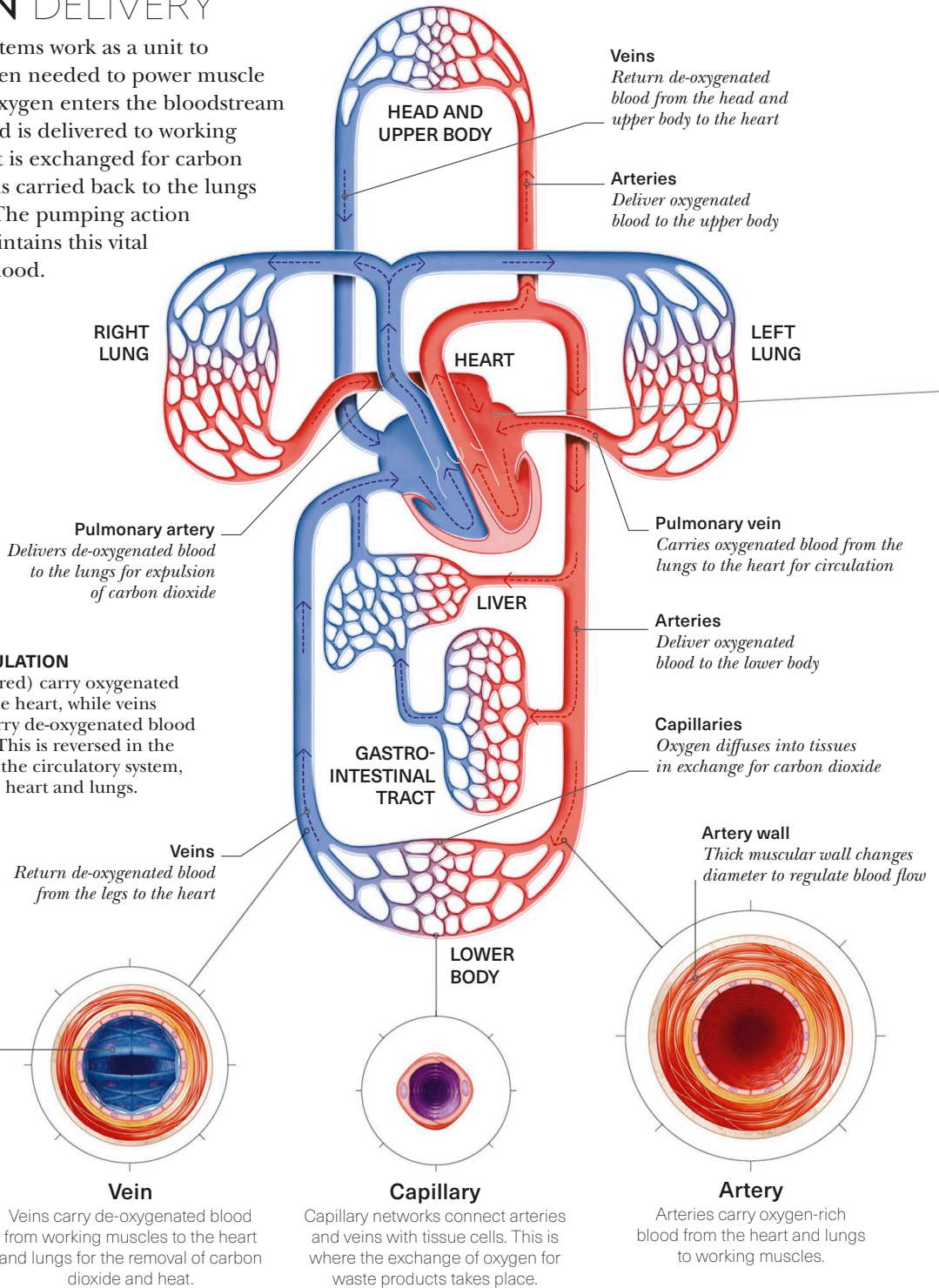
Endurance training increases the body's metabolism of fat for energy during both rest and submaximal (steady-state aerobic) exercise. In endurance runners, this adaptation enables the body to conserve the glycogen stores that are important during prolonged runs. The body can store only a limited quantity of glycogen, so it is an advantage to be able to metabolize fats efficiently during prolonged submaximal exercise.

"Hitting the wall" is the feeling of sudden and dramatic fatigue when the body runs out of glycogen. Enhancing the body's ability to utilize fat stores allows it to preserve glycogen stores and so delay hitting that wall, or avoid it altogether.



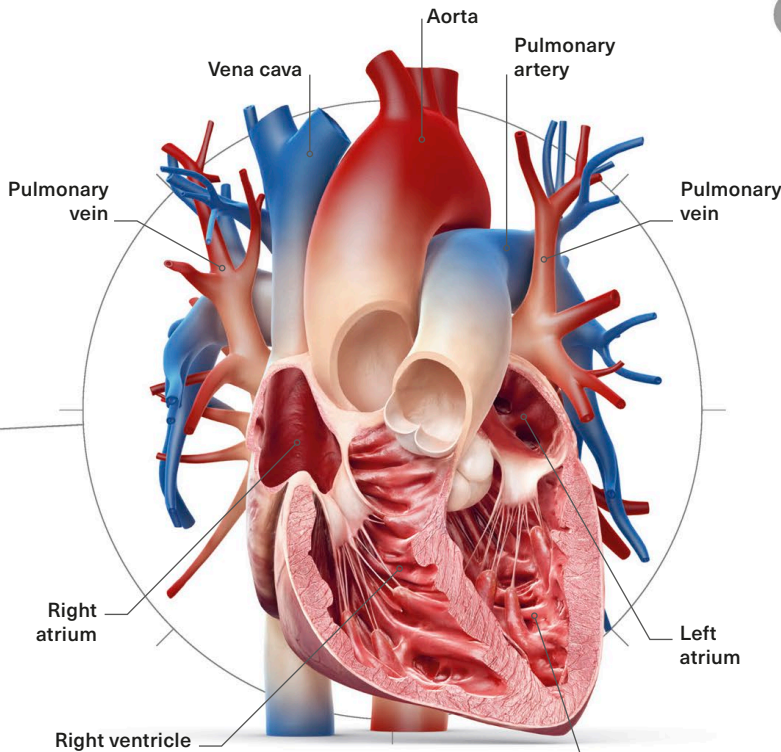
# OXYGEN DELIVERY

Major organ systems work as a unit to supply the oxygen needed to power muscle contractions. Oxygen enters the bloodstream via the lungs and is delivered to working muscles. Here it is exchanged for carbon dioxide, which is carried back to the lungs to be exhaled. The pumping action of the heart maintains this vital circulation of blood.



## HEART AND CIRCULATION

Arteries (shown in red) carry oxygenated blood away from the heart, while veins (shown in blue) carry de-oxygenated blood towards the heart. This is reversed in the pulmonary loop of the circulatory system, which connects the heart and lungs.



### The heart

The heart maintains the rate of blood circulation to match the body's varying demand for oxygen. During exercise, the rate and strength of cardiac muscle contractions increases to maximize blood circulation, allowing for greater oxygen consumption. Training increases the size of the left ventricle to enable the heart to accommodate greater blood volumes.

**Left ventricle**  
*Pumps oxygenated blood around the body*

### **VO<sub>2</sub> max**

Your VO<sub>2</sub> max is a measure of how much oxygen your body can consume during maximal effort. A high VO<sub>2</sub> max score means the quantity of oxygen available in the muscles for aerobic cell respiration is comparatively large. The body's ability to transport oxygen to muscles depends on four factors: maximum heart rate; stroke volume (the amount of blood pumped from the heart with one heartbeat); quantity of haemoglobin (which carries oxygen) in the blood; and the proportion of the circulation that is transported to your working muscles. Some of these factors can be improved with training, while others are genetically determined.



### Training adaptations

Training causes physical adaptations that result in improvements in the energy systems that power movement.

#### Aerobic training

The aim of aerobic training (see p.180) is to increase the body's efficiency at aerobic cell respiration, enabling you to maintain this system for longer during exercise before anaerobic cell respiration kicks in. This improves aerobic endurance and VO<sub>2</sub> max. Adaptations result in:

- lactate accumulation occurring at higher exercise intensities
- more rapid rate of lactate clearance
- increased stroke volume
- increased blood volume
- increased red blood cell volume, enhancing oxygen delivery
- Increased capillarization of muscles (see p.34)
- increased mitochondria (see p.34), in number and size, allowing for improved aerobic cell respiration
- increased oxidative enzyme activity of mitochondria, improving the efficiency of mitochondria.
- increased efficiency of existing capillaries
- improved blood redistribution
- increased size of slow-twitch muscle fibres (see p.19)
- increased myoglobin content of muscle (allowing increased oxygen levels to muscles).

#### Anaerobic training

Anaerobic training (see p.185) increases your body's ability to tolerate and clear blood lactate and also increases your lactate threshold (see pp.34–35). Adaptations result in:

- increased muscular strength
- improved mechanical efficiency
- Increased muscle oxidative capacity
- Increased muscle buffering capacity (enabling muscles to withstand the build-up of acidity that occurs as part of the cellular respiration process)
- Increased lactate-clearance capacity.

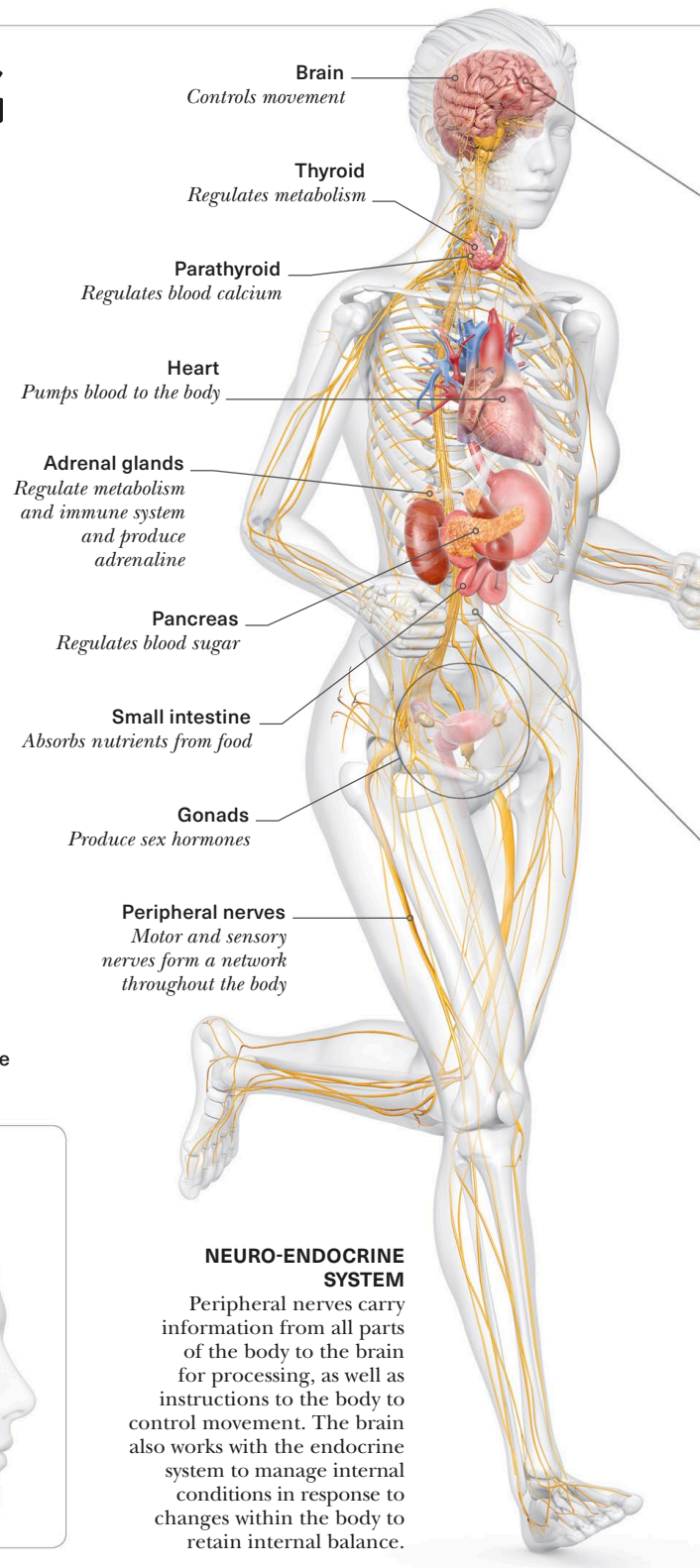


# CONTROLLING MOVEMENT

The brain and nervous system work together with the endocrine system to enable and coordinate both consciously and unconsciously controlled movements during running. They also play an important role in maintaining a state of equilibrium within the body.

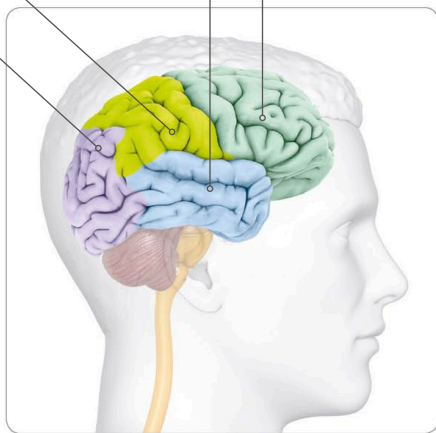
## THE CONTROL NETWORK

The brain is the body's control centre. It sends and receives messages via the spinal cord and peripheral nervous system (PNS). The PNS has two divisions: the autonomic nervous system (ANS) and the somatic nervous system. The somatic nervous system includes both motor and sensory fibres to control voluntary movement of skeletal muscle. The ANS controls involuntary processes such as temperature regulation, breathing, and the regulation of heart rate.



Parietal lobe      Temporal lobe      Frontal lobe

Occipital lobe



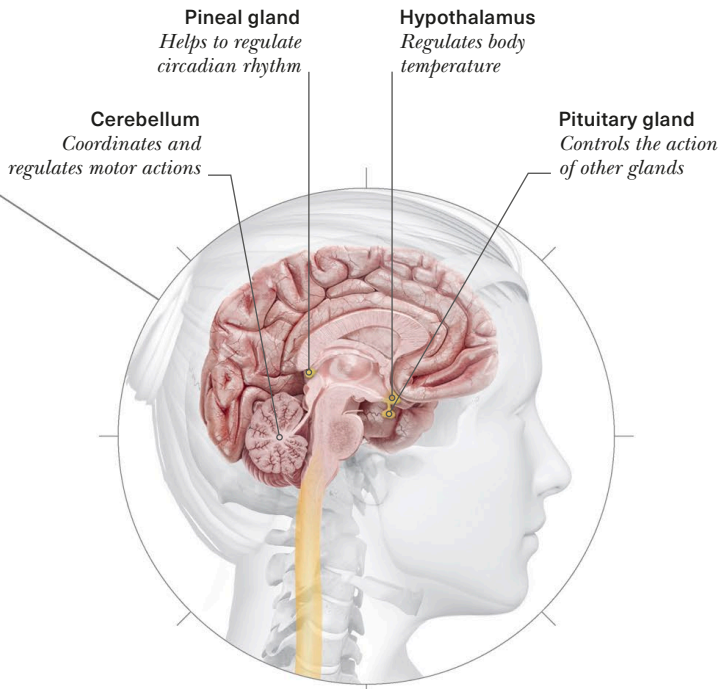
### CEREBRAL CORTEX

The cerebrum forms the bulk of the brain, and is recognizable by its wrinkled outer layer, the cerebral cortex. Areas responsible for motor and sensory control are located in the frontal and parietal lobes respectively.

When you run, your motor cortex works with the spinal cord and other brain regions to control movement.

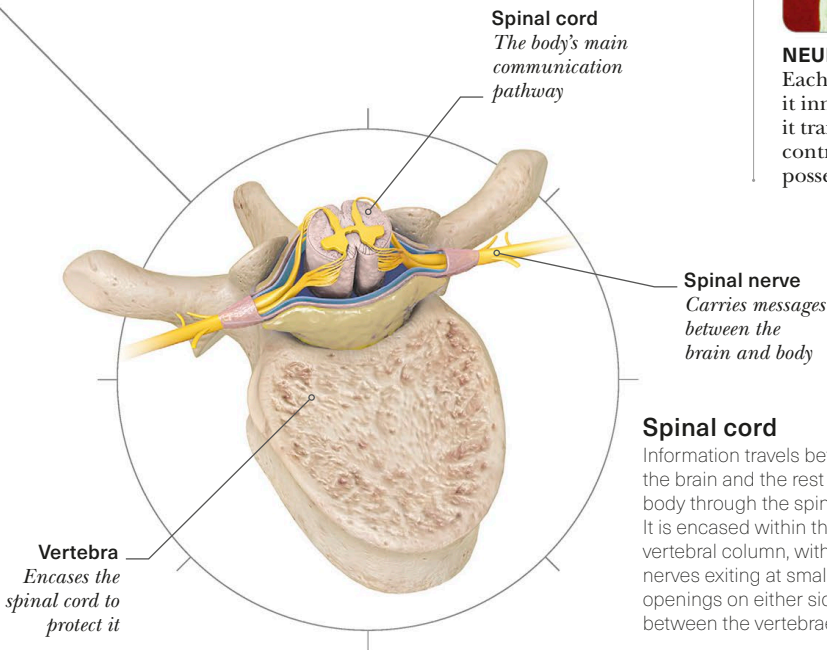
### NEURO-ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

Peripheral nerves carry information from all parts of the body to the brain for processing, as well as instructions to the body to control movement. The brain also works with the endocrine system to manage internal conditions in response to changes within the body to retain internal balance.



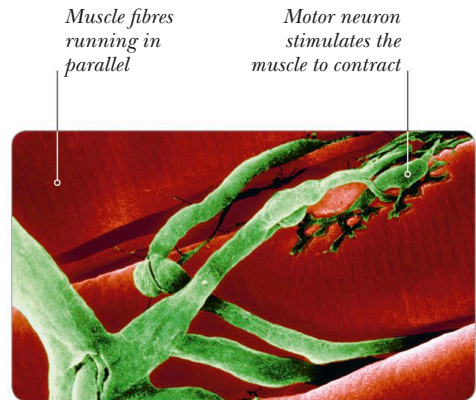
**Brain cross-section**

The cerebellum is smaller than the cerebrum (see opposite). This structure is situated in the lower posterior brain and contributes to the coordination and precision of movements. Important glands are also sited in the brain.



**HOW WE MOVE**

The motor cortex (located at the rear of the frontal lobe) coordinates muscle activity for both involuntary and voluntary movement. Signals sent via motor neurons in the spinal cord and peripheral nerves tell muscles to contract and relax as necessary. When you run, your motor cortex controls a finely coordinated and rapid sequence of motor-neuron firings, which cause specific muscles to contract in order to create the required movements.



**NEUROMUSCULAR JUNCTION**

Each motor neuron meets with the muscle fibre it innervates at a neuromuscular junction, where it transmits the nerve impulses that initiate muscle contractions. Skeletal muscle fibres usually each possess one neuromuscular junction.

**Spinal cord**

Information travels between the brain and the rest of the body through the spinal cord. It is encased within the bony vertebral column, with spinal nerves exiting at small openings on either side, between the vertebrae.



# BALANCE AND COORDINATION

How we balance and synchronize movements relies on the integration of sensory and motor information, often at the subconscious level. For instance, as your weight shifts during running, structures in your inner ear, in combination with visual input, coordinate with your brain in order to maintain balance. Meanwhile, motor input to your legs adjusts the stiffness of your lower limbs to accommodate changes in the terrain. These constant adjustments allow you to maintain a level head and prioritize vision.



## Evolved to run

There is evidence in the human anatomy to support the idea that we evolved the capacity to run long distances. Examples include the optimization of energy use, stabilization of the trunk and head, and regulation of body temperature. The nuchal ligament is one structural modification that was absent in our ape ancestors; another is our comparatively long Achilles tendon.

### Nuchal ligament

*This structure evolved to prevent the head from tipping forwards during activities such as running*



### Achilles tendon

*The Achilles' energy storage and return properties may have evolved in response to endurance running*



**Brain**  
*Processes sensory data and generates motor instructions*

**Spinal cord**  
*Channels sensory signals to the brain and motor signals to the body*

**Peripheral nerves**  
*A body-wide network of nerves merges at the spinal cord*

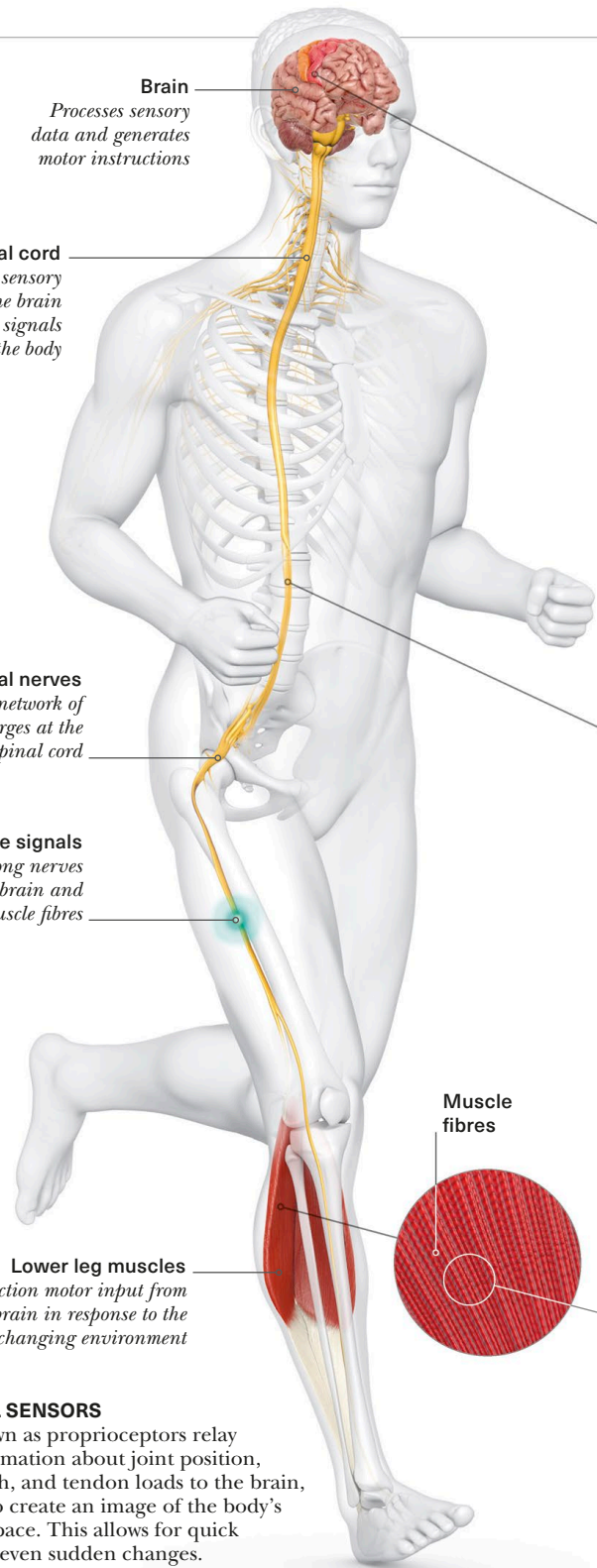
**Nerve signals**  
*Travel along nerves between the brain and muscle fibres*

**Lower leg muscles**  
*Action motor input from the brain in response to the changing environment*

**Muscle fibres**

## POSITIONAL SENSORS

Sensors known as proprioceptors relay sensory information about joint position, muscle length, and tendon loads to the brain, enabling it to create an image of the body's position in space. This allows for quick responses to even sudden changes.





**Sensory cortex**  
Receives and processes sensory information relating to touch, pain, and temperature

**Motor cortex**  
Generates instructions for voluntary movement

**Motor and sensory cortices**  
Located in the cerebral cortex (see p.38), the motor cortex is involved in planning, coordinating, and controlling voluntary motion. It sits beside the sensory cortex, which processes and integrates sensory data from the body.

**Motor neuron**  
Relays nerve signals to muscle fibres

**Interneurons**  
Connect nerves to the spinal cord

**Sensory neuron**  
Carries impulses from peripheral nerves

**Spinal cord**  
There are three main types of nerve cells in the spinal cord. Sensory neurons pass sensory data from the body to the brain. Motor neurons carry instructions from the brain to skeletal muscle fibres to control movement. Both communicate with the central nervous system (CNS) via interneurons.

Motor signals from the brain

Sensory signals to the brain

**Muscle spindle fibre**  
Detects changes in the muscle's length

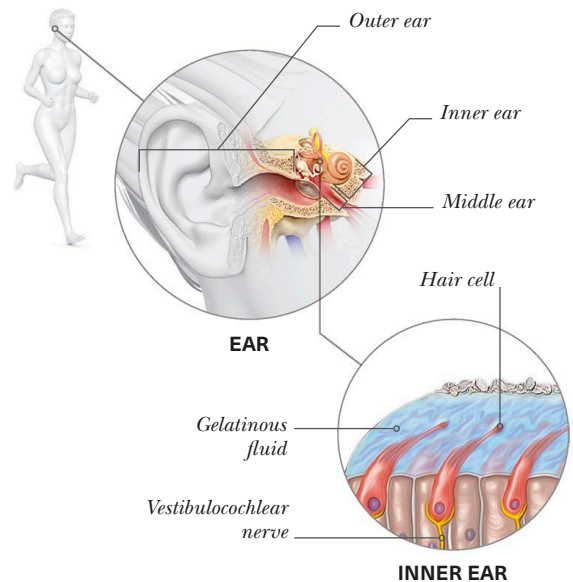
**Sensory neuron**  
Relays sensory information to the brain

**Muscle cell**

**Muscle spindles**  
These receptors within muscles pick up information about changes in muscle length and tension to relay to the CNS. Through a reflex action, they also prevent muscles from overstretching, by initiating a stronger counter-contraction.

## Balance

Loop-shaped, fluid-filled canals in the inner ear contain hair-like sensors that detect movement in three planes. The signals they send to the brain enable it to monitor the position of the head in space as you move. They also detect sudden deviations, such as when you step off a curb while running. The brain interprets this information in conjunction with other sensory data and coordinates the appropriate response to retain balance and keep the head level.



### DIRECTION OF MOVEMENT

Gelatinous fluid surrounds tiny hair-like sensors within the otolithic membrane of the inner ear. As the head moves, the movement of the fluid around the sensors enables them to pick up information that allows the brain to determine the direction of the movement.

## Vision and coordination

Your eyes work in the same way as other sensors do, passing sensory input (in this case, visual) to the brain for processing. This allows you to anticipate the terrain ahead and plan for changes in it, or navigate around moving objects such as dogs or crowds. Much of this coordination happens at the subconscious level. Maintaining a level head, despite the impact from each step, accommodates this function.



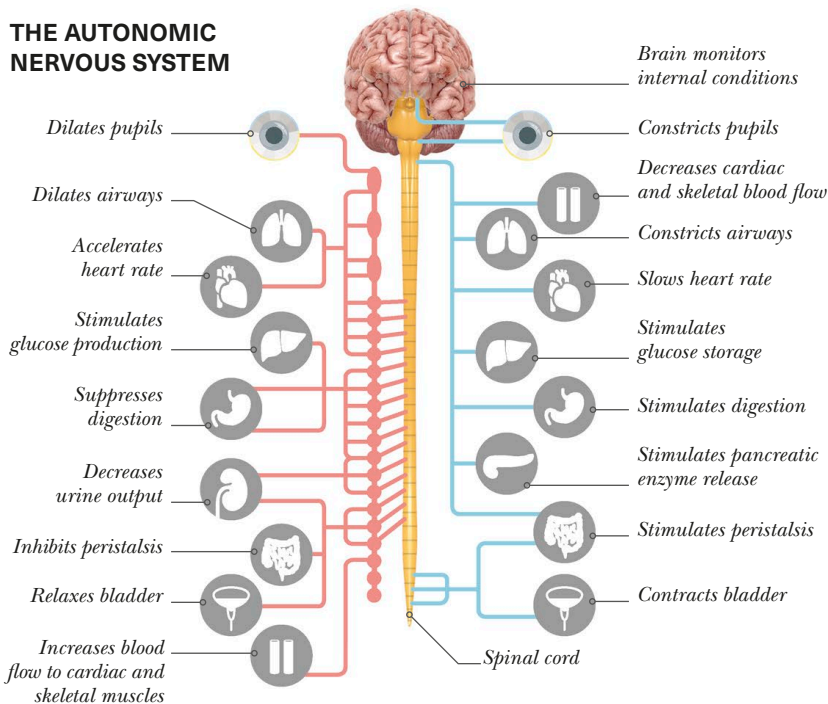
# UNCONSCIOUS FUNCTIONS

As well as conscious movement, the brain and nervous system also control the many unconscious functions that support exercise. The autonomic nervous system (ANS) regulates body temperature, breathing, and heart rate in the background while we run. It is divided into the sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems. During exercise, the sympathetic nervous system is mainly active, accelerating heart rate, dilating blood vessels and airways, and inhibiting digestion.

## Homeostasis

Homeostasis is the state of internal equilibrium that the body works to retain despite changing conditions. The ANS coordinates with the endocrine system to release hormones into the bloodstream to maintain homeostasis. Hormones are chemical messengers that influence cellular functions. They control a number of physiological reactions in the body, including energy metabolism and tissue growth.

### THE AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM



### SYMPATHETIC NERVOUS SYSTEM

Known for the “fight-or-flight” response it initiates, this system sustains functions during stress. Heart rate and strength of contractions increase, airways and blood vessels to the heart and muscles dilate, and glucose is released into the bloodstream to boost muscle power.

### PARASYMPATHETIC NERVOUS SYSTEM

This is the body’s ongoing maintenance system and plays a role in recovery after exercise. It contributes to processes such as digestion, urination, and energy conservation. Its effects tend to oppose those of the sympathetic nervous system.

## Hormonal balance

The endocrine system regulates hormone production so that they are available as required to carry out their vital functions. Overtraining can disrupt hormonal balance. Proper training requires a balance between overload and recovery (see p.169). If there is too much overload or not enough recovery, physical and psychological symptoms can result, manifesting as overtraining syndrome, a disorder that disrupts both the nervous system and hormones.

### Supplementing hormones

Although supplementation is often associated with doping in sports, there are situations in which a physician would advise you to supplement your own hormone production for health reasons.

#### Oestrogen

Overtraining can reduce oestrogen levels in women. In female runners suffering from RED-S (see p.63), oestrogen levels drop dramatically, resulting in loss of bone mass and increased risk of musculoskeletal injury. It can be supplemented with a patch or the birth control pill to normalize oestrogen levels and reduce injury risk.

#### Thyroxine

Both the condition of hypothyroidism and overtraining can reduce circulating levels of thyroxine, resulting in reduced metabolic rate and protein synthesis. Thyroid hormone replacement is usually prescribed to promote balance.

#### Insulin

Insulin regulates the entry of glucose into the body’s tissues. Without it, only trace amounts of glucose enter cells, with catastrophic results. Diabetes affects the production and/or function of insulin. Supplementing insulin is a common treatment.

## Hormones that affect training

HORMONE	PRODUCTION SITE	FUNCTION
CORTISOL	adrenal glands	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>stimulates the production of glucose, at the expense of proteins and lipids</li> </ul> If you overtrain, too much cortisol floods the body, leading to excessive protein breakdown and sleep problems and, potentially, increased feelings of stress
TESTOSTERONE	mainly the testes in men, and the adrenal glands and ovaries in women	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>increases muscle mass and bone mass</li> <li>in elevated levels, creates larger muscle fibres and decreases recovery time from workouts</li> </ul> If you train too hard, the pituitary gland switches off production until you have recovered. Present in higher levels in men than in women.
OESTROGEN	mainly the ovaries in women, and the adrenal glands and testes in men	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>facilitates the breakdown of stored fat into fuel</li> <li>helps maintain bone density</li> </ul> Present in higher levels in women than men.
ERYTHROPOIETIN	kidney	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>stimulates bone marrow to produce red blood cells, which carry oxygen from the lungs to the muscle cells, thereby increasing oxygen-carrying capacity</li> </ul>
ENDORPHINS	pituitary gland and CNS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>produces “runner’s high” (see p.213), a feeling of euphoria associated with prolonged endurance training</li> </ul> The body adapts to endorphins, so over time we produce less with the same level of stimulation.
ADRENALINE (ALSO KNOWN AS EPINEPHRINE)	adrenal glands	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>triggers fight-or-flight response: increases heart rate, relaxes airways, contracts blood vessels, and stimulates the breakdown of muscle glycogen and fat – functions that are useful to competition runners</li> </ul>
THYROXINE	thyroid gland	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>plays a major role in determining metabolic rate and maintaining muscle, brain, and overall hormonal function</li> </ul> Thyroxine balance must be maintained to ensure muscles contract normally.
INSULIN	pancreas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>causes cells to take up glucose from the bloodstream and either use it as fuel or store it as glycogen in muscles and liver</li> </ul>
ATRIAL NATRIURETIC PEPTIDE	cardiac muscle	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>helps to regulate blood pressure</li> </ul> When you are running, your systolic blood pressure increases, as there is a greater demand on your heart to pump oxygenated blood around your body for bodily function, especially for muscle metabolism.
GROWTH HORMONE	pituitary gland	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>affects protein synthesis, muscle mass, bone density, tendon and ligament strength, and other functions vital for running</li> </ul> The body adapts to GH, so the more you train, the less your body will produce GH at the same level – you will have to work harder to release the same quantities.



# TEMPERATURE CONTROL

Humans are homeothermic, meaning that our internal body temperature must be maintained within a narrow range for survival. This can be challenging when faced with extreme temperatures. During exercise, heat is generated and must be eliminated from the body to maintain core temperature within reasonable limits. If this is not done adequately, the result may be some form of heat illness or possibly even death. At the very least, performance will be affected. If environmental conditions are at the extreme of temperature, relative humidity, or both, thermoregulation is much harder to accomplish.

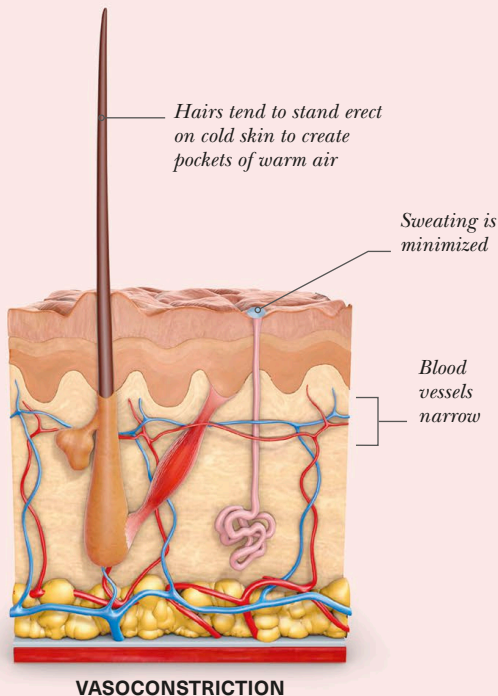
## THERMOREGULATION

Sensory receptors detect when the body's internal temperature deviates from its optimum level. In response, the hypothalamus sets off the appropriate corrective response in order to return the body to homeostasis. As internal conditions normalize, the hypothalamus deactivates the corrective measures.

### Body increases internal temperature

The hypothalamus stimulates heat-generating processes in order to increase internal temperature:

- **Blood vessels at the surface constrict** (vasoconstriction), narrowing in order to minimize blood flow to the skin and restrict the transference of heat from the blood to the atmosphere by radiation.
- **Muscles produce shivering**, which generates heat.
- **Metabolism increases** in response to hormonal stimulation to increase heat generation.



### INTERNAL TEMPERATURE CHANGES

When you run, the activity raises internal temperature. If running in cold conditions, body temperature may reduce if you are inadequately protected from the cold. Internal body temperature must be maintained between 37°C (98.6°F) and 37.8°C (100°F).

CORRECTIVE RESPONSES DE-ACTIVATED

INTERNAL TEMPERATURE RETURNS TO OPTIMUM LEVEL

INTERNAL TEMPERATURE TOO LOW

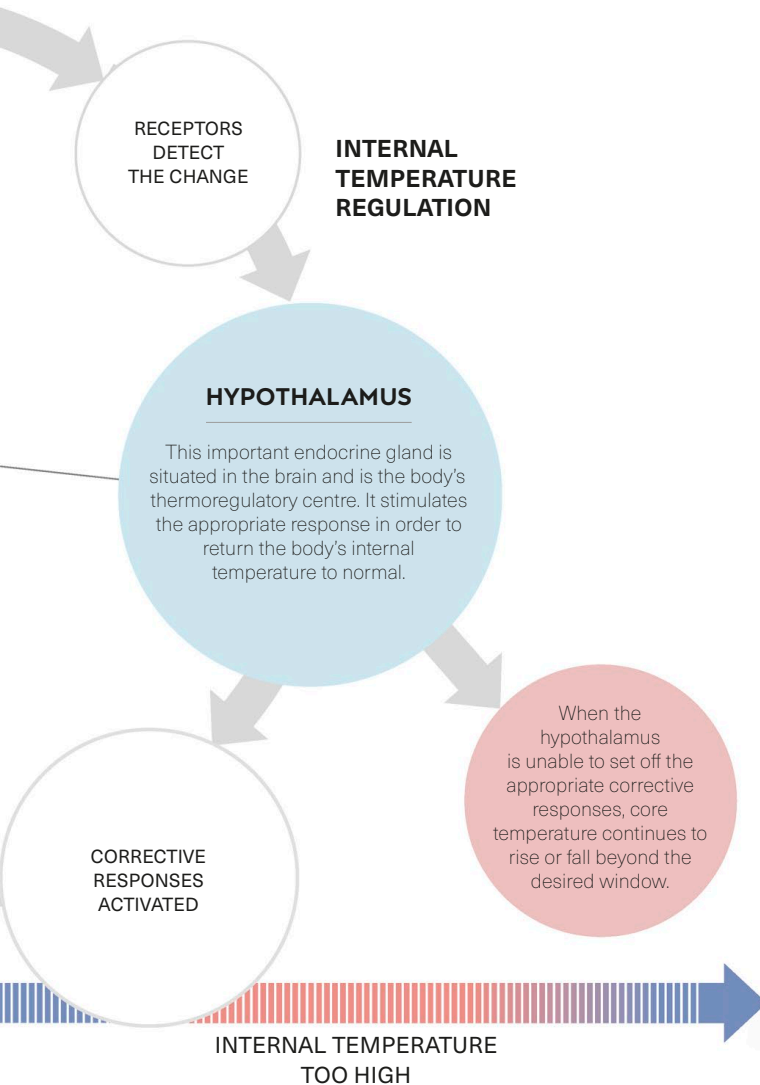
### Heat exposure

Exposure to the combination of environmental heat stress and internal heat generation can lead to either heat exhaustion or heatstroke. Symptoms of heat exhaustion include fatigue, dizziness, nausea, and a weak, rapid pulse. The thermoregulatory functions still function in heat exhaustion, but cannot dissipate heat quickly enough. Heatstroke is a life-threatening illness that requires immediate medical management. It is caused by a failure of the body's thermoregulatory mechanisms and is characterized by cessation of sweating as well as a rapid pulse and respiration rate, and accompanied by confusion, disorientation, or loss of consciousness.



### Training adaptations

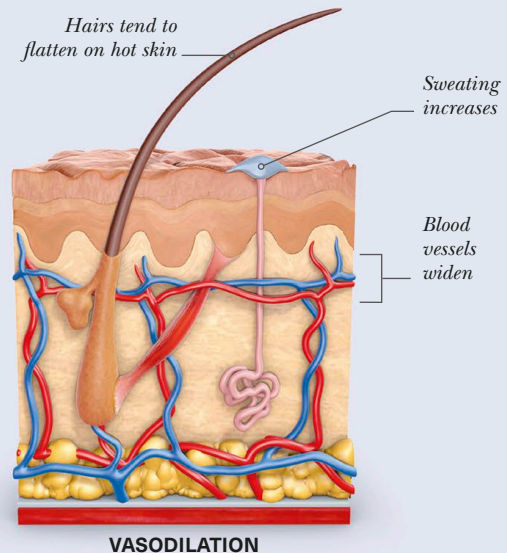
With specific training, the body's tolerance to exercising in hot conditions improves. The sensitivity of the sweat rate/core temperature relationship increases, so that sweating occurs at lower core temperatures, keeping core temperature well within controllable levels. If you plan to race in a climate that is hotter than the one you are accustomed to training in, consider a heat acclimation protocol – such as using a hot tub or sauna after training, or training in a heat chamber – to help improve your performance in the racing climate.



### Body decreases internal temperature

The hypothalamus stimulates heat-loss processes in order to decrease internal temperature:

- **Sweating increases** so the body can cool down as the moisture evaporates. Sweating is the body's primary method of dissipating the heat produced from strenuous exercise. Dehydration may impair the body's capacity to sweat and lose body heat. Hot, humid environments or inappropriate clothing may compromise the ability to lose heat from the body.
- **Blood vessels at the surface dilate** (vasodilation), widening to increase blood flow to the skin, from where heat can be transferred to the atmosphere by radiation. Increased blood flow to the skin shunts blood flow away from working muscles. This means there is less oxygen-rich blood available for powering movement.





# EXTERNAL FACTORS

**Various external factors** affect runners. Impact forces act on the body each time the foot hits the ground. These must be countered by muscle contractions (see pp.18–19) and variations in our biomechanics. Also, the environment through which we run – its weather, terrain, and altitude – determines the work our bodies must do.

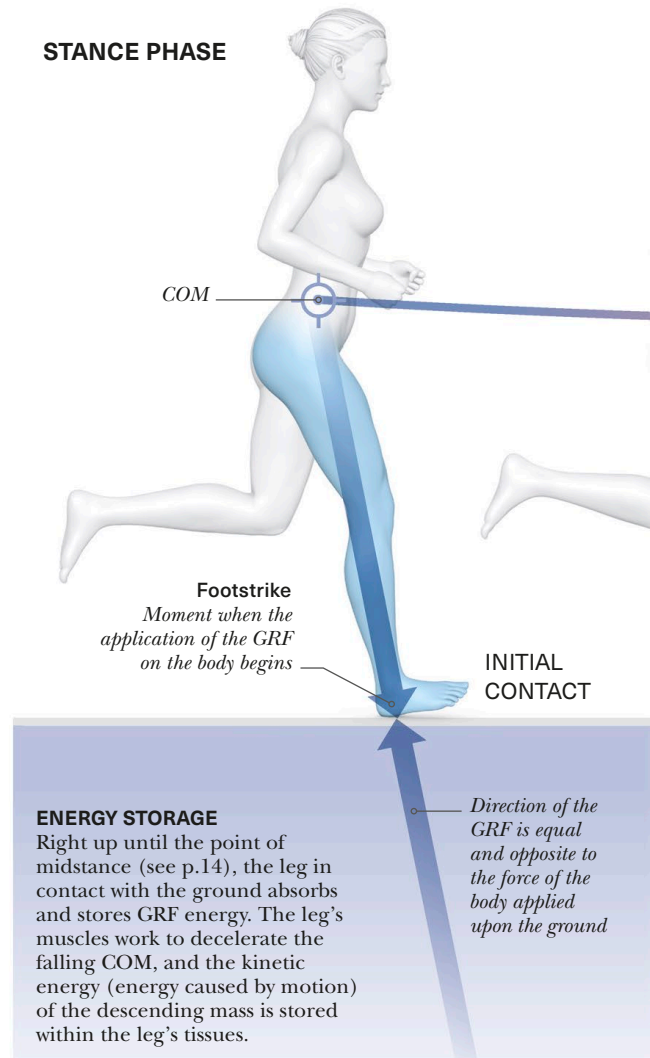
## GROUND REACTION FORCE

Running involves a cyclical series of impacts. Once gravity pulls us to earth, we apply a force on the ground that is met with an equal and opposite ground reaction force (GRF). This force is applied to the body in a direction that consists of vertical, anterior-posterior (or propulsion-braking), and mediolateral (or side-to-side) components. Many injuries have been attributed to the GRF – to both its magnitude and the rate of its application – as the body must absorb this force while storing and transferring as much of its energy as possible into pushing back off the ground. Some studies have linked the vertical GRF loading rate with injury, while others have found associations between injury and the braking (posterior) force.

### GRF distribution

The GRF is absorbed mostly within the lower limbs, although its effects extend through the entire body. How the body lands affects the way in which the GRF is distributed through the body. The posture of the lower limbs during the loading phase of the running cycle (see p.66) determines where the forces are directed. Where these forces are felt affects how our lower limbs move in order to absorb that load. For instance, longer step lengths produce greater braking forces. Landing with more knee flexion requires more strength in the quadriceps, but reduces the forces felt above the knee.

### STANCE PHASE



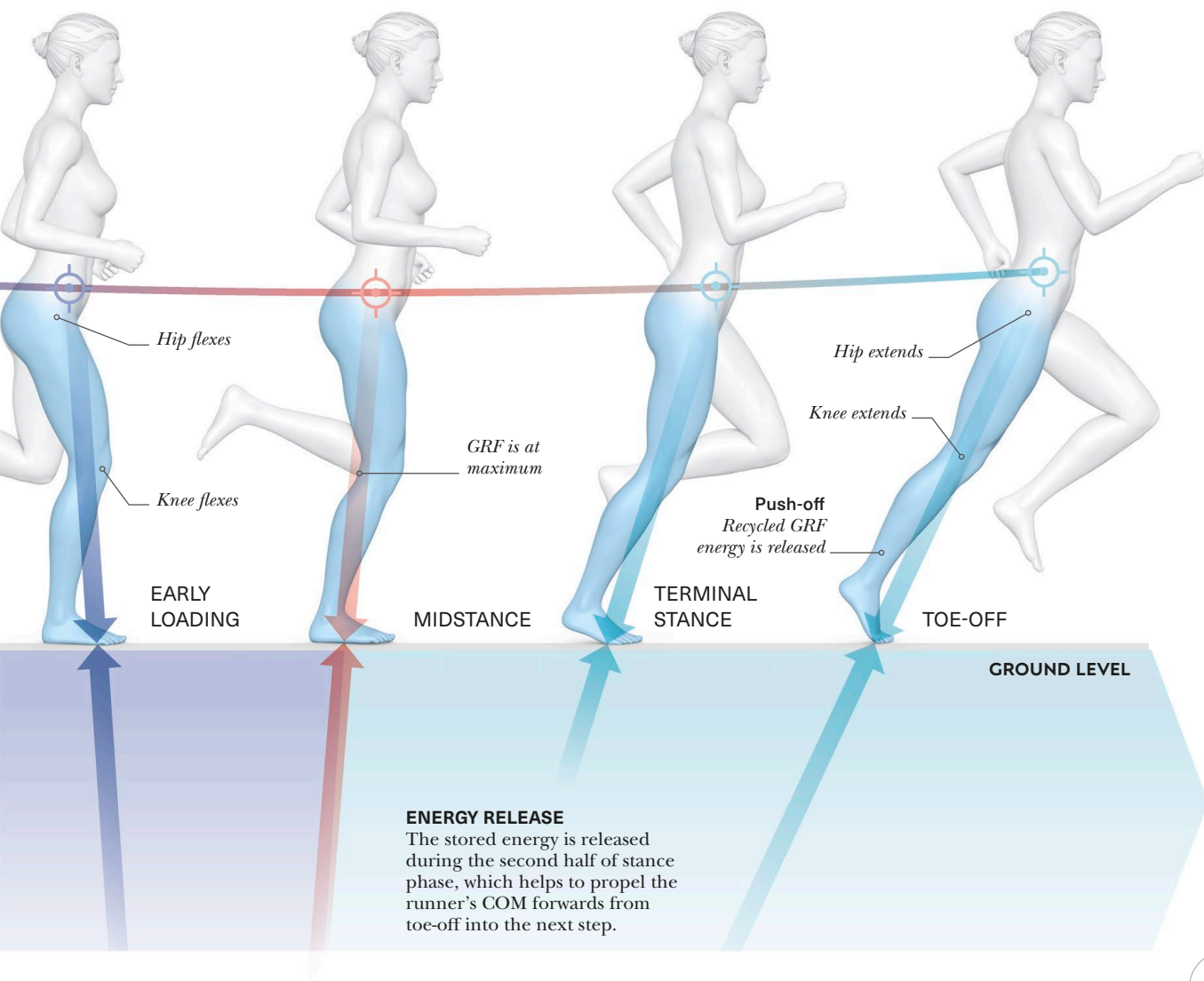
## Storing and transferring energy

With each footstrike, the leg absorbs the GRF energy, then uses it to propel the body into the air. During the first half of stance phase, the body's centre of mass (COM) descends. The joints flex while the viscoelastic tissues within the leg, such as the Achilles tendon, stretch under the weight of the descending body mass as they store the GRF energy (see p.18). The COM is at its lowest point at midstance. During the second half of stance phase, the stored energy is released (see p.19) to accelerate the COM into the air against gravity.



## Minimizing forces

Despite numerous studies, researchers have been unable to determine an optimal gait pattern for reducing the injury risk associated with the GRF. That being said, a rear-foot strike pattern (see p.72), increased vertical oscillation (see p.71), and a longer step length (see p.70) have all been linked to higher rates of vertical GRF. Longer step lengths and forefoot striking (see p.72) have been associated with increased braking forces. One intervention that seems to reduce both vertical and braking forces is to increase your cadence (see p.70).





## Torque

When the GRF is applied to the body, it causes rotational forces (“torques” or “moments”) to act on joints. Torque is a measure of how much a force acting on an object causes that object to rotate about an axis (the pivot point). The force might be applied at any distance from this pivot point, and its magnitude and direction cause the object (the lever arm) to rotate around the axis accordingly. This “external moment” must be countered by an “internal moment” applied to the lever. When running, the ankle and knee are pivot points, and the feet and lower legs are levers. Where the GRF passes relative to the pivot point determines the direction of the external moment applied to the lever. The muscles around the pivotal joint must generate the power (the internal moment) needed to resist this movement. The interplay between these forces determines the lever’s direction of movement.

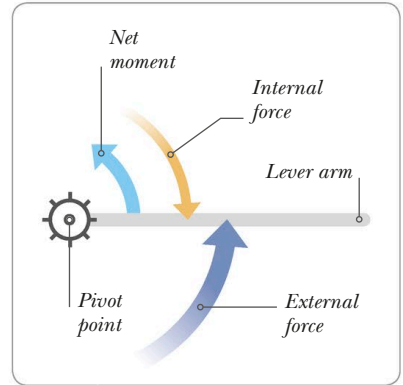
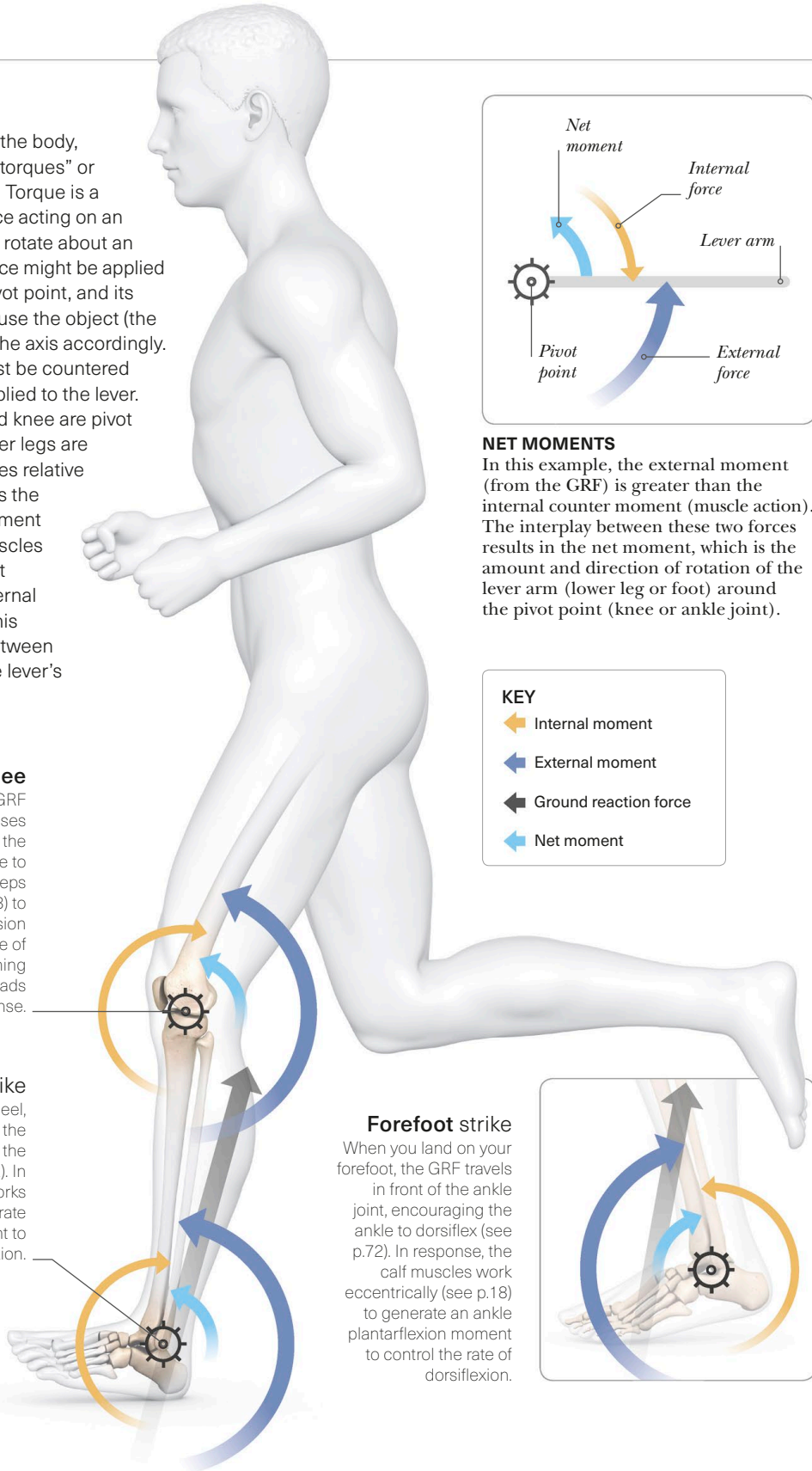
### Knee

At initial contact, the GRF travels in a direction that passes behind the knee. This force on the lower leg encourages the knee to flex. In response, the quadriceps work eccentrically (see p.18) to generate a knee extension moment to control the rate of flexion. Eccentric strength training exercises focussed on the quads build capacity for this response.

### Rear-foot strike

When you land on your heel, the GRF travels behind the ankle joint, encouraging the ankle to plantarflex (see p.72). In response, the tibialis anterior works eccentrically (see p.18) to generate an ankle dorsiflexion moment to control the rate of plantarflexion.

### REAR-FOOT STRIKE



### NET MOMENTS

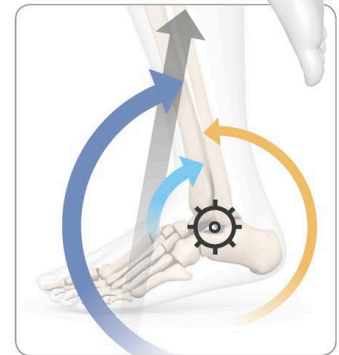
In this example, the external moment (from the GRF) is greater than the internal counter moment (muscle action). The interplay between these two forces results in the net moment, which is the amount and direction of rotation of the lever arm (lower leg or foot) around the pivot point (knee or ankle joint).

### KEY

- Internal moment
- External moment
- Ground reaction force
- Net moment

### Forefoot strike

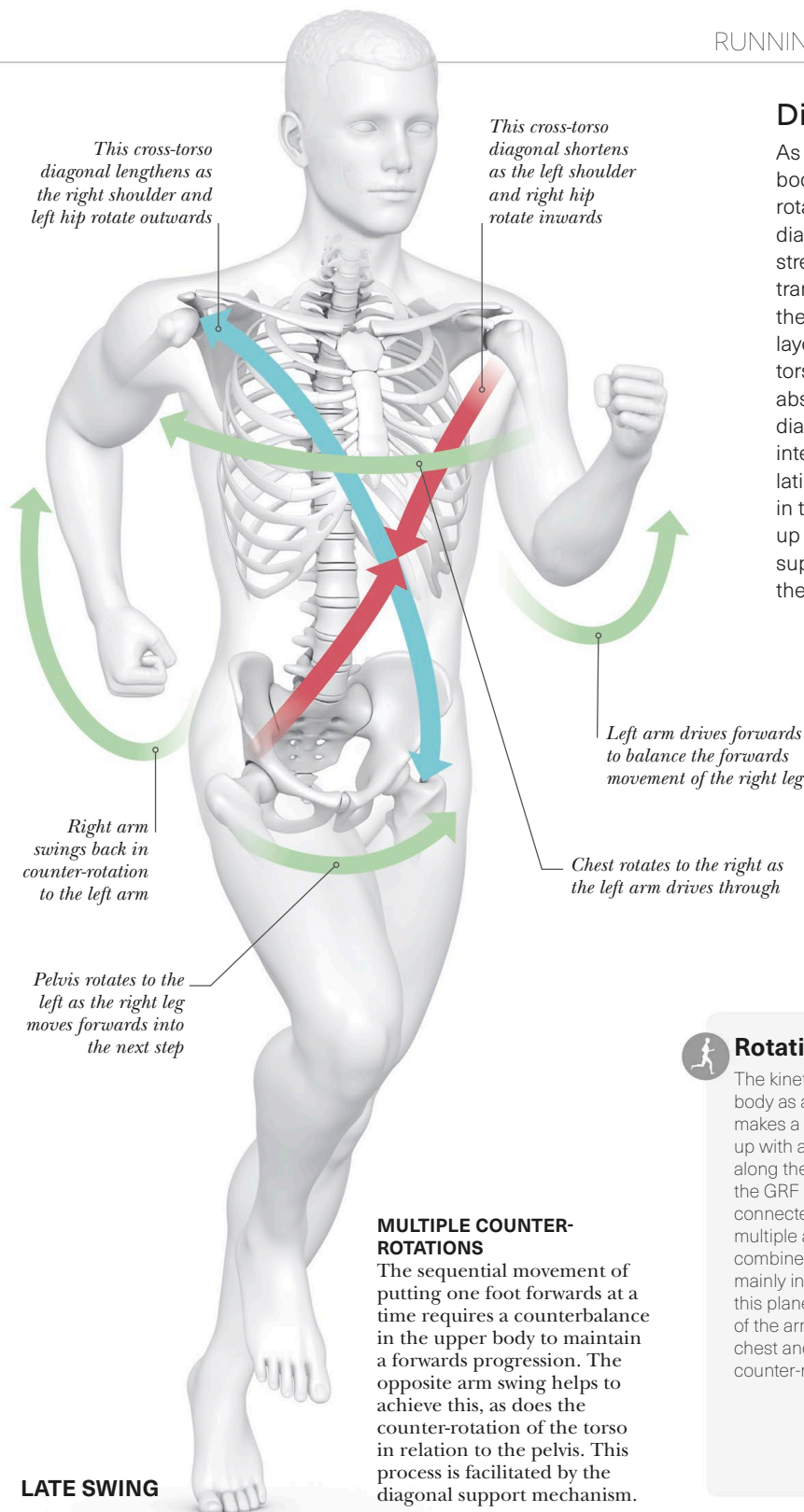
When you land on your forefoot, the GRF travels in front of the ankle joint, encouraging the ankle to dorsiflex (see p.72). In response, the calf muscles work eccentrically (see p.18) to generate an ankle plantarflexion moment to control the rate of dorsiflexion.





## Diagonal elastic support

As rotational forces travel across the body during running, the body's counter-rotation causes the torso to stretch diagonally, and alternate this diagonal stretch with each stride. These movements transfer forces from the lower limbs to the upper limbs and back again. The layered alignment of muscles in the torso enables them to both produce and absorb the force of these rotations. The diagonal muscle-fibre orientation of the internal and external obliques and the latissimus dorsi and thoracolumbar fascia in the back also contribute. The winding up of the torso in one direction helps supply the energy for the unwinding in the opposite direction.



**LATE SWING**

### MULTIPLE COUNTER-ROTATIONS

The sequential movement of putting one foot forwards at a time requires a counterbalance in the upper body to maintain a forwards progression. The opposite arm swing helps to achieve this, as does the counter-rotation of the torso in relation to the pelvis. This process is facilitated by the diagonal support mechanism.



### Rotation through kinetic chain

The kinetic chain is a concept that describes the body as a chain of linked segments. Each segment makes a small individual movement, and these link up with adjoining segments into larger movements along the chain. As you run, your body responds to the GRF and rotational forces acting on it with a connected series of rotational movements across multiple adjoining body segments and joints that combine into larger movement. Running is done mainly in the sagittal plane (see p.10). Rotations in this plane produce the forward-backward swinging of the arms and legs. In the transverse plane, the chest and pelvis segments move in alternating counter-rotation to each other.



# WEATHER

There are many things you can control in your training and racing, but the weather is not one of them, and it can significantly impact your performance. Some climactic conditions can even lead to medical emergencies. However, with preparation and strategy adjustments you can perform well in challenging weather conditions.

## Heat

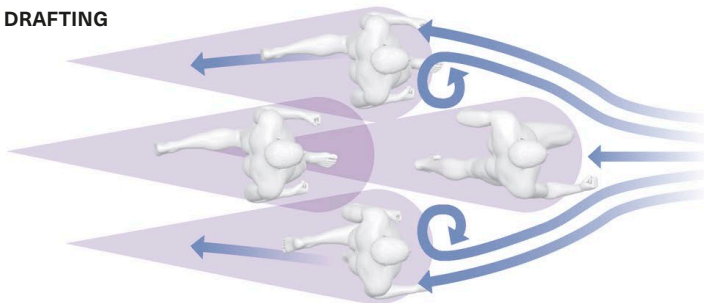
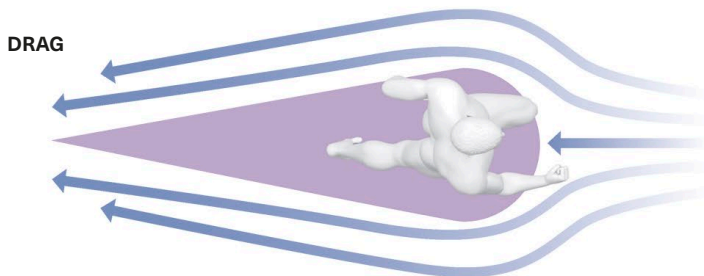
Exercising in the heat increases the perception of effort, meaning movement feels more challenging than in cooler conditions. This is possibly a safety mechanism that discourages us from pushing too hard in difficult conditions. To dissipate body heat in high temperatures, the body shunts blood away from the muscles and towards the skin (see pp.44–45). This decrease in oxygen supply to the muscles induces fatigue.

### Using the heat

Training in the heat offers advantages. Heat is sometimes referred to as “the poor man’s altitude” because training in hot conditions can have effects similar to those of altitude training (see opposite). The body adapts to the heat by increasing blood plasma volume, which allows greater capacity for carrying red blood cells to your working muscles. As little as 10 days training in the heat has been shown to boost  $VO_2$  max values by 5 per cent.

## Wind

The effect of overcoming wind resistance depends on the speed at which you are travelling. This is why wind speed is measured at sprint events and why cyclists race in packs, drafting off one another to save energy. The effect is less pronounced in endurance running, but research suggests that running economy improves while drafting behind someone, especially when running into a headwind.



### DRAG AND DRAFTING

The front runners in this pack push through the air, diverting the air stream around them, creating turbulence and a pocket of negative air pressure behind them. Running within this pocket, the slipstream, reduces drag on the runner behind, who then requires less effort to run at the same pace as the others.

## Humidity

Humidity impairs the body’s ability to lose heat through sweating, which can significantly affect your heat tolerance. One useful tool is the wet-bulb globe temperature, a method for measuring temperature which factors in humidity, solar radiation, wind movement, and ambient temperature to estimate the sum effect of these climactic conditions on the human body. Many racing-event organizations now use this tool, along with the American College of Sports Medicine Heat and Humidity Guidelines for Races, to determine how safe it is to run on a given day. If you regularly train in hot and humid conditions, make use of WBGT readings to help you train safely.

## Rain

While rain can make it difficult to get out the door at times, once you are outside, it is often quite refreshing and pleasant to be running in the rain. It can also help to keep you cool and comfortable once you are warmed up. The danger comes when conditions are cold as well as wet, because once you are wet, your body finds it more difficult to retain heat, which can lead to hypothermia and other cold-related problems. Investing in a good running jacket and wearing a hat and gloves can make a big difference to your safety in cold and wet conditions.

## Cold

As you might expect, running in the cold produces the opposite physiological response to running in the heat. Blood is shunted away from the peripheries in order to retain heat. If training in cold conditions, dress appropriately – select polyester clothing that wicks away sweat, and wear gloves and a warm hat to reduce heat loss from the extremities.

### Air pollution

Air pollution is a concern for many runners living in large urban areas. There are several considerations when it comes to running in air-polluted zones. The amount of time you are exposed to pollution pre-run matters. Driving for an hour through the city to go for a run indoors may not be worthwhile. Shorter, more intense workouts may be effective to minimize overall exposure. Running in the early morning or late evening, when pollution levels are generally lowest, is advisable. Give yourself some distance from active pollution – even small distances and barriers like trees can make a big difference. The decline in pollution levels as you move away from a road is exponential. Indoors is not always better – for instance, chemicals found in cleaning solutions and new carpets or furniture can compromise air quality. If you live in an area with high levels of air pollution, focus on the big picture as you weigh up your options: even exposure to high levels of traffic-related pollution does not outweigh the beneficial effects of physical activity on mortality.

## TERRAIN

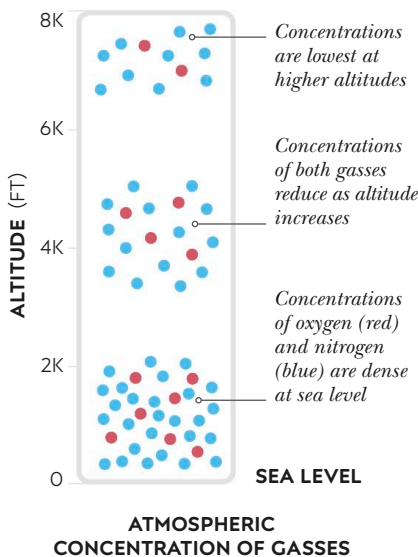
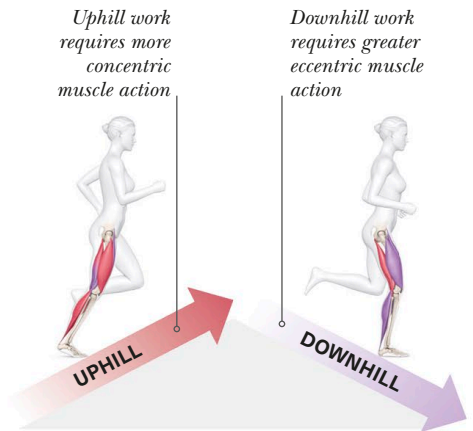
Different types of terrain present the runner's body with specific challenges. It takes practice to become proficient at running up and down hills. Likewise, running on uneven surfaces requires different types of muscle actions and carries specific injury risks. Running at altitude, of course, can make even an easy jog feel like a maximal effort.

## Variable surfaces

Running on a firm, even surface like a road or treadmill can produce fast, consistent results, but may increase risk of overuse injury. Conversely, running on variable terrain such as trails will increase stride-to-stride variability (in cadence, footstrike, and so on), which can affect pace and running economy, but can reduce the risk of overuse injury. Factors such as snow, ice, or loose gravel can also affect performance and change the muscle requirements.

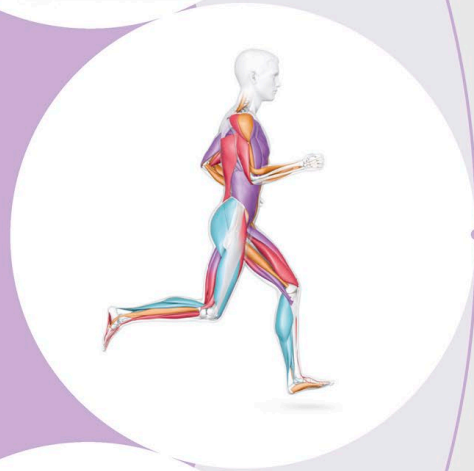
### Hills

Running uphill requires the body to overcome greater resistance than if running on the flat. You recruit more muscle fibres to power your centre of mass off the ground, and receive less contribution from the elastic recoil of tendons (see p.17), so more concentric muscle action (see p.19) is required. Gravity provides momentum when running downhill, but the impact forces experienced are greater, necessitating more eccentric muscle action (see p.18).



### Altitude

Due to lower air pressure, being at altitude means there is less oxygen in the air available to be diffused into the blood. The lower blood oxygenation corresponds with a reduction in  $VO_2$  max (see p.37). The effects of altitude can be felt as low as 600m above sea level, although most runners are not affected until around 900m. Training at altitude produces a beneficial adaptation – it triggers an increase in the number of red blood cells that deliver oxygen to muscles. Consequently, many elite athletes travel to high altitudes to train before racing at sea level.



# PREVENTING INJURY

---

**Every runner knows that injuries are part of the sport**, but also knows too well how frustrating it feels to be unable to run. A little education can go a long way towards preventing injuries in the first place, and speeding recovery from an injury when it does happen. This chapter explains how injuries occur and outlines ways in which you can minimize your own specific risk.



# INJURY RISKS

**There are numerous health benefits** to running, but it also carries an inherent risk of injury. Most injuries result from overuse rather than trauma. Broadly speaking, there are three main categories of risk considered to cause running injuries: biomechanical factors, anatomical factors, and training error.

UP TO  
**50%**  
OF RUNNERS  
EXPERIENCE A  
RUNNING INJURY  
EACH YEAR



## BIOMECHANICAL FACTORS

A runner's biomechanics – how they move and position different parts of their body as they run – is known as “running form”, and your individual form can have an effect on your risk of injury. Several common injuries, such as patellofemoral pain, iliotibial band pain, and stress fractures of the shins (tibia), have been linked with specific running

biomechanics. Recent research suggests that improving your running form may help to protect against injury. Learn all about running biomechanics and how to assess and make changes to your running form on pp.66–75.

## ANATOMICAL FACTORS

Some anatomical “abnormalities”, such as flat feet or knock knees, are considered risk factors for running injuries, but this belief has not been backed up by research. Your body becomes accustomed to its own anatomy and will adapt to your training as long as you build up your training load gradually.

## TRAINING ERROR

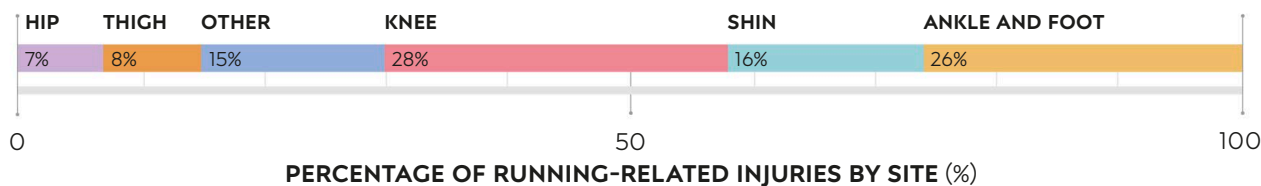
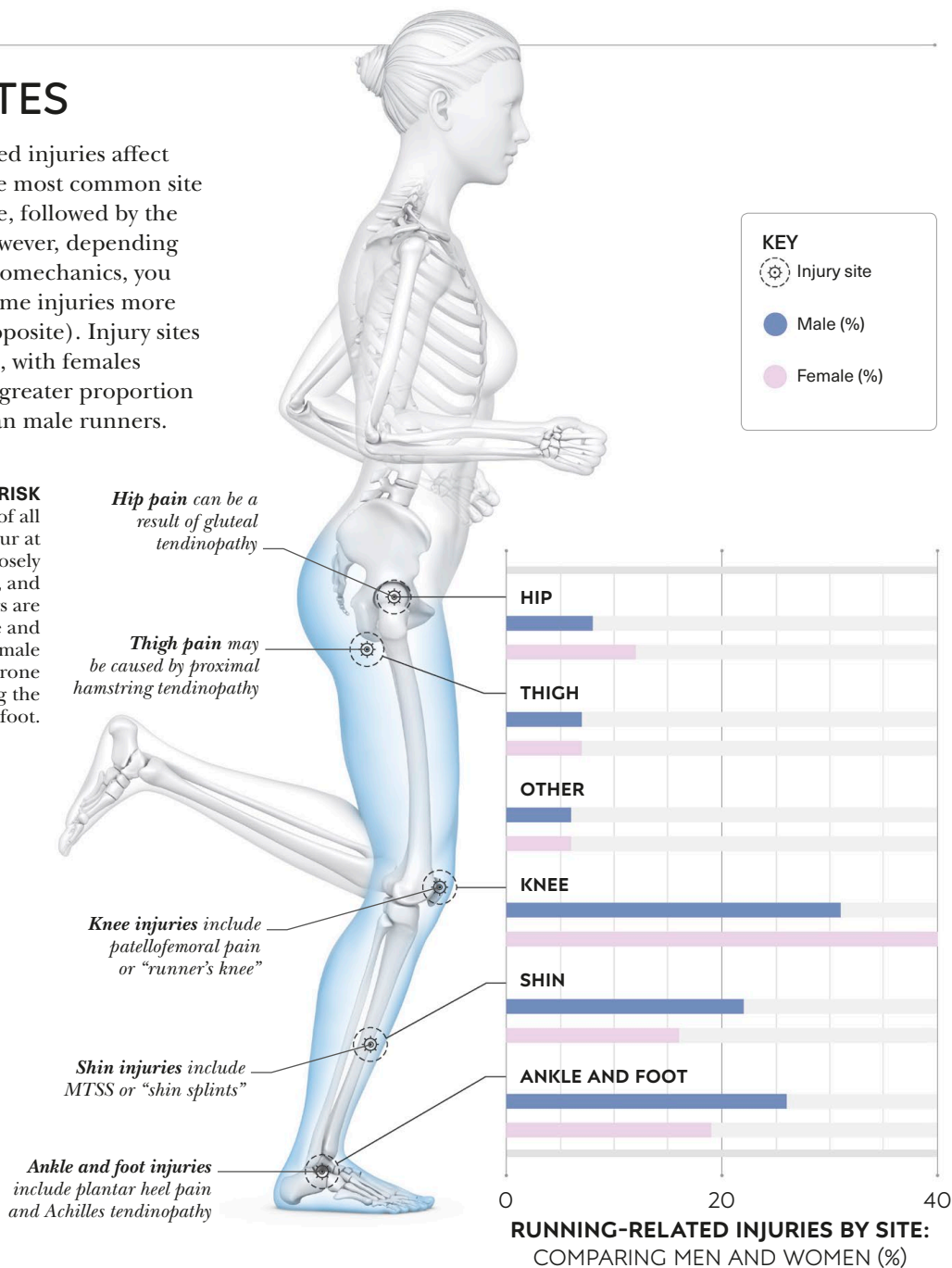
Fluctuations in training load are a common mistake. Running repeatedly subjects the body to impact forces (see pp.46–47), causing tissue breakdown that requires time to heal. When you overtrain, the repair process cannot keep pace with the rate at which those stresses are being applied, leading to injury.

# INJURY SITES

Most running-related injuries affect the lower body. The most common site of injury is the knee, followed by the ankle and foot. However, depending on your running biomechanics, you may be prone to some injuries more than others (see opposite). Injury sites also depend on sex, with females tending to suffer a greater proportion of knee injuries than male runners.

## LOCATING INJURY RISK

Almost one-third of all running injuries occur at the knee, followed closely by the ankle, foot, and shin. Female runners are at greater risk of knee and hip injury, while male runners are more prone to issues involving the shin, ankle, and foot.

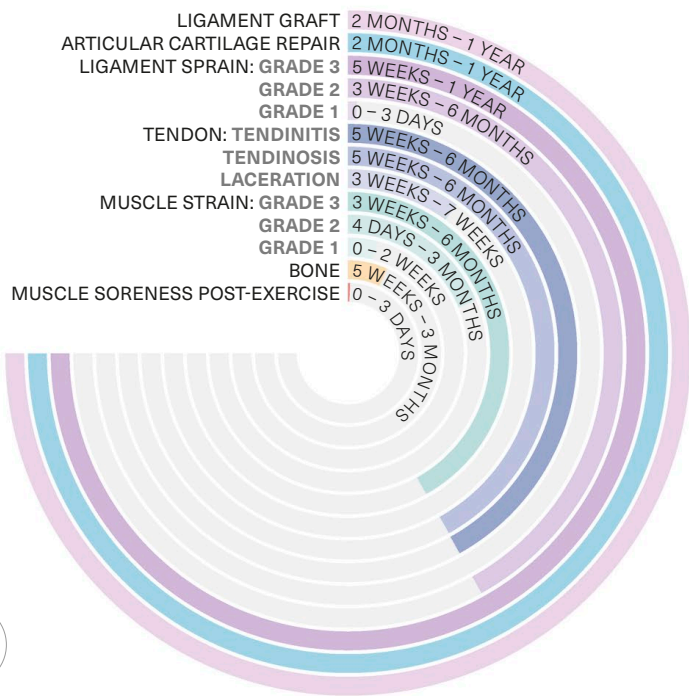
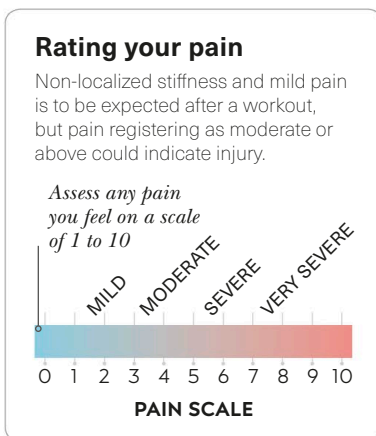


# COMMON INJURIES

The risk of injury is part of the sport of running and unfortunately many runners experience the injuries described on the following pages. However, armed with a little knowledge, there are things you can do to limit your risk and maximize your chances of complete recovery should you get injured.

## WHEN TO STOP TRAINING

Runners are known for running through pain, but it is crucial to recognize the difference between the pain of exertion and the pain of injury. If you feel pain that you would rate greater than 3/10 (see right), during or after a run, stop training and seek advice from a physiotherapist. Another signal to stop is if your running gait changes due to pain. Some wearable sensors can detect asymmetries early on to warn of potential changes in gait.



## SELF-HELP

Think POLICE to remember the self-help measures you can take if you suffer injury:

- **Protection:** protect the injured area by taping or wearing a brace, or by using off-the-shelf orthotics to redistribute pressure from the site.
- **Optimal (and early) Loading:** do not overwork injured tissue, but don't avoid using it either. Keep moving to maintain strength and range of movement. Pain-avoidance movement patterns can become habitual, which may affect your running gait and lead to further injury.
- **Ice:** apply ice to the injured site for pain relief.
- **Compression and Elevation:** elevate the injured site and use compression bandages or socks to reduce swelling and limit tissue damage.

### INJURY HEALING TIMES

Differences in blood supply and cellular turnover mean some tissues take longer than others to heal. Bear this in mind when returning to training. While you may feel healed, some tissues may not yet be ready for a more challenging training load.



# PATELLOFEMORAL PAIN

Also known as “runner’s knee”, this condition is experienced as pain around, behind, or under the patella (kneecap). Pain can range from mild to severe and may be felt during a run or while performing day-to-day activities such as walking, sitting, squatting, or climbing stairs.

## COMMON CAUSES

Patellofemoral pain has many causes. Not all of them are running-related, but excessive or rapid increases in training often contribute. Individual biomechanics, such as increased hip adduction

(see p.10), may also be a risk factor, as can running on harder surfaces and downhill running.

## TREATMENT

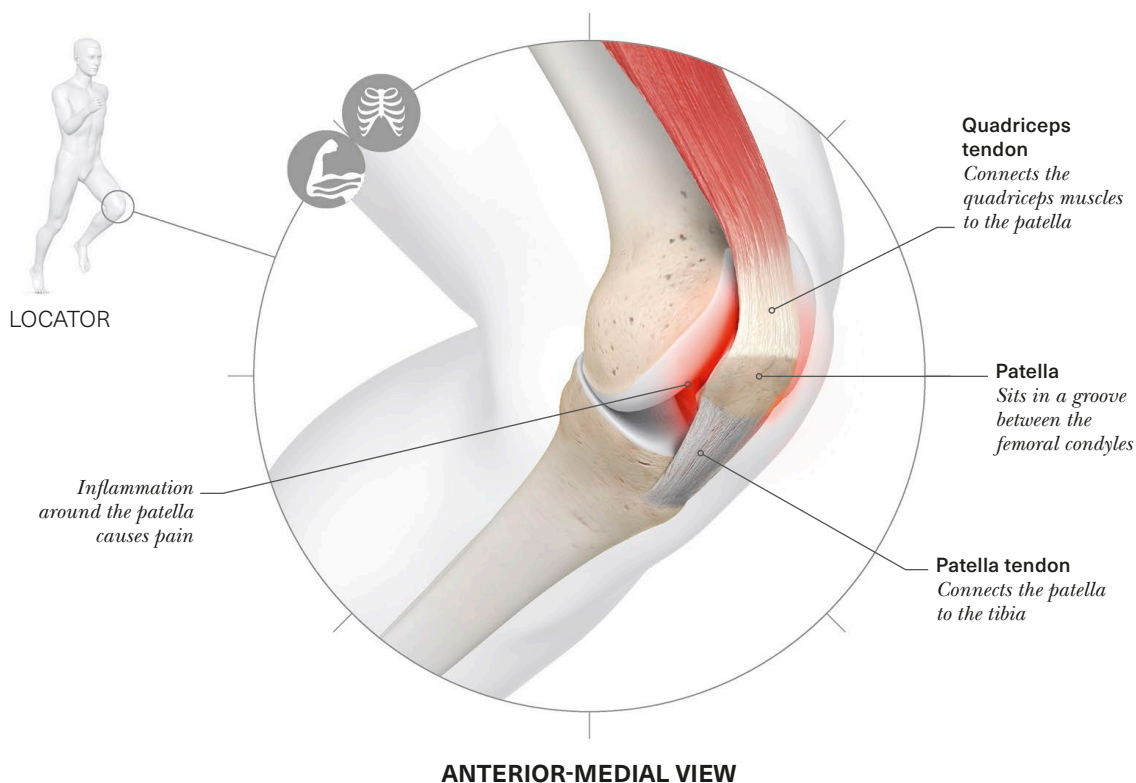
Seek help early for the best chance of recovery. Treatment can include:

- Short-term pain reduction through taping, bracing, and the use of off-the-shelf orthotics.
- A temporary reduction in your training load.
- Professional gait retraining may help if you have a biomechanical risk factor.
- Following a programme of static stretches and strength exercises

that target the hip and thigh muscles: see pp.92–93, 118–129, and 136–139.

## RETURNING TO TRAINING

Recovery time will vary; use pain as a guide for when to return to training. Low impact cross-training on a stationary bike or in the pool will help maintain fitness while building up strength. Increase training load gradually, and stick to running on softer surfaces and avoiding hills to reaccustom the knee to impact. If you usually run on roads or a treadmill, try trails, which have more variable terrain.



# ACHILLES TENDINOPATHY

This is a degenerative condition caused by structural changes to the tendon, which result in pain along the tendon or at its insertion on to the heel bone. The heel may feel painful in the morning or at the start of a run, but symptoms may subside once warmed up. The condition can become a chronic and disabling injury if it isn't dealt with quickly and appropriately.

## COMMON CAUSES

Achilles tendinopathy usually develops because of a rapid increase in training load (whether distance, frequency, or intensity),

or due to individual biomechanics, changes in footwear, or running on harder terrain.

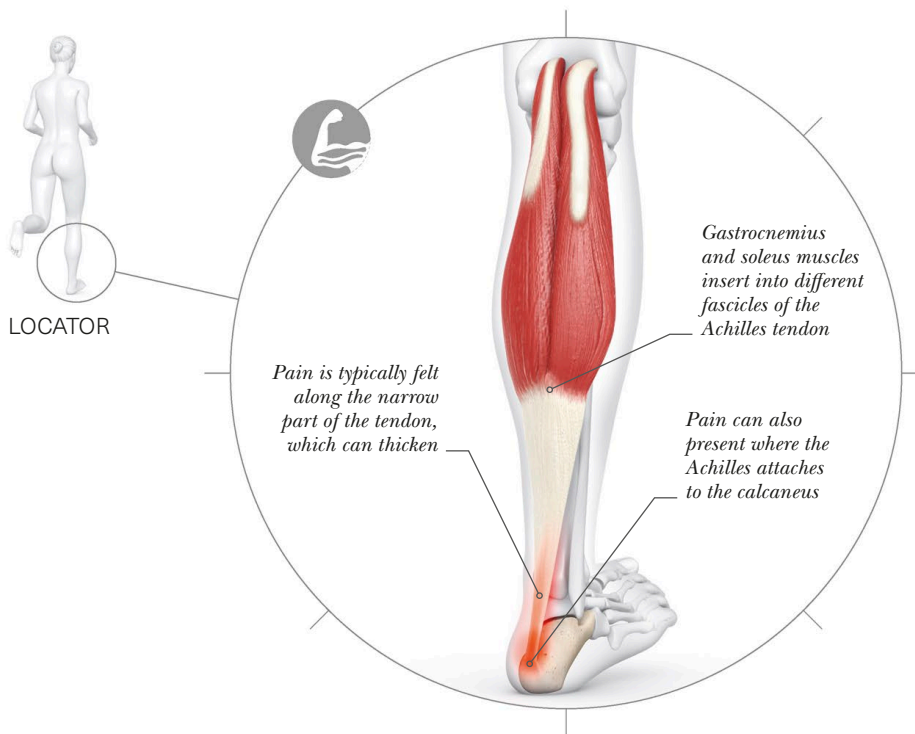
## TREATMENT

Early treatment offers the best chance of full recovery and can include the following:

- Anti-inflammatory medication for pain relief, if needed.
- A temporary reduction in your training load.
- Wearing shoes with higher heels or wedges to unload the tendon.
- A programme of dynamic calf stretches and strength training for the Achilles tendon: see pp. 82–83, 108–111, and 154–155.

## RETURNING TO TRAINING

If the condition is recognized early, reducing training load could settle the Achilles tendon in 5–10 days. Once the tendon has settled, gradually bring your training load back up to previous levels. Bear in mind that pain is not always a good indicator in tendon injuries, as it may take up to 24 hours to feel symptoms if you've overloaded the tendon. Low impact cross-training in the pool or on the bike will help maintain fitness while building up strength. Speed work and running uphill can place stress on the tendon, and are best avoided until the condition has healed.



POSTERIOR-LATERAL VIEW

# MEDIAL TIBIAL STRESS SYNDROME (MTSS)

Often called “shin splints”, MTSS causes mild to severe pain along the inside of the tibia (shinbone) during weight-bearing exercise. The affected area is usually tender when touched and spans at least 5cm (2in). MTSS is common in new runners, but can also occur after running on a different surface, using new shoes, or increasing training intensity.

## COMMON CAUSES

Increased impact forces on the body often bring on MTSS, caused by running on harder or cambered surfaces, or by the cumulative impact from a sudden increase in

training load. Some biomechanical risk factors, such as increased pronation or foot abduction (see p.73), narrow step width (see p.71), or lower cadence (<170 steps/min; see p.70), may also cause MTSS.

## TREATMENT

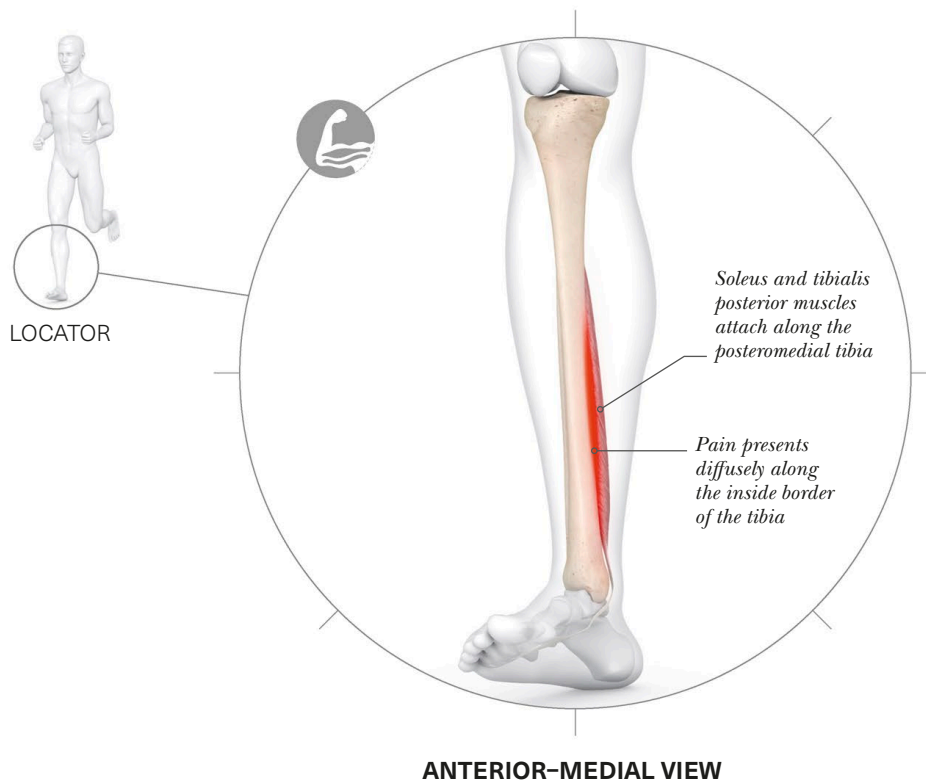
No single treatment is effective, but the following should help:

- A temporary reduction in your training load.
- A programme of graded loading exposure (incremental increases to training load) can help manage the toll of impact forces, taking into account training history, surface, and footwear.

- Gait retraining may help if you have a biomechanical risk factor.
- Strength training for the soleus and tibialis posterior: see pp.108–111 and 112–117.

## RETURNING TO TRAINING

If treated early, recovery can be quick; use pain as a guide for when to increase training. Low impact cross-training in the pool or on the bike will help maintain fitness while building up impact tolerance. Increase load gradually, ideally running on softer surfaces such as trails. Avoid running downhill or on cambered surfaces, to reaccustom the shin to impact.



# PLANTAR HEEL PAIN

This covers several conditions affecting the underside of the heel, the most common being plantar fasciitis. Typically, pain is felt when bearing weight on the heel, especially in the morning and after periods of inactivity, but may subside while running. The area can be extremely tender to the touch.

## COMMON CAUSES

Plantar heel pain usually develops because of a rapid increase in training load (distance, frequency, or intensity), from running on hard terrain, wearing new or unsuitable

footwear (both running and casual), or as a result of individual biomechanical risk factors.

## TREATMENT

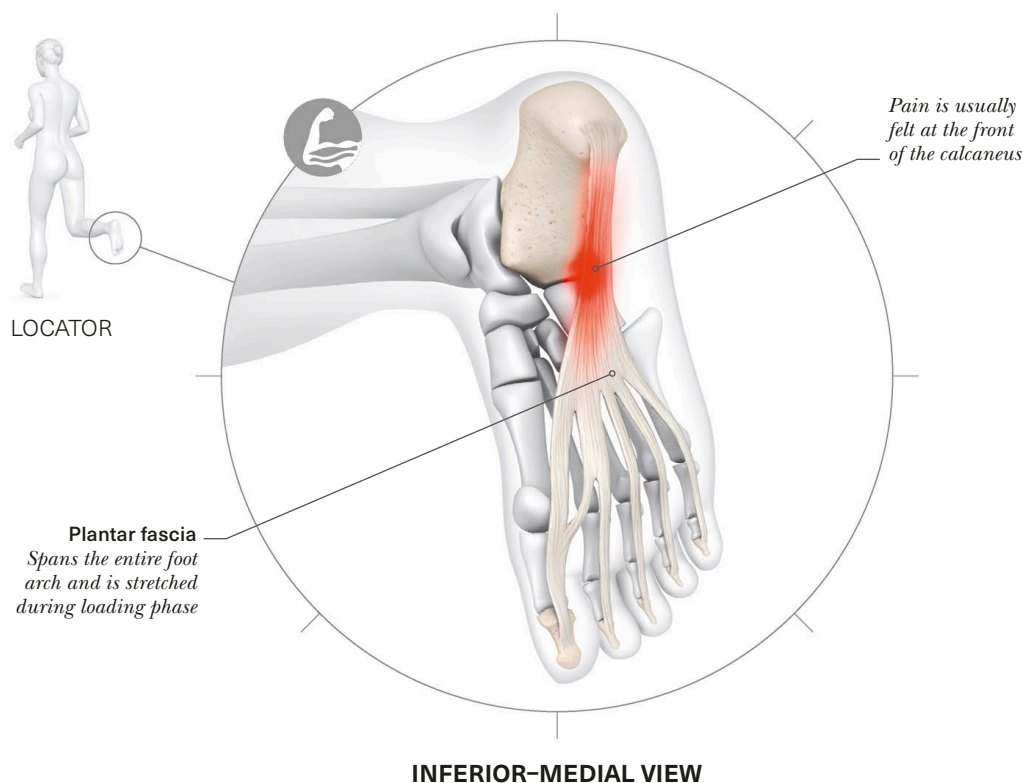
Seek help early to improve your chances of recovery with the following treatments:

- Wearing supportive shoes or off-the-shelf orthotics to distribute pressure away from the heel, in order to settle the pain initially. Introduce new shoes gradually by rotating them with old ones.
- A temporary reduction in your training load.

- A programme of calf stretches and strength exercises targeting the plantar fascia and intrinsic foot muscles: see pp. 82–83, 100–107, and 110–111.

## RETURNING TO TRAINING

Severity and duration of pain influences recovery time. If the plantar fascia is overloaded it may take up to 24 hours to feel symptoms, meaning pain is not always a good indicator for judging training load. Low impact cross-training in the pool or on the bike helps maintain fitness while building up strength. Avoid speed work until fully healed.



# ILIOTIBIAL BAND PAIN

The iliotibial (IT) band is a tendon-like structure that extends along the outside of the leg from the hip to the knee. The condition is felt as pain over the outside of the knee as it bends in midstance (see p.67). The pain can be sharp and debilitating, and is often made worse with prolonged downhill running.

## COMMON CAUSES

IT band pain often develops from a rapid increase in training, especially if it features downhill running. Some biomechanical risk factors can also put strain on the IT band;

these include contralateral pelvic drop (see p.73), increased hip adduction (see p.10), and narrow step width (see p.71). The pain is thought to be due to compression of structures deep to the IT band, and not from the band itself.

## TREATMENT

The following treatments may be recommended:

- Strength training for the hip abductors: see pp.118–131 and 136–139.
- Dynamic and recovery stretches, including a stretch to release the tensor fasciae latae (TFL)

muscles (the IT band itself cannot be stretched or released): see pp.78–79 and 90–95.

- Reduction in training load by decreasing volume and avoiding downhill runs.
- Gait retraining may help those with a biomechanical risk factor.

## RETURNING TO TRAINING

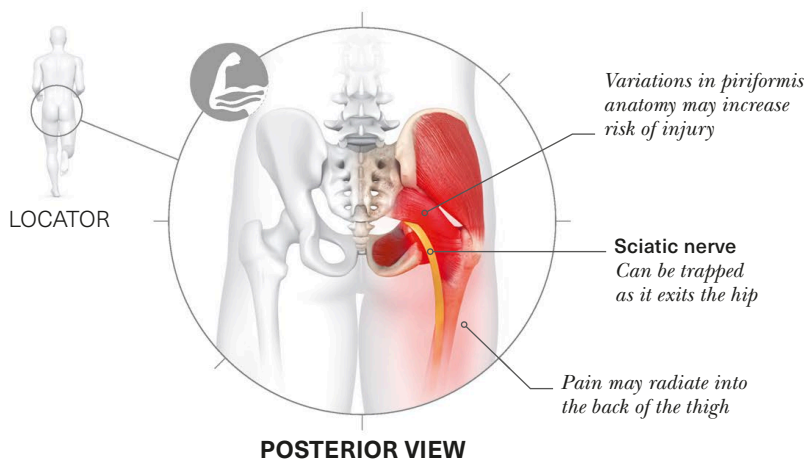
Recovery time depends on the duration of the IT band pain. Do not run through the pain; limit your runs to distances that are pain-free. Runners who return to high-volume training too soon often re-aggravate the injury.



## DEEP GLUTEAL SYNDROME

Previously known as piriformis syndrome, this condition describes buttock pain caused by trapping or compression of the sciatic nerve within the hip. Pain is felt

deep in the buttock and may be accompanied by sciatic pain or cramping along the back of the thigh. Long periods of running and sitting can aggravate it.



### COMMON CAUSES

Deep gluteal syndrome usually develops after significant increases in running duration or intensity. In many cases, it is preceded by some sort of lower back pain or trauma, such as from a fall or childbirth.

### TREATMENT

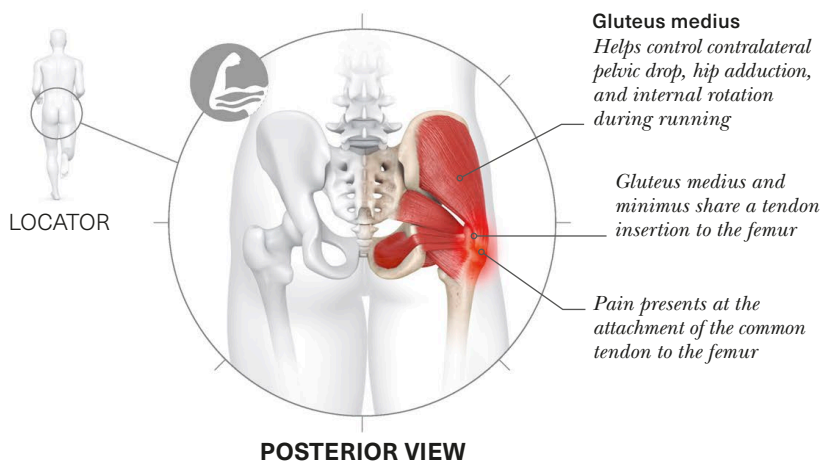
The following actions may be recommended to aid recovery:

- Reducing your time spent sitting.
- Sciatic “flossing” (nerve stretching) exercises combined with the manipulation and kneading of the muscles by a physiotherapist.
- A graded programme of strength training exercises targeting muscles of the hip abductors,

## GLUTEAL TENDINOPATHY

Often referred to as greater trochanteric bursitis, gluteal tendinopathy is pain and tenderness felt in the side of the hip where the gluteal tendon

attaches to the top of the femur. Symptoms are often disabling since it can be uncomfortable to run, walk, or even lie on the affected side.



### COMMON CAUSES

Gluteal tendinopathy is caused by repetitive stress on the gluteal tendon. Impact forces absorbed by your leg as the foot strikes the ground (see pp.66–67), can damage the tendon if it cannot cope with the rate of the load applied. Downhill running and biomechanical factors, such as increased hip adduction (see p.10) and knee valgus (see p.73), can also lead to this injury.

### TREATMENT

The following actions may be recommended to aid recovery:

- For those with a biomechanical risk factor, professional gait retraining may be useful.

extensors, and external rotators, to increase their ability to support the loads related to running: see pp.118–119, 122–131, and 136–139.

- Dynamic and static stretching, particularly of the back of the hip to relieve tension on the nerve: see pp.78–81 and 90–95.

### RETURNING TO TRAINING

Reduce training load, but do not stop running altogether. Avoid longer runs, speed work, and running uphill initially. Spend more time on your dynamic warm up – especially forward leg swing (see pp.78–79) and side leg swing (see pp.80–81) – to increase the range of motion at the hip.

- Static stretches for the back of the hip: see pp.90–95.
- Strength exercises for the hip abductor muscles: see pp.118–131, 136–139, and 142–143.

### RETURNING TO TRAINING

Reduce your training load, but don't stop running altogether. Increase load gradually as symptoms allow. Bear in mind pain is not always a good indicator in tendon injuries, as it may take up to 24 hours to feel symptoms if the tendon has been overloaded. Low impact cross-training in the pool or on the bike will help maintain fitness while building up strength. Try running on softer ground and avoid speed work and downhill running.

## STRESS FRACTURE

Stress fractures are fatigue-induced cracks in the bone that develop due to overtraining and inadequate rest. Runners most commonly suffer stress fractures in the shin, foot, hip, and sacrum (lower back bone).

### COMMON CAUSES

Cumulative overload is the main cause, often when the volume or intensity of training suddenly increases. Running with a forefoot strike pattern (see p.72) has also been linked to fractures in the metatarsals due to the higher loads in this area. Poor nutrition and hormonal status can lead to an elevated risk of stress fracture and overall reduced bone health. Long-term energy deficits may lead to a condition known as Relative Energy Deficiency in Sport (RED-S).

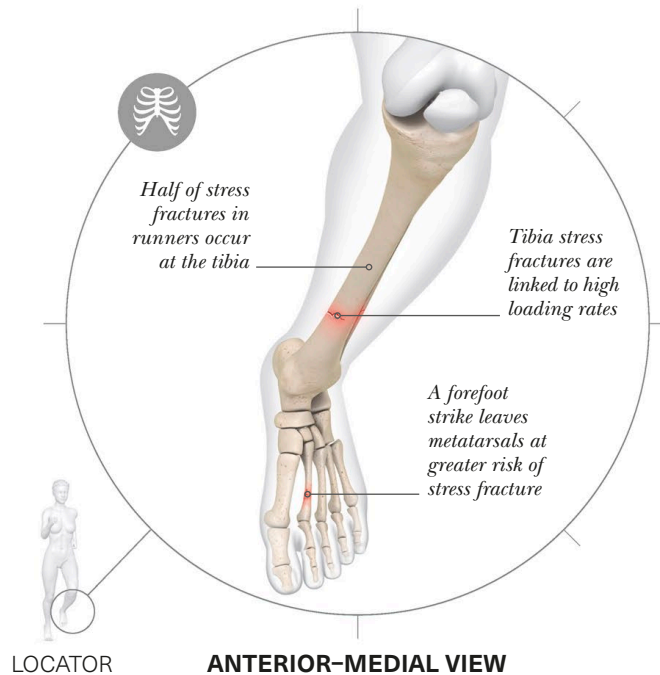
### TREATMENT

Stop running, reduce weight bearing, and seek help early:

- Rest is the main treatment for a stress fracture.
- Depending on the stage and severity of the fracture, it can be beneficial to resume weight bearing early, sometimes in an orthotic boot, to maintain bone mass and strength.

### RETURNING TO TRAINING

Following a stress fracture, it is vital to build up your training load gradually and progressively. A walk-run programme is usually recommended, to reintroduce the impact to your body. You should be able to hop for 30 seconds pain-free each day for a week before resuming any running training.



# AVOIDING INJURY

**Most runners get injured from time to time, but there are things you can do to lower your injury risk. Keep an eye on your body's response to training, be aware of your running biomechanics, incorporate strength exercises into your training regime, and know when to seek help.**

## PRINCIPLES OF INJURY PREVENTION

Following some basic principles can help you run pain-free, and may improve performance.

### CONSIDER BIOMECHANICS

Our individual running form makes each of us more prone to certain injuries. For example, if you strike the ground with the forefoot rather than the heel, impact force increases at the calf. Assess your form for injury risk and make any necessary improvements (see pp.66–75).

### MONITOR TRAINING LOAD

Spikes in training load are the main cause of injury and it's vital to increase your training gradually. Both the volume and intensity of training affect the toll on your body; digital tracking tools can be used to monitor load (see p.169).

### DO STRENGTH EXERCISES

Strengthening muscles and joints through resistance training (see pp.96–155) improves your body's

ability to handle training load and has been shown to improve performance. A runner should opt for higher resistance and lower reps in a strength-training session.

### SEEK PROFESSIONAL HELP

If you experience pain rated as greater than 3 out of 10 (see p.56), if your gait changes as a result of pain, or if your pain is worsening, seek advice from a clinician who is familiar with running.

### Footwear and injury prevention

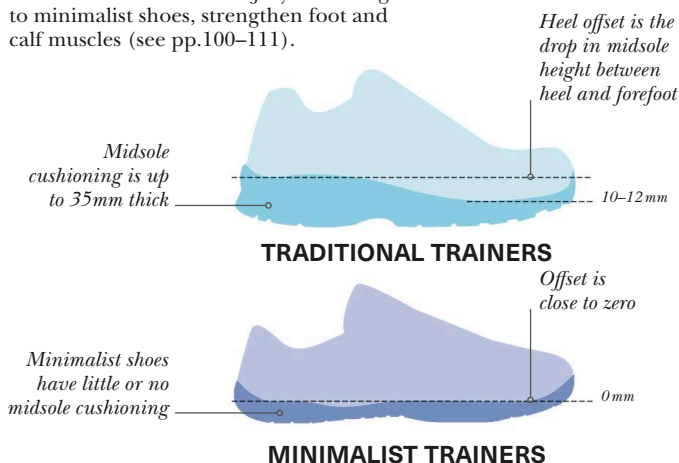
Despite the huge sums of money spent by footwear companies on R&D, neither traditional running shoes, nor more recent minimalist and maximalist designs, have been proven to prevent injury.

Minimalist trainers, for instance, are claimed to help increase running cadence, alter footstrike patterns, and reduce vertical loading rates. However, in the most comprehensive study conducted to date, stride parameters and footstrike patterns remained unchanged after a six-month transition to minimalist footwear, and there are also conflicting findings on the effect of minimalist shoes on loading rates.

As far as performance is concerned, it is accepted that lighter is better. For every 100g (3½oz) of weight added, your running economy worsens by around 1 per cent. Carbon fibre plates and hyper-resilient foam have also been shown to improve running economy, but at significant financial cost.

### CHANGING TRAINERS

An abrupt change in cushioning or heel offset can result in injury. If moving to minimalist shoes, strengthen foot and calf muscles (see pp.100–111).












## Special considerations

One of the greatest things about running as a sport is that almost anyone can take it up. Nonetheless, some runners should take special considerations into account in order to reduce their risk of injury.

FACTORS	RISKS	PREVENTION
<b>AGE</b> 	Younger runners whose bodies are still maturing may be at greater risk of injury, especially bone and tendon injuries. Older runners are at increased risk of Achilles and calf injuries due to decreased strength and changes in biomechanics.	Younger runners should be careful with their training load, erring on the low side. Older runners should include strength-based exercises (see pp.96–155) and pay attention to running form (see pp.66–75).
<b>SEX</b> 	Masculine and feminine body types have different injury risk profiles. Studies show that a feminine physique is more prone to knee injuries and a masculine physique can suffer more ankle, foot, and shinbone injuries. It is not clear which physical type is injured more frequently.	Targeted strength training (see pp.96–155) and also improvements in running form (see pp.66–75) can help to reduce injury risk for all runners, regardless of sex-based physique.
<b>EXCESS WEIGHT</b> 	Overweight runners are subjected to greater impact forces per step. Cumulatively, these impacts may increase risk of injury.	Be careful not to increase training load too quickly, and allow time for your musculoskeletal system to adapt to the loads applied.
<b>PREGNANCY</b> 	Physical exercise during pregnancy is beneficial for most women, but there are some increased risk factors for pregnant runners due to hormonal changes, stress on the pelvic floor, and fatigue.	Follow the latest antenatal exercise guidelines and consult your physician or midwife before commencing or continuing any programme of exercise.
<b>POST-PARTUM</b> 	After giving birth, women may be at greater risk of pelvic floor dysfunction, musculoskeletal injuries, and Relative Energy Deficiency in Sport (RED-S; see p.63).	New mothers should wait three months and should be assessed by a pelvic health therapist before returning to running. Follow a graded return to running, such as a walk-run programme (see pp.190–191).

# 6699

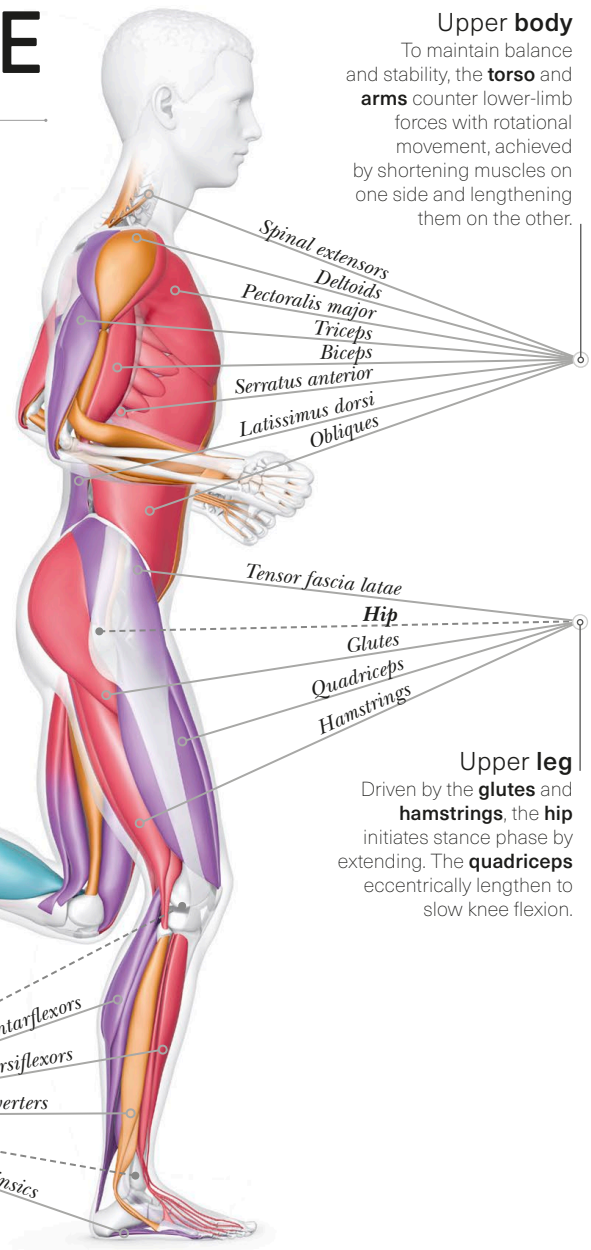
*Adding strength exercises to your training regime improves the capacity of your musculoskeletal system to handle running loads*

# RUNNING CYCLE

**Running can be understood** as a cycle of two main phases of movement – stance and swing – punctuated by certain key events (see pp.14–15). Most injury occurs during stance phase and it is worth examining its sub-phases in detail to better appreciate the loads to which a runner is subjected.

## EARLY LOADING PHASE

As the leading foot makes initial contact with the ground, the body decelerates in the vertical direction and significant muscle contributions are needed to control and attenuate the ground reaction force (GRF). As the foot flattens, tendons and connective tissues within muscles store elastic energy to be used later for propulsion.



### Upper body

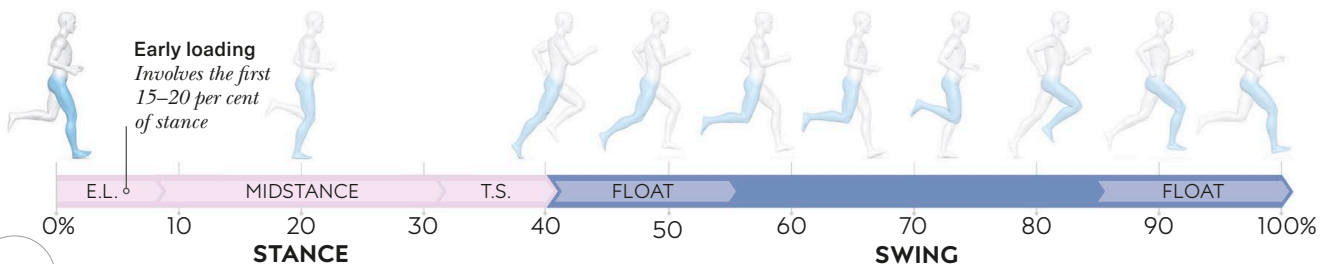
To maintain balance and stability, the **torso** and **arms** counter lower-limb forces with rotational movement, achieved by shortening muscles on one side and lengthening them on the other.

### Upper leg

Driven by the **glutes** and **hamstrings**, the **hip** initiates stance phase by extending. The **quadriceps** eccentrically lengthen to slow knee flexion.

### Lower leg

The **foot** pronates, rolling inwards and collapsing the arch, while the **ankle and knee** flex to absorb the ground reaction forces.

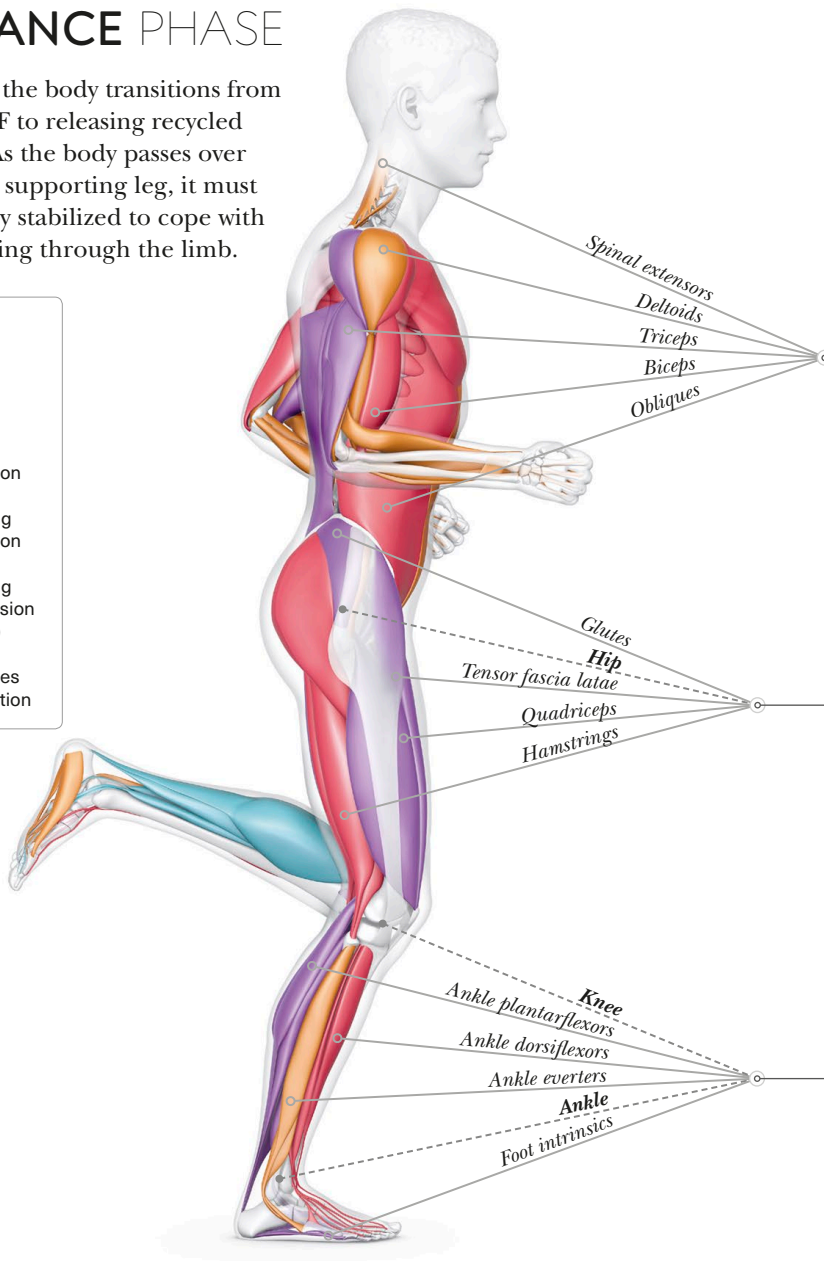


# MIDSTANCE PHASE

In midstance, the body transitions from absorbing GRF to releasing recycled GRF energy. As the body passes over the top of the supporting leg, it must be dynamically stabilized to cope with maximal loading through the limb.

**KEY**

- Joints
- Muscles
- Shortening under tension
- Lengthening under tension
- Lengthening without tension (stretching)
- Held muscles without motion



## Upper body

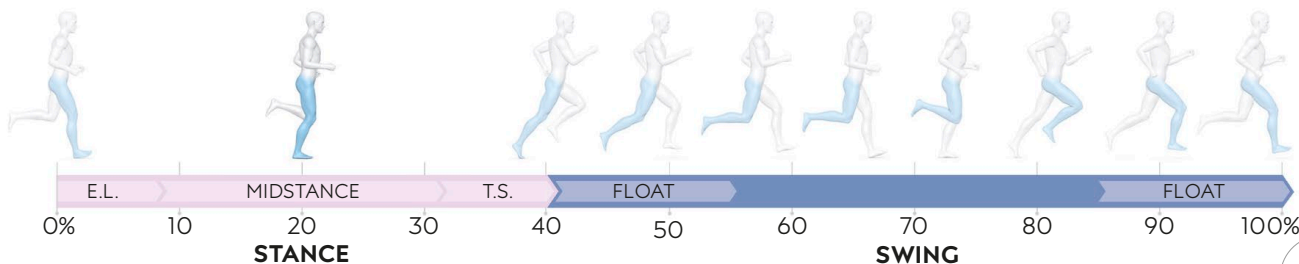
**Torso** and **arms** continue to produce rotational movement to maintain upright balance, while starting to transition to the propulsion stage, which will power the drive forwards into the next step.

## Upper leg

**Quadriceps** lengthen under tension to absorb reaction forces; they will change to a shortening movement to extend the knee for toe-off. **Glutes** and **hamstrings** shorten to power the body forwards.

## Lower leg

The **knee** and **ankle** have reached maximum flexion angles, while the **foot** is at maximal pronation. To transition into propulsion, the **knee** and **ankle** will extend and the **foot** will supinate (shift weight to the outside edge).



# TERMINAL STANCE PHASE

This final sub-phase culminates in toe-off, when the hip, knee, and ankle are in maximal extension to propel the body forwards. Immediately after toe-off, the hip and knee begin to move into flexion and the ankle starts to dorsiflex, preparing for the swing phase.

## Upper body

To assist in propelling the body forwards, the **arms** drive forwards on one side and backwards on the other. This helps counter the equal and opposite extremes of movement in the **lower limbs**.

## Upper leg

The **hip** is fully extended as the **glutes** and **hamstrings** shorten to provide propulsive force to move the body up and off the ground. The **hip flexors** are stretched, which will assist in the recovery motion of swing phase.

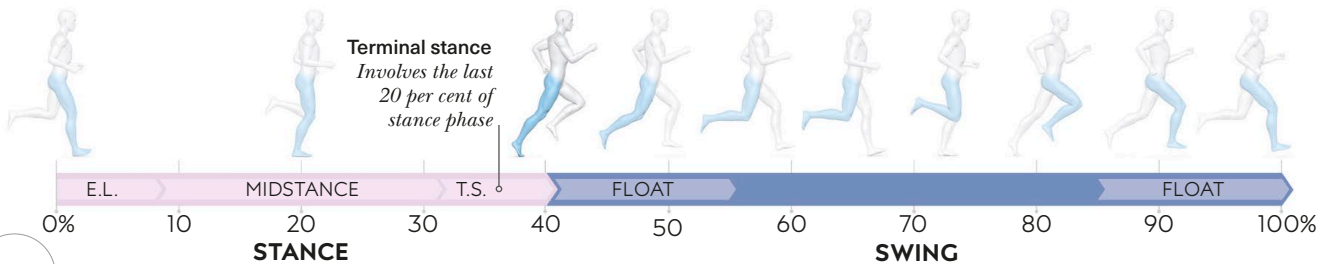
## Lower leg

The **knee** and **ankle** are fully extending with the **plantarflexors** helping to drive the foot off the ground.

Spinal extensors  
Deltoids  
Biceps  
Triceps  
Latissimus dorsi  
Obliques

Glutes  
Hip  
Tensor fascia latae  
Hamstrings  
Quadriceps

Knee  
Ankle plantarflexors  
Ankle dorsiflexors  
Ankle evertors  
Ankle  
Foot intrinsic



# SWING PHASE

Comprising approximately 60 per cent of the running cycle, swing phase is when the hip flexes rapidly to swing the leg through until it recovers its starting position, ready to power another step. During late swing, the knee begins to extend and prepare again for stance.

## Upper leg

The **glutes** and **hamstrings** relax as the elastic recoil of the **hip flexors** assist in flexing the hip and swinging the leg forwards

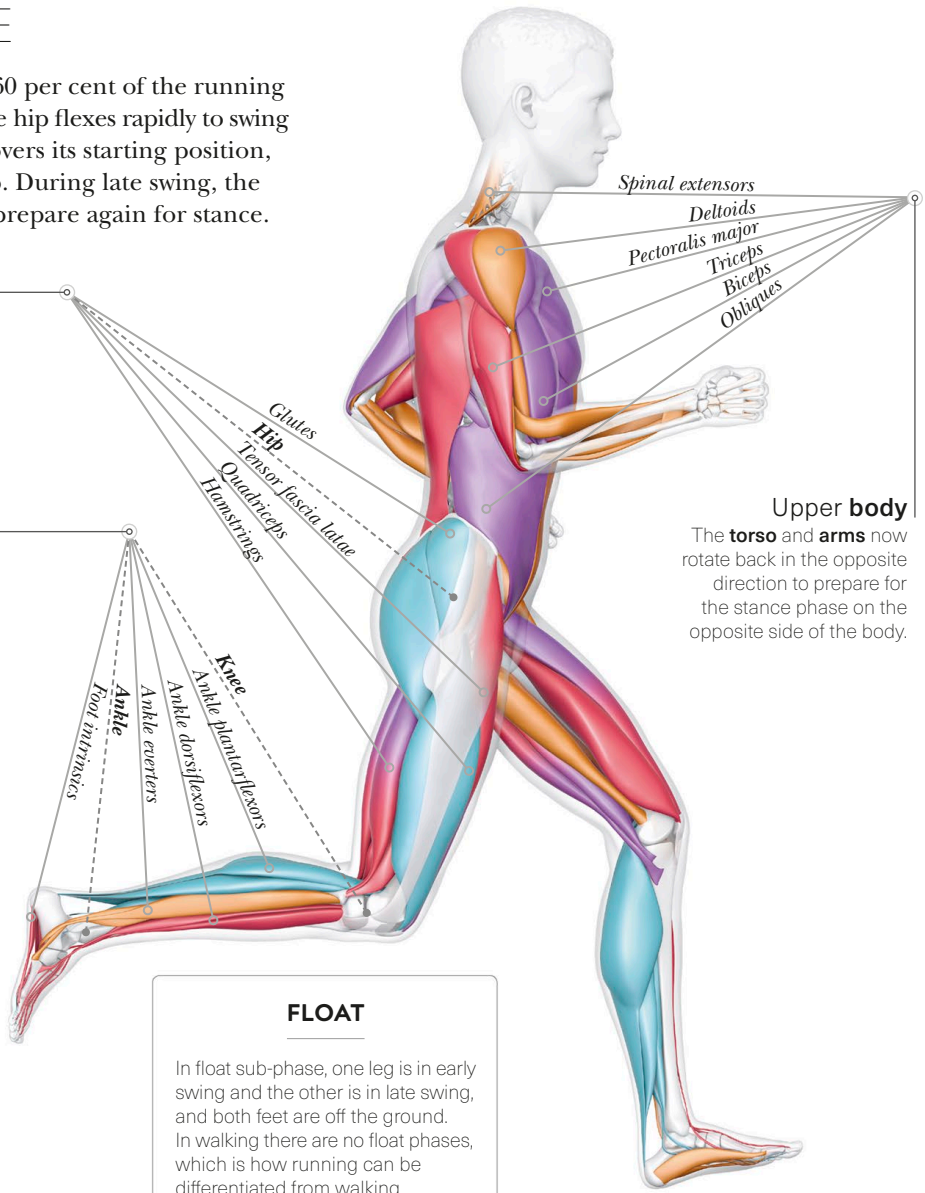
## Lower leg

The **knee** and **ankle** remain flexed to shorten the length of the **leg's** "pendulum", thereby reducing the effort required to swing the leg through.

Spinal extensors  
Deltoids  
Pectoralis major  
Triceps  
Biceps  
Obliques

## Upper body

The **torso** and **arms** now rotate back in the opposite direction to prepare for the stance phase on the opposite side of the body.

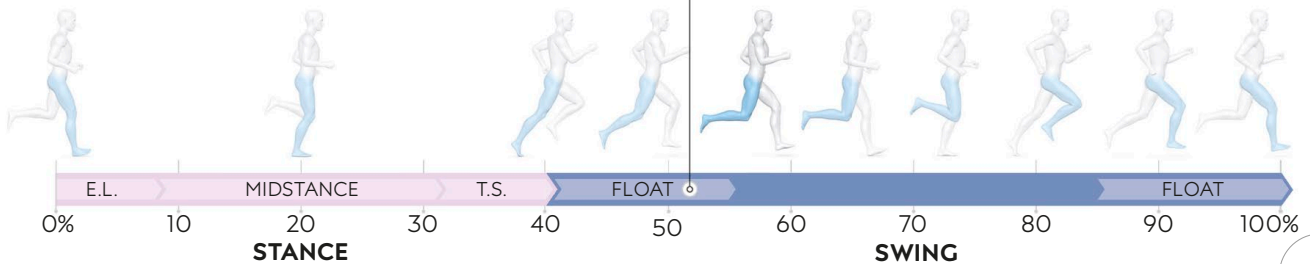


### KEY

- Joints
- Muscles
- Shortening under tension
- Lengthening under tension
- Lengthening without tension (stretching)
- Held muscles without motion

### FLOAT

In float sub-phase, one leg is in early swing and the other is in late swing, and both feet are off the ground. In walking there are no float phases, which is how running can be differentiated from walking.



# INDIVIDUAL GAIT

No running gait is “perfect”, but it may be worth adjusting your gait to increase efficiency or help avoid injury, especially one that is recurring. If you identify an issue, consult a health professional or coach who can offer safe cues to help change your gait.

## STRIDE PATTERN

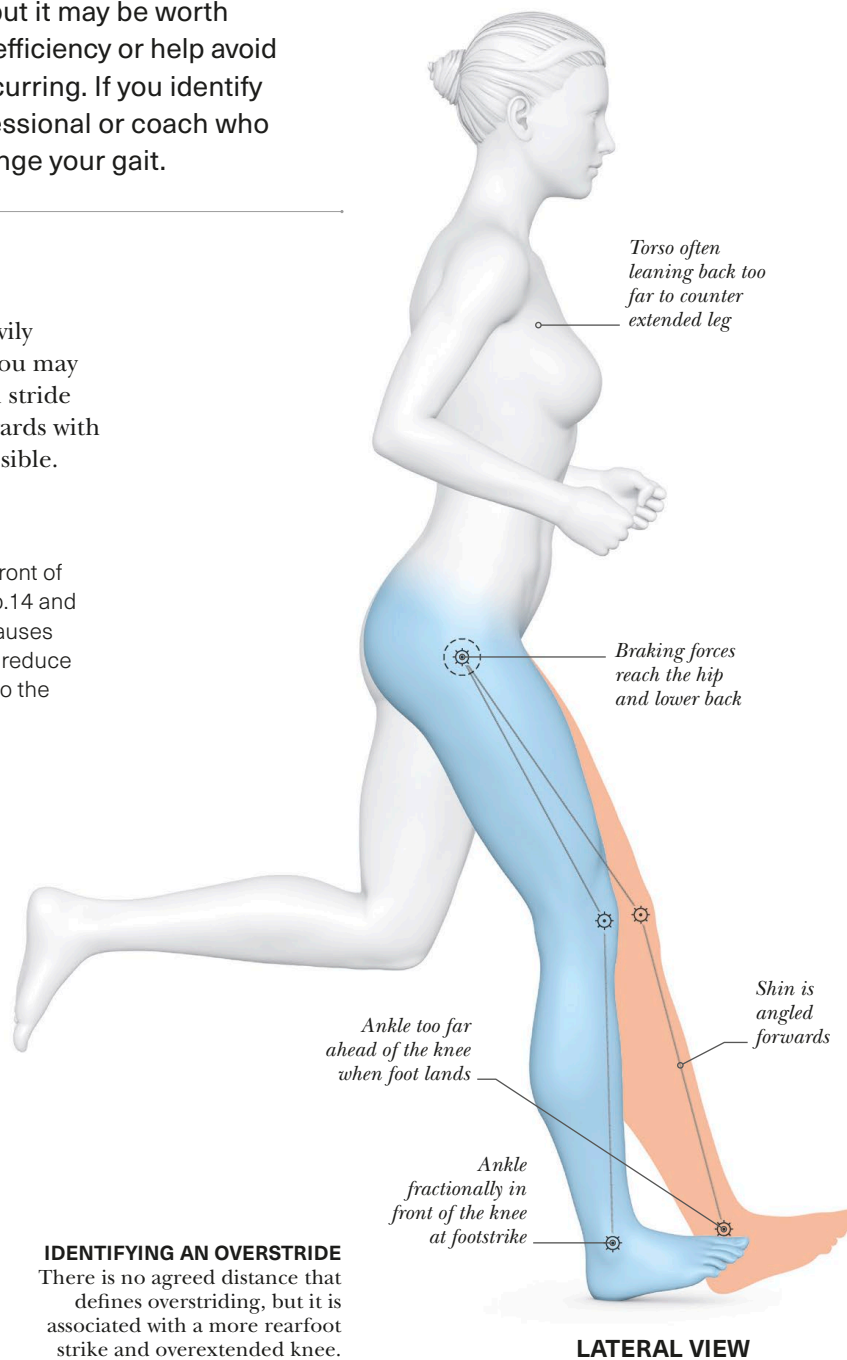
If you have been told you land heavily or look inefficient when you run, you may need to adjust your stride. An ideal stride is one that allows you to move forwards with as little braking or bouncing as possible.

### Overstriding

If your feet each tend to land too far in front of you when making initial contact (see pp.14 and 66), this is known as overstriding and causes increased braking forces. These forces reduce running efficiency and increase stress to the shin, knee, hip, and lower back.

#### Increasing cadence

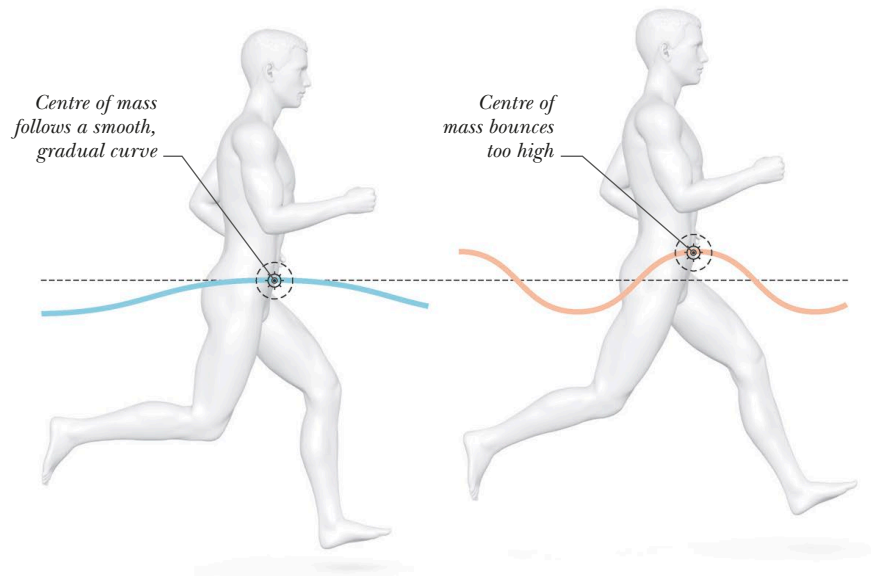
A safe and effective way to eliminate overstriding is to increase your step rate, or “cadence”. This reduces your step length and causes your foot to land closer to your centre of mass. Increased cadence also reduces vertical and braking forces, gluteal demand, knee-joint loads, forces acting on the Achilles tendon, and vertical oscillation (see right). An increase in cadence of 5–10% is generally sufficient. A way to achieve this is to run with a metronome set to your goal cadence. These can be downloaded onto your phone or set to beep on your running watch.



**IDENTIFYING AN OVERSTRIDE**  
There is no agreed distance that defines overstriding, but it is associated with a more rearfoot strike and overextended knee.

## Vertical oscillation

Some vertical oscillation is needed in running, but too much is a bad thing. Increased oscillation is linked with greater vertical loading and decreased running efficiency. There is no agreed ideal level of oscillation, but you can get a sense of how much you bounce by watching yourself run in a mirror or having someone film you. Cues to reduce vertical oscillation include trying to “land softly” or imagining you are running under a low ceiling. Increasing cadence also reduces vertical oscillation (see left).



### EFFICIENT OSCILLATION

The centre of mass does not bounce up and down to a significant degree from one step to the next. This is usually associated with a shorter stride and higher cadence.

### EXCESSIVE OSCILLATION

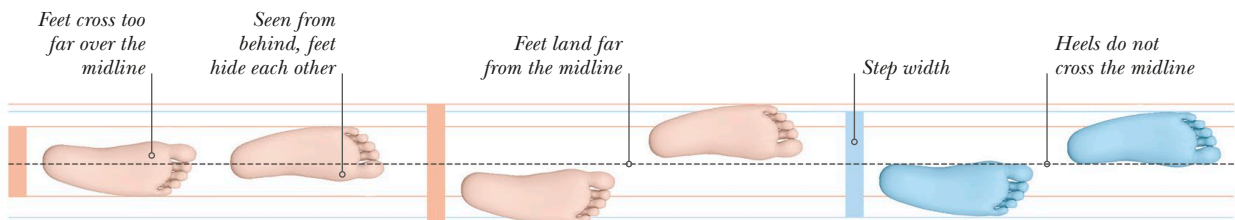
The centre of mass bounces up and down inefficiently from one step to the next. Energy is wasted propelling the centre of mass upwards against gravity instead of forwards in the direction of travel.

## Step width

The lateral alignment of the feet as they strike the ground is called step width. We step with a narrower gait when running than walking, since it is more energy efficient. Taking narrow steps requires greater dynamic stability and strength in the hip abductors, which can pose an injury risk.

### Running with knees apart

Increasing your step width may help if you suffer from conditions such as IT band pain, patellofemoral pain, or tibialis posterior tendon dysfunction. While it is difficult to identify where your feet line up as you run, one cue that seems to work is to run with your knees apart. If you have a mirror in front of you or can be filmed from behind, you should be able to see a clear gap between your knees throughout the running cycle.



### NARROW STEP WIDTH

A narrow width increases the amount and velocity of pronation (see p.73) and increases strain on the lateral hip, associated with various injury risks (see box, left).

### WIDE STEP WIDTH

A wider step increases the amount of energy expended in the running cycle, so there is a balance to be struck between injury reduction and an efficient gait.

### EFFICIENT STEP WIDTH

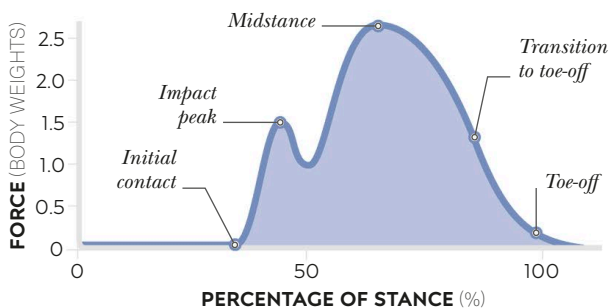
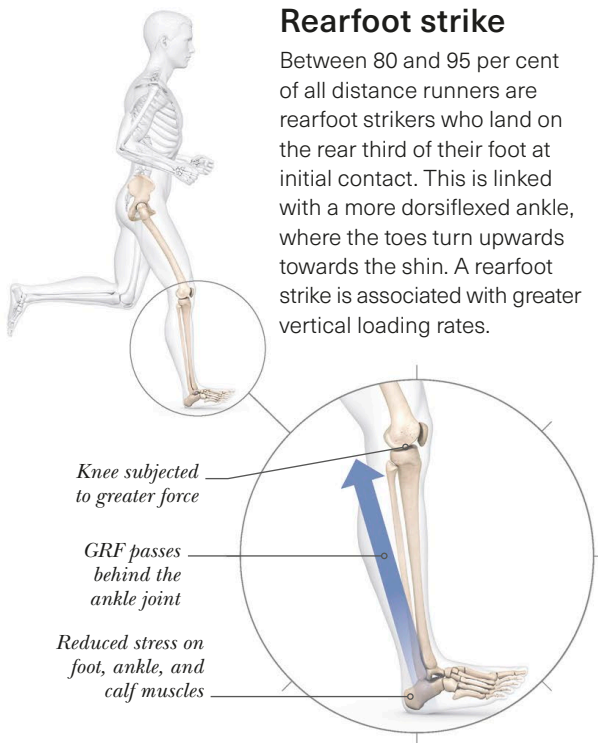
You should be able to see daylight between your knees throughout the cycle. Seen from behind, the feet should not hide each other as one steps in front of the other.

# FOOTSTRIKE PATTERNS

Footstrike refers to the point on your foot that first hits the ground at initial contact (see pp.14 and 66). The notions that a rearfoot strike increases injury risk and that a forefoot strike is more economical have both been refuted by recent research. In reality, where you land simply shifts the location of forces on your body during the loading phase. Depending on your injury history, this may be an important consideration.

## Rearfoot strike

Between 80 and 95 per cent of all distance runners are rearfoot strikers who land on the rear third of their foot at initial contact. This is linked with a more dorsiflexed ankle, where the toes turn upwards towards the shin. A rearfoot strike is associated with greater vertical loading rates.

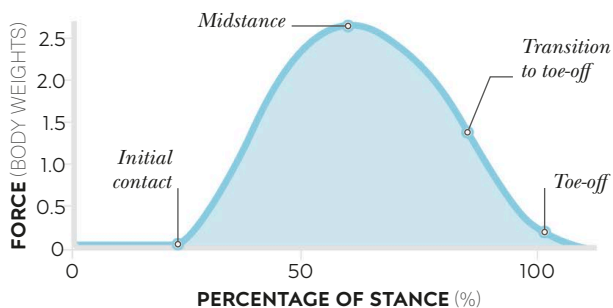
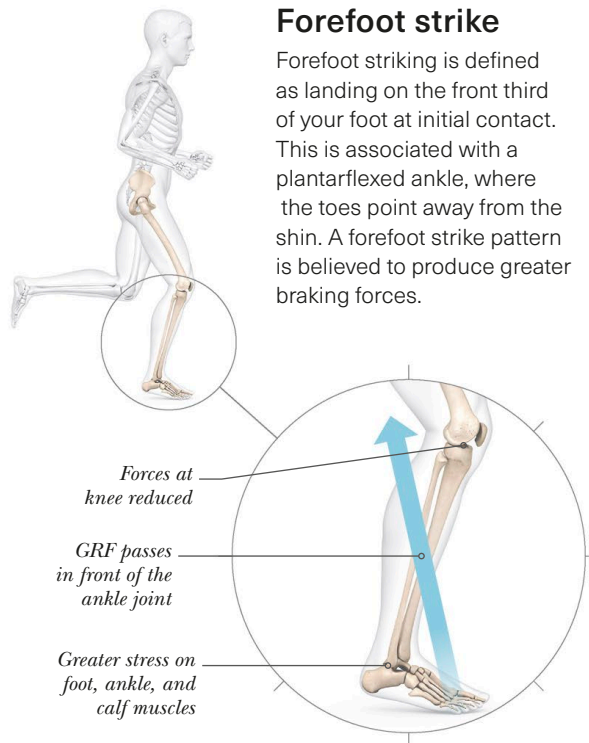


### VERTICAL GRF WITH REARFOOT STRIKE

The rearfoot GRF (see pp.46–47) profile shows an impact peak from the collision force of the foot hitting the ground. The force direction reduces load on the Achilles tendon, but increases it on the tibialis anterior muscle.

## Forefoot strike

Forefoot striking is defined as landing on the front third of your foot at initial contact. This is associated with a plantarflexed ankle, where the toes point away from the shin. A forefoot strike pattern is believed to produce greater braking forces.



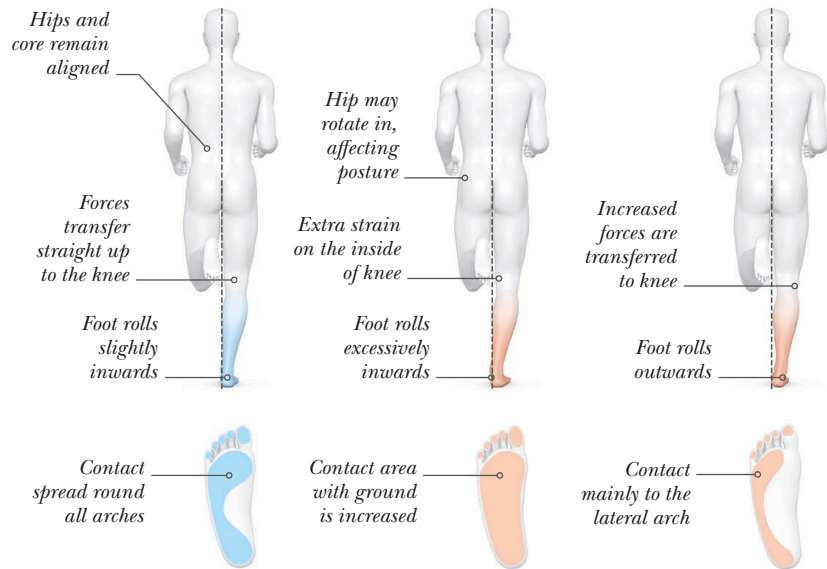
### VERTICAL GRF WITH FOREFOOT STRIKE

The impact peak is often absent since the collision force may be a lower magnitude and slightly delayed. Direction of force increases load on the Achilles tendon and calf, decreases it on the tibialis anterior.



## COMMON VARIATIONS

There are several variations seen in natural running gait patterns. Some are due to anatomy, while others come about in response to injury or fatigue. Most gait deviations are not necessarily the cause of injury, and if you display a deviation, it may not make sense to change it. However, if the deviation relates to an injury you've sustained it may be worth looking into it with a qualified coach or healthcare practitioner.



### Pronation

Pronation is the inward rolling of the foot in the first half of stance phase (see p.67). It is a combined movement that incorporates the ankle, rearfoot, and forefoot joints. Pronation is often portrayed as a bad thing, but it is a necessary and efficient shock-absorption mechanism.

#### NEUTRAL

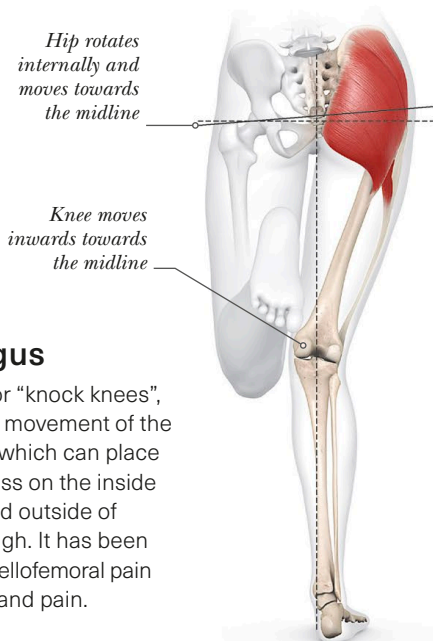
Neutral pronation involves landing on the outside of the heel, rolling inwards to transfer the force through the midfoot at midstance, and then toeing-off of the end of the big toe.

#### OVERPRONATION

Excessive pronation tends to cause splaying and transfers force to the inside of the foot. The ankle also tends to rotate in more, which may affect mechanics at the knee and hip.

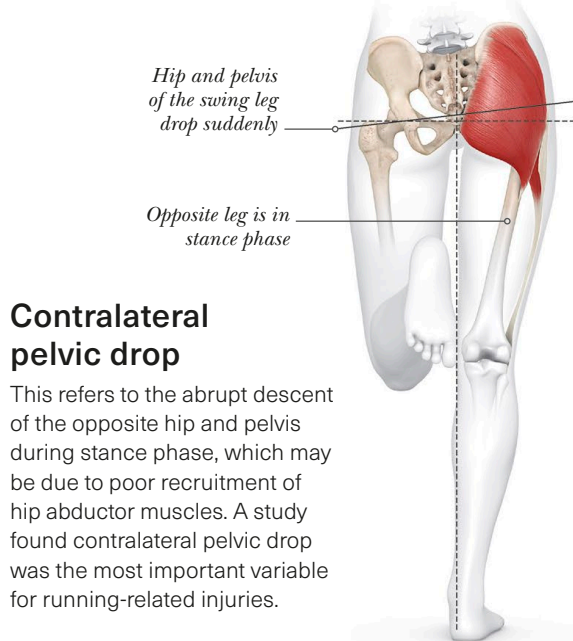
#### UNDERPRONATION

Decreased pronation is characterized by a more rigid foot, where the medial arch makes little or no contact with the ground. This results in less shock-absorption capability by the foot.



### Knee valgus

Knee valgus, or "knock knees", is a combined movement of the hip and knee, which can place increased stress on the inside of the knee and outside of the hip and thigh. It has been linked with patellofemoral pain and iliotibial band pain.



### Contralateral pelvic drop

This refers to the abrupt descent of the opposite hip and pelvis during stance phase, which may be due to poor recruitment of hip abductor muscles. A study found contralateral pelvic drop was the most important variable for running-related injuries.

# RUNNING FORM

**While there is no single “ideal” running form,** coaches and scientists agree there are better ways to run. Keeping in mind your individual biomechanics, by comparing how you run against the form shown here, you might identify ways to streamline your form for greater efficiency and to guard against injury.

## POSTURE

Maintaining good posture when running is crucial: it can affect breathing, shock absorption, and power generation. Overall, it is important not to hunch forwards and look down at your feet. Imagine instead a string pulling your head up and extending your spine.

### Arms

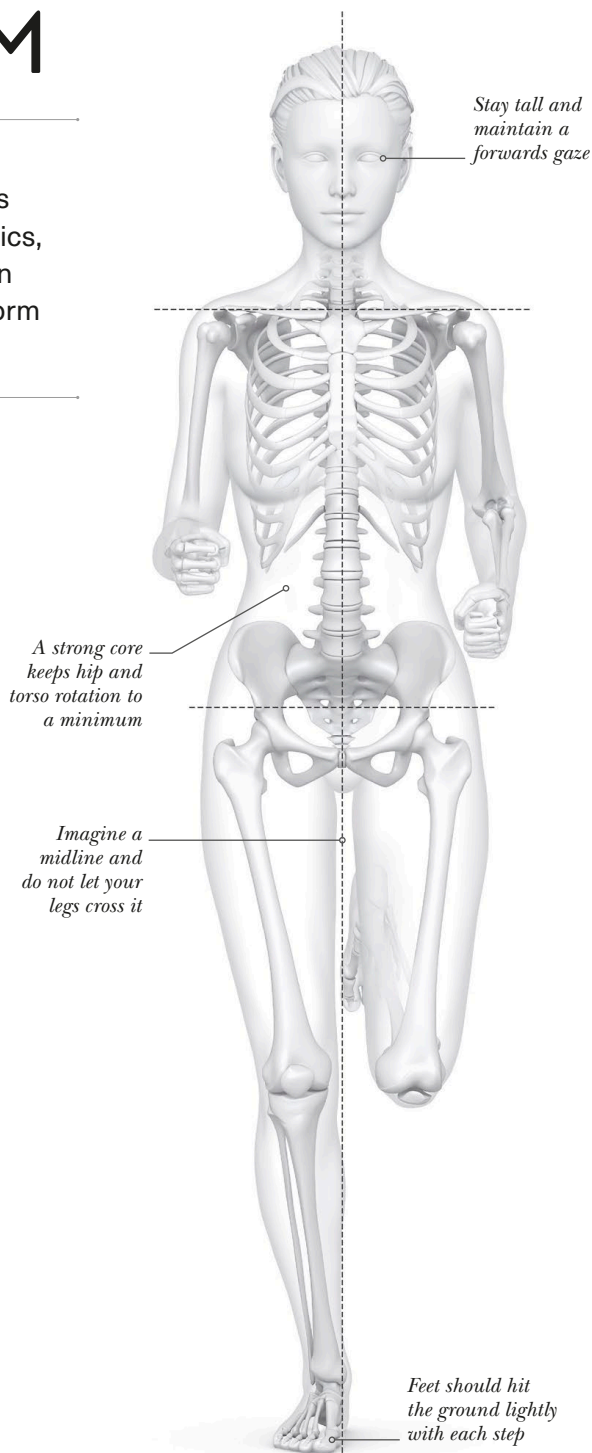
The arms and shoulders play an important role in keeping your upper body relaxed and in generating power. Your arms work with your legs to drive you forwards or up hills and minimize wasteful lateral (side-to-side) movements.

### Core

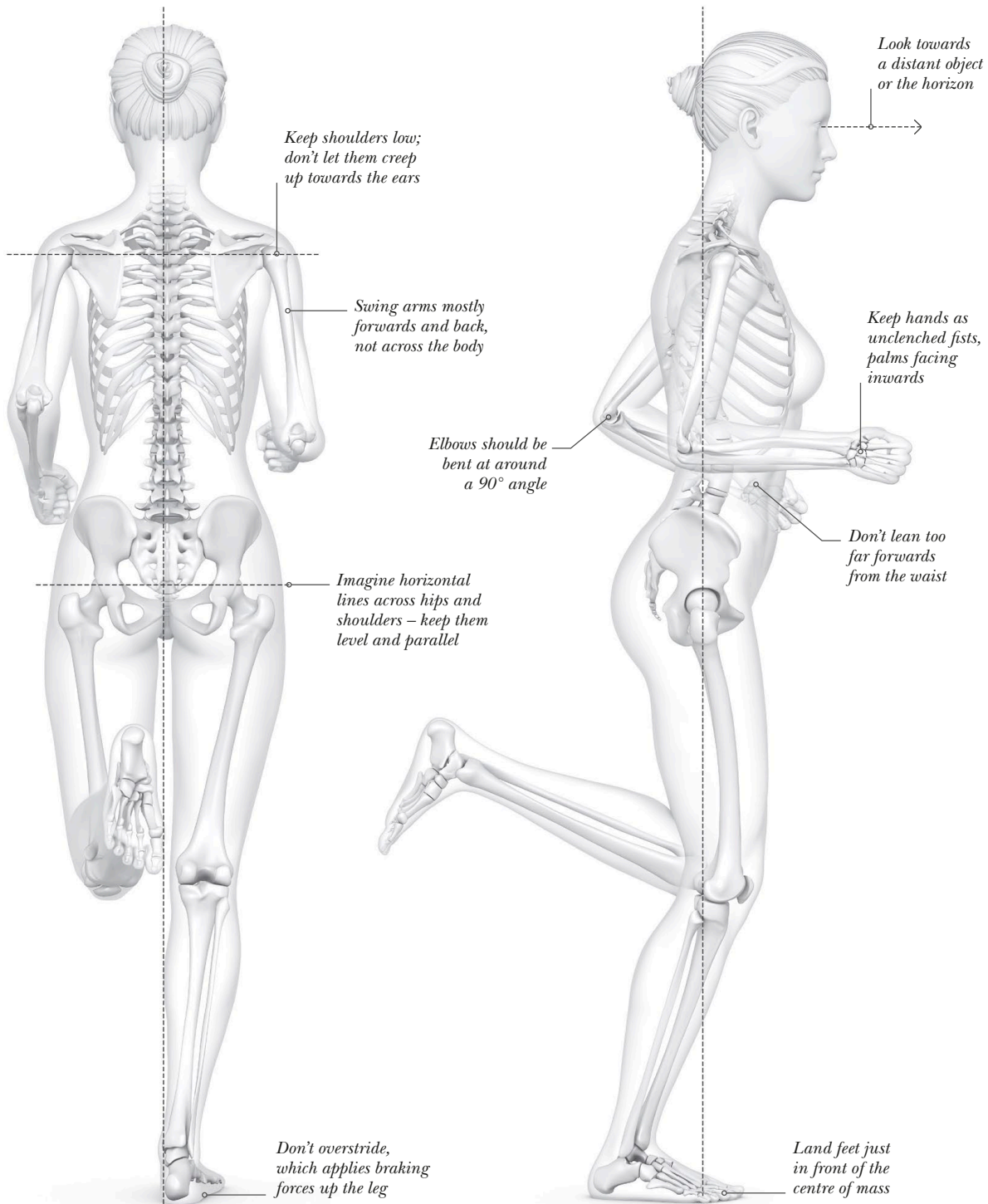
The core is the body's transition zone between the upper body and lower body. It is the site of many muscle attachments that drive both upper and lower limbs. As such, it needs to be inherently stable in order for these muscles to derive power. To engage the core, imagine your belly button is fixed to a string pulling you forwards, and that your upper body and lower body are rotating counter to each other without inhibiting one another. Practise dissociating these areas in your drills and exercises (see pp.84–89 and 144–155).

### Feet

The feet are the interface between your body and the ground and effective footstrikes can make a big difference to running efficiency. Imagine your feet as springs, absorbing energy on landing and bouncing back to return that energy on toe-off.



**ANTERIOR VIEW**



**POSTERIOR VIEW**

**LATERAL VIEW**

# RUNNING ROUTINE

It is sensible to establish warm-up and cool-down routines to bookend your runs. Warming up the body before training, with running-specific dynamic stretches and drills, enables you to make the most of the workout, while ending it with static stretching helps to kick off the recovery process.

**50%**  
REDUCTION IN  
RISK OF OVERUSE  
INJURY IS POSSIBLE  
FROM A WARM-UP  
PROGRAMME



## WARM-UP STRETCHES

Dynamic stretches (see pp.78–83) involve movements that take the body through a range of motion, preparing it for activity.

### THE BENEFITS

Designed to target the specific movements involved in running, the dynamic stretches in this book increase blood flow to muscles and work on the range of motion of joints. A structured, sport-specific warm-up programme can reduce the risk of overuse injuries in running-based sports by up to 50 per cent.

### HOW TO DO THEM

Start each dynamic stretch with a shallow range of motion at a slow speed, then progress to deeper ranges and greater speeds as your body allows. You should feel that your range of motion increases throughout the stretch. While you are stretching, take the opportunity to assess any asymmetries or restrictions in your movements so you can address them before you begin your workout.

### WARM UP AND COOL DOWN

Establish a regular routine for warming up and cooling down around each training session. Ensure you reserve enough time for each stage. Start your workouts with a dynamic warm-up involving stretches and drills, which helps to prepare your body for the demands of running, prevents injury, and improves performance. It is especially important on race day that you warm up adequately, so you can be confident that you are physically and mentally prepared to do your best. End each run with an adequate cool-down session to begin the recovery process.

#### Warm-up jog

A short, easy jog provides a general warm-up to increase your body temperature, improve blood flow to muscles, and prepare the neuromuscular system for activity.



10-15  
MINUTES



#### Stretches and drills

A dynamic stretching routine with running-specific drills will take your joints through the required range of motion for running and prepare your neuromuscular system for more intense activity.



10-15  
MINUTES



## DRILLS

Performing running drills (see pp.84–89) increases blood flow to muscles and the range of motion at your joints. Drills also offer a chance to work on running form and symmetry of movement.

### THE BENEFITS

Running drills encourage good form by breaking down running motion into controlled chunks and focussing on specific gait phases.

### HOW TO DO THEM

Running drills should be performed 2 or 3 times per week before or after workouts. A good place to carry them out is on a track or field. You need a clear 40–50m (130–165ft) to perform the drills. Aim for 15–20 repetitions on each leg.

## RECOVERY STRETCHES

Regular static stretching (see pp.90–95) can help maintain or increase muscle and joint flexibility.

### THE BENEFITS

Static stretching is not advised before activity as it may decrease performance. As part of post-run recovery, it improves joint flexibility and muscle length. While these improvements are

not associated with any benefits to performance, stretches can bring helpful relief to tight, hardworking muscles.

### HOW TO DO THEM

Static stretches should only be done after exercise. The optimal length of time to hold a static stretch is 30 seconds. Longer holds do not seem to provide additional benefit.

“ ”

*Running drills provide an opportunity to work on running form and symmetry of movement*

### Your run

During your workout, pay attention to your form and any asymmetries or deviations from your normal running gait. As you fatigue, some of these may become more pronounced. Wearable sensors that detect these changes may be of use, as they help you pick up on patterns or changes prior to the onset of pain or injury.



### Recovery jog

A slow recovery jog is not really necessary after easy runs, but may be beneficial after more intense workouts, enabling you to slow down your heart rate as you gain some extra mileage.



10-15  
MINUTES



### Recovery stretches

Static stretches can encourage you to relax after a hard workout. They may help to reduce post-run stiffness and soreness, and contribute towards maintaining muscle and joint flexibility.



10  
MINUTES

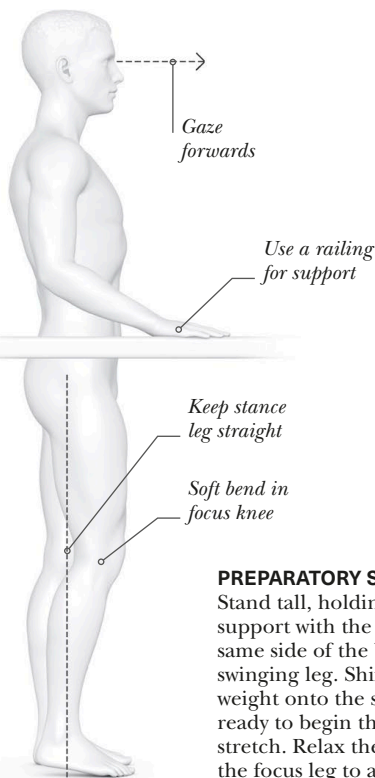


## Upper body

It is unnecessary to keep your **core** and **pelvis** fixed during the movement. Allow some flexion and extension along the **lumbar spine** to enable a smooth and fluid swinging motion. Also, allow some rotation of your torso, engaging the **obliques** and **pectorals** as your free arm swings forwards.

# DYNAMIC STRETCH: FORWARD LEG SWING

This dynamic stretch prepares your body for running by improving flexibility in your hip and posterior leg muscles, which can help to prevent injury and improve performance. Use a railing or chair backrest for support. Practise the stretch on each leg in turn, performing 15–20 repetitions or more per side. As you warm up, gradually increase the range of the swinging motion.



### PREPARATORY STAGE

Stand tall, holding onto your support with the arm on the same side of the body as the swinging leg. Shift your weight onto the stance leg, ready to begin the dynamic stretch. Relax the knee of the focus leg to a soft bend.

*Spine*  
*Spinal extensors*  
*Serratus anterior*  
*Pectoralis major*  
*Rectus abdominis*  
*External oblique*

### STAGE ONE

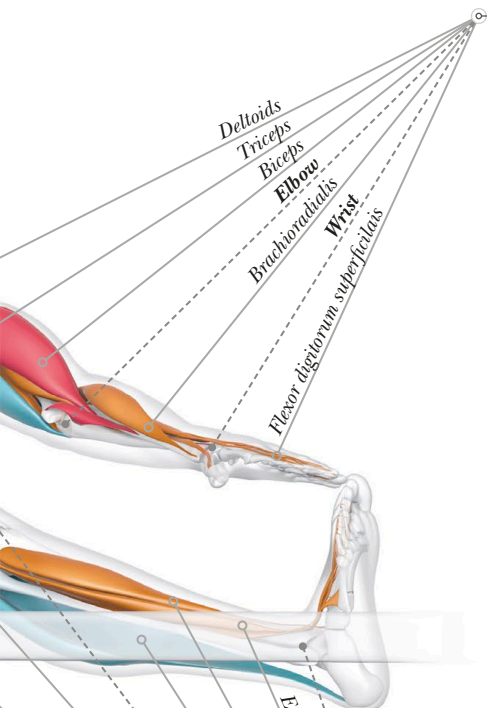
Swing the focus leg forwards and reach for your toes with your opposite hand, tapping your toes if possible. Swing your leg like a pendulum, allowing momentum to carry your foot up into the air in front of you, maintaining a soft bend in your knee, until you feel a gentle stretch in the back of your thigh, knee, and/or lower leg. Keep the stance knee straight.

### KEY

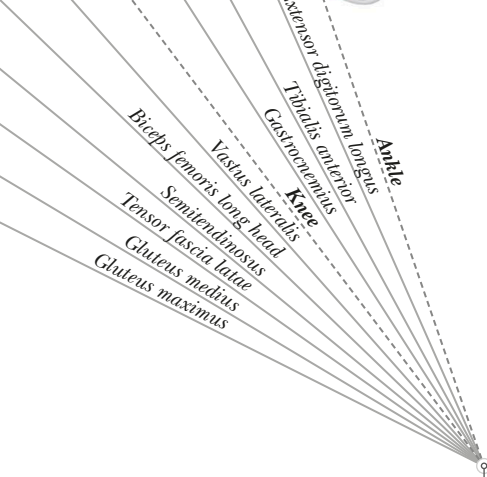
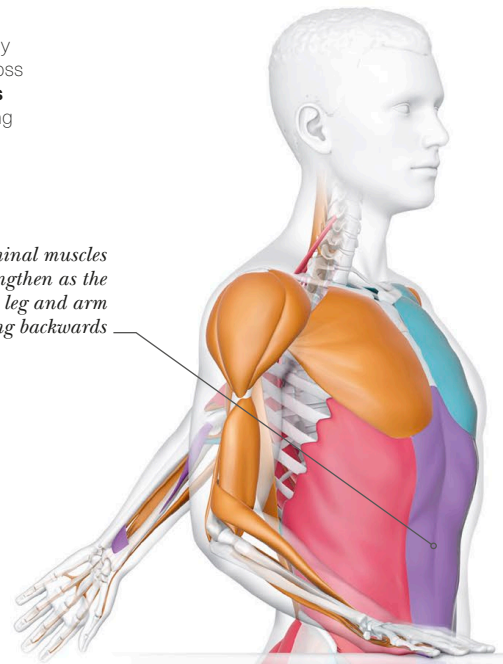
- Joints
- Muscles
- Shortening under tension
- Lengthening under tension
- Lengthening without tension (stretching)
- Held muscles without motion

### Swinging arm

Your upper body rotates slightly to allow your arm to reach across to touch your toes. The **biceps** engage to raise your arm, giving the **triceps** a gentle stretch.



Abdominal muscles lengthen as the focus leg and arm swing backwards

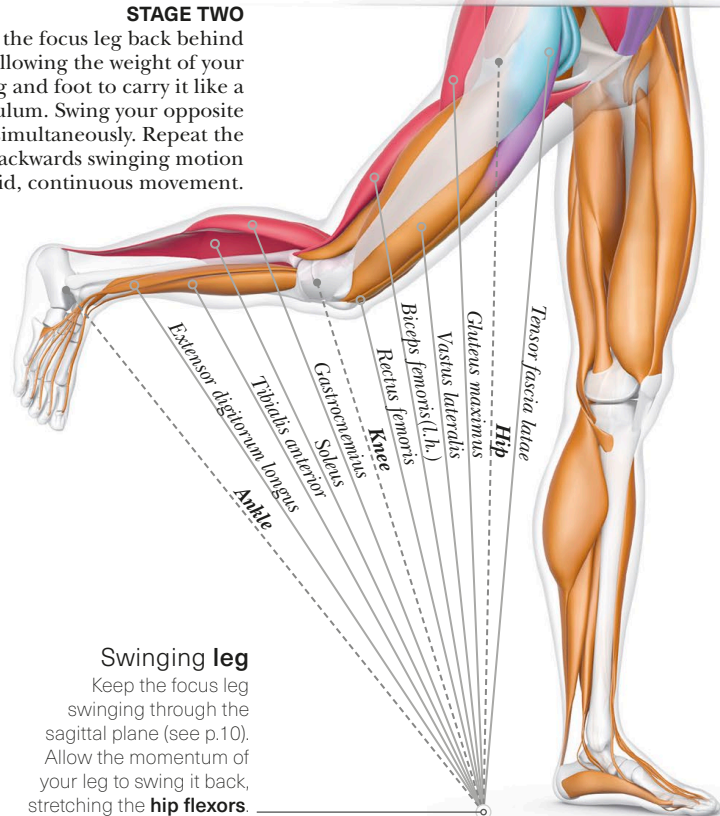


### Swinging leg

You should feel a stretch through the **glutes, hamstrings, and calf muscles** as you swing your leg forwards and up. The **hip flexors** work to enable the action, although the momentum of the leg assists to raise the leg.

### STAGE TWO

Swing the focus leg back behind you, allowing the weight of your leg and foot to carry it like a pendulum. Swing your opposite arm back simultaneously. Repeat the forwards-backwards swinging motion in a fluid, continuous movement.



### Swinging leg

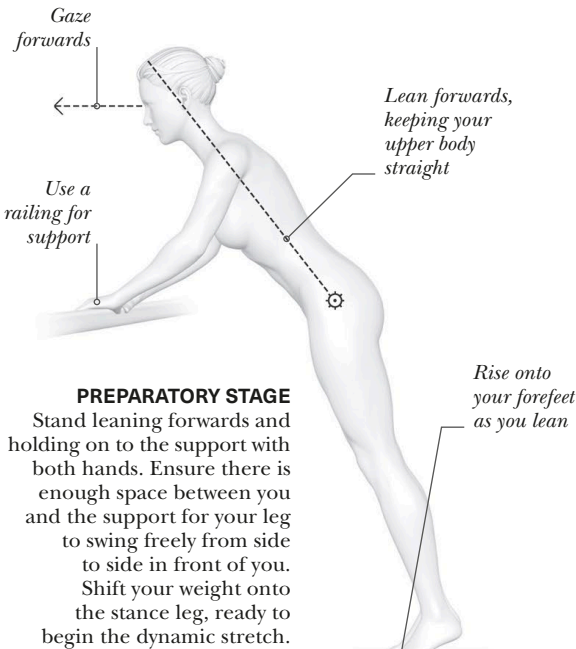
Keep the focus leg swinging through the sagittal plane (see p.10). Allow the momentum of your leg to swing it back, stretching the **hip flexors**.

## Upper body

As you swing your leg from side to side, the **external obliques** oppose one another, with one side working concentrically and the other side eccentrically to enable a slight rotation in the **torso** and **pelvis**. Allow your pelvis and hips to go with the motion. You can use your obliques to help drive the rotation and assist swinging your leg back and forth.

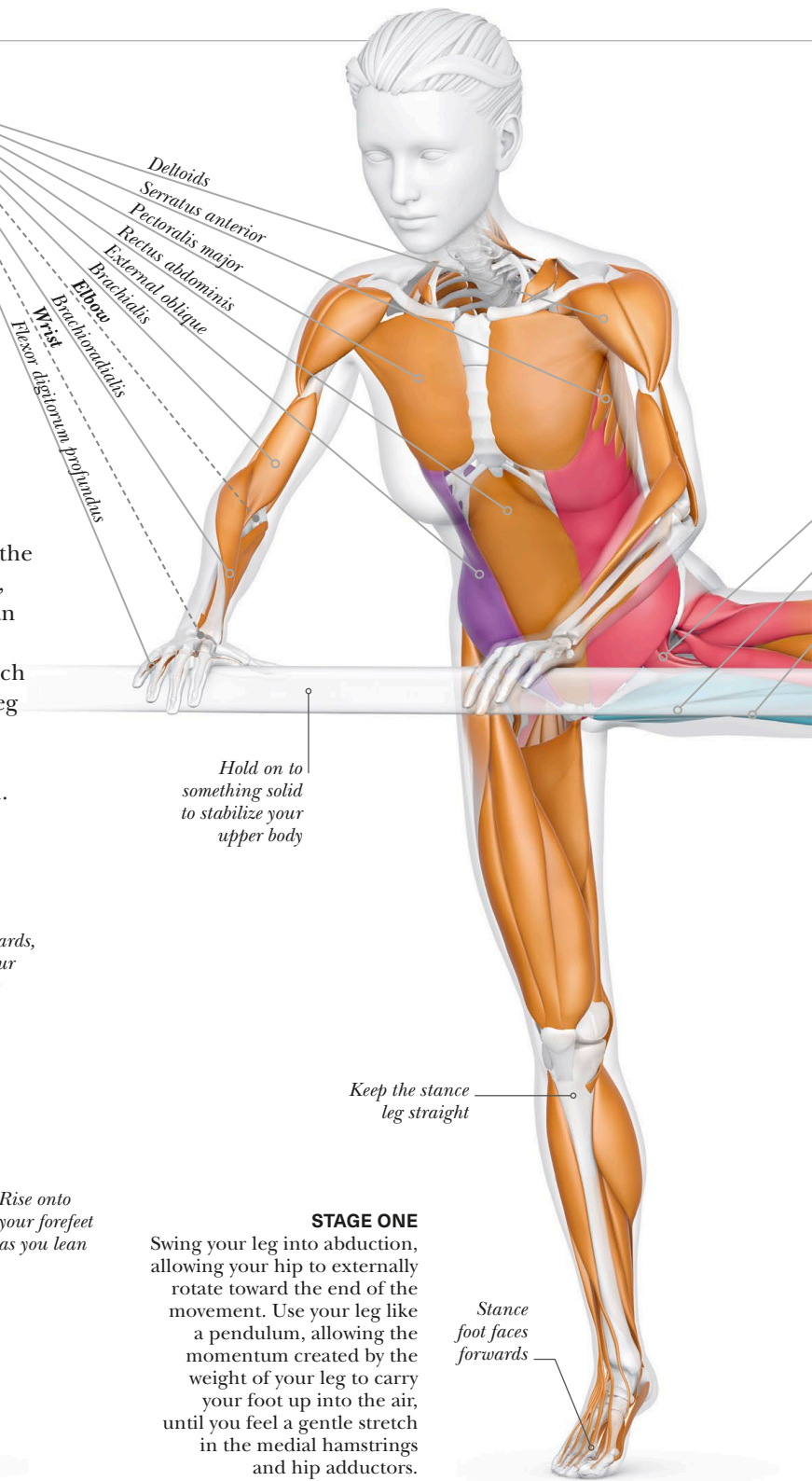
# DYNAMIC STRETCH: SIDE LEG SWING

Side Leg Swing improves the flexibility of the medial hamstrings, and the hip adductors, abductors, and external rotators, which can prevent injury and improve performance. Use a railing or the backrest of a park bench for support. Practise the stretch on each leg in turn, performing 15–20 repetitions or more per side. As you warm up, gradually increase the range of the swinging motion.



### PREPARATORY STAGE

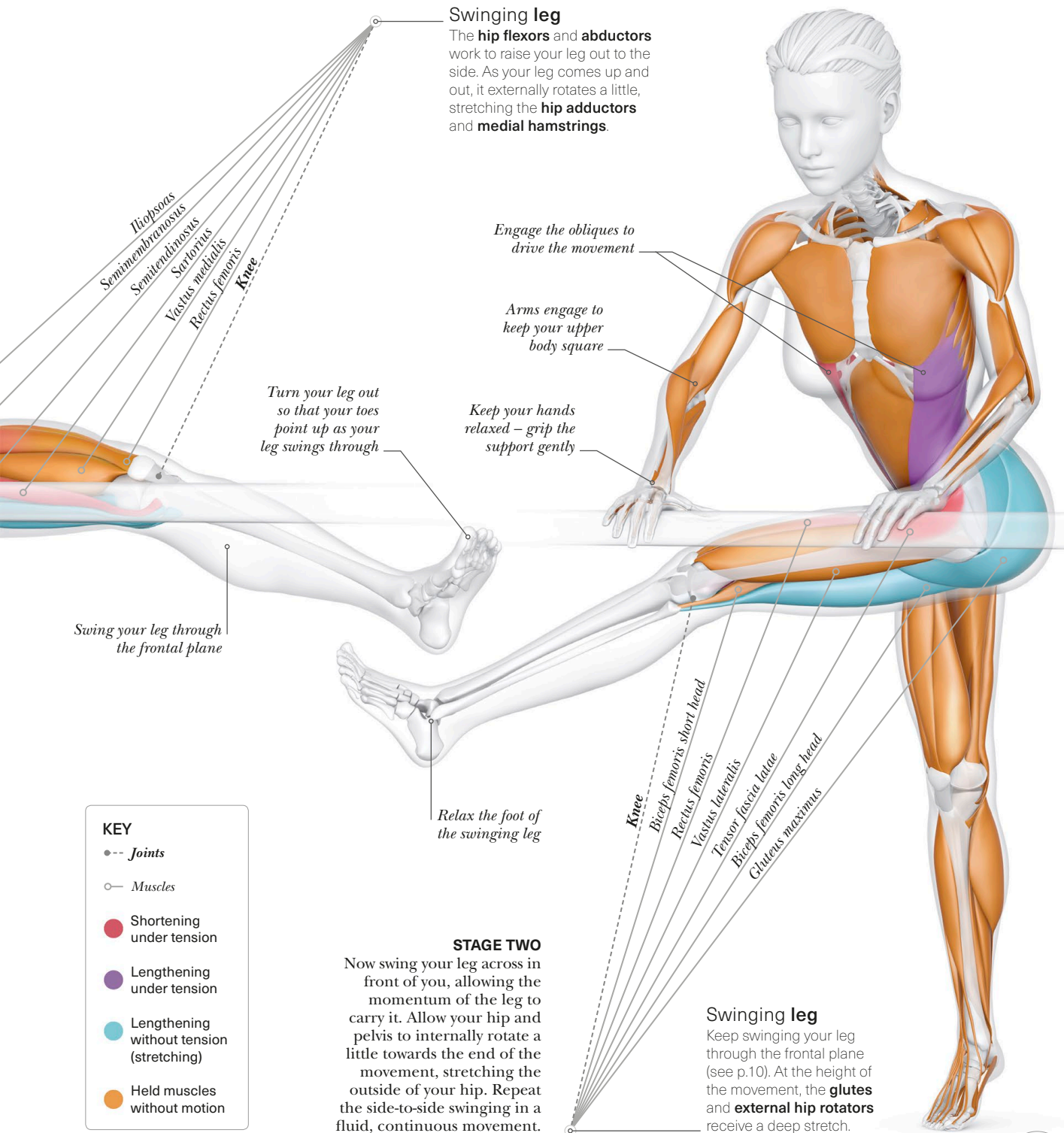
Stand leaning forwards and holding on to the support with both hands. Ensure there is enough space between you and the support for your leg to swing freely from side to side in front of you. Shift your weight onto the stance leg, ready to begin the dynamic stretch.



### STAGE ONE

Swing your leg into abduction, allowing your hip to externally rotate toward the end of the movement. Use your leg like a pendulum, allowing the momentum created by the weight of your leg to carry your foot up into the air, until you feel a gentle stretch in the medial hamstrings and hip adductors.





**Swinging leg**

The **hip flexors** and **abductors** work to raise your leg out to the side. As your leg comes up and out, it externally rotates a little, stretching the **hip adductors** and **medial hamstrings**.

Engage the obliques to drive the movement

Arms engage to keep your upper body square

Turn your leg out so that your toes point up as your leg swings through

Keep your hands relaxed - grip the support gently

Swing your leg through the frontal plane

Relax the foot of the swinging leg

**KEY**

••• Joints

○ Muscles

● Shortening under tension

● Lengthening under tension

● Lengthening without tension (stretching)

● Held muscles without motion

**STAGE TWO**

Now swing your leg across in front of you, allowing the momentum of the leg to carry it. Allow your hip and pelvis to internally rotate a little towards the end of the movement, stretching the outside of your hip. Repeat the side-to-side swinging in a fluid, continuous movement.

**Swinging leg**

Keep swinging your leg through the frontal plane (see p.10). At the height of the movement, the **glutes** and **external hip rotators** receive a deep stretch.

# DYNAMIC STRETCH: CALF STRETCH

This stretch improves the flexibility of your calf and Achilles tendon, helping to prevent injury and improve performance. Lean on a wall or railing for support during the exercise. Perform 15–20 repetitions or more, gradually pushing your heel down further as you warm up. Do not hold the stretch, but move fluidly between the stages in a continuous repetitive flow. The variation (opposite) stretches the soleus muscle, rather than the gastrocnemius.

## Upper body

Lean your weight into the railing to support your upper body. Your **arm, upper torso, and core** muscles engage to hold the upper body straight.

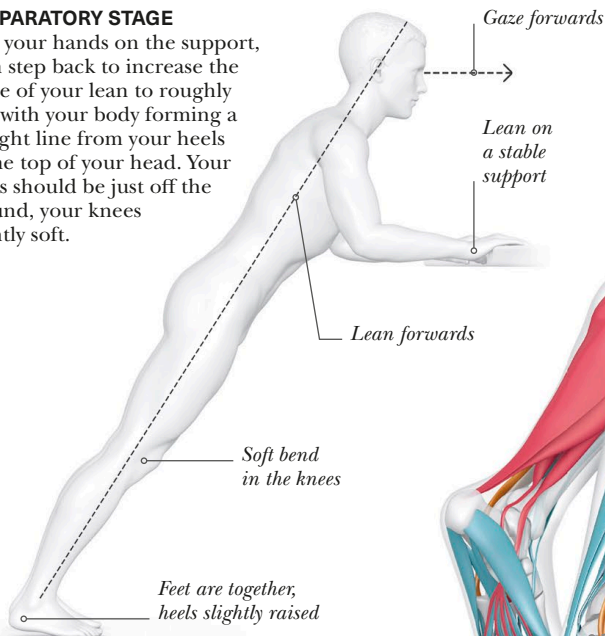
Semispinalis capitis  
Deltoids  
Pectorialis major  
Triceps medial head  
Serratus anterior  
Transversus abdominis  
Spine  
Spinal extensors

## KEY

- Joints
- Muscles
- Shortening under tension
- Lengthening under tension
- Lengthening without tension (stretching)
- Held muscles without motion

## PREPARATORY STAGE

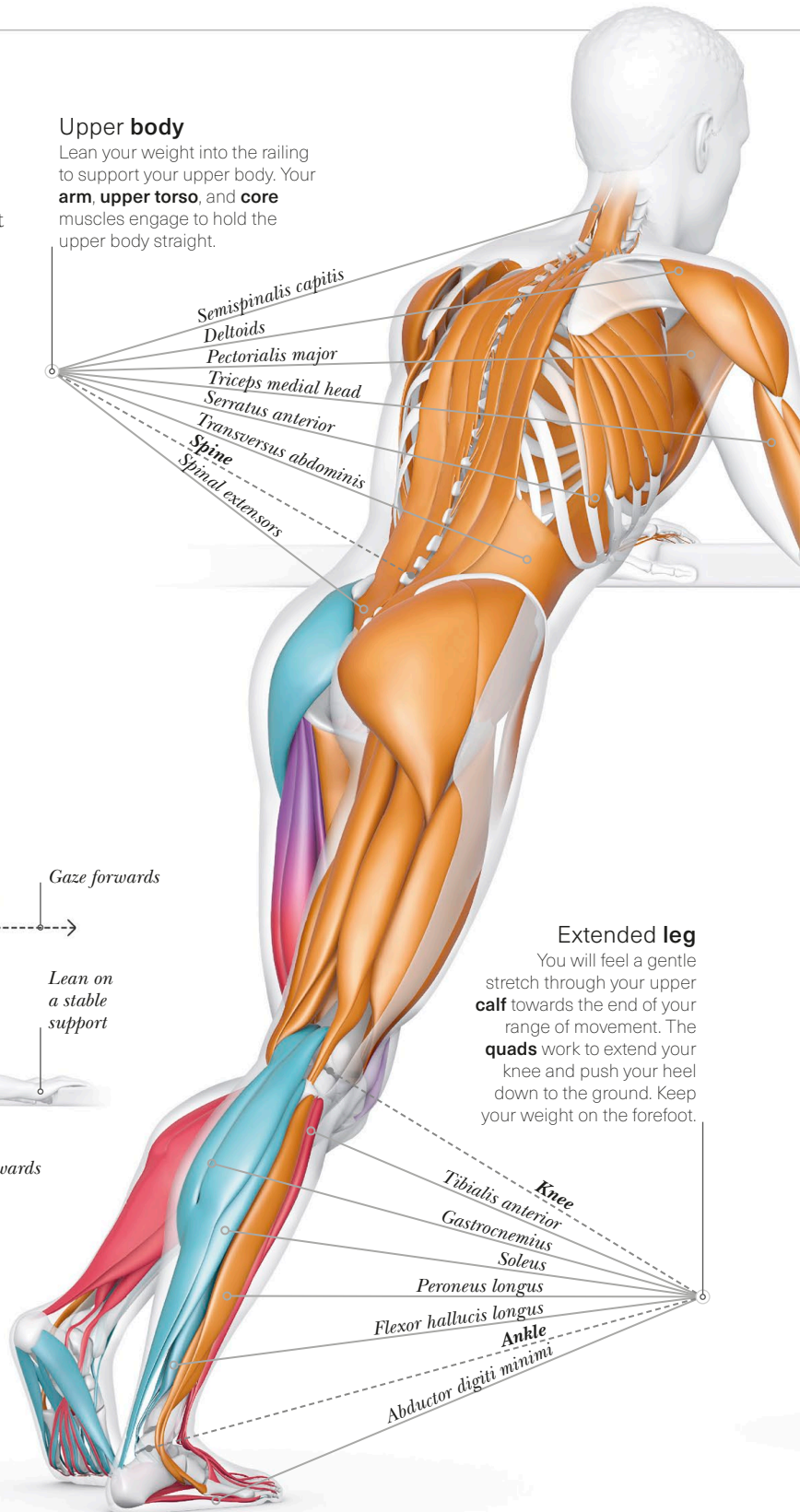
Rest your hands on the support, then step back to increase the angle of your lean to roughly 45°, with your body forming a straight line from your heels to the top of your head. Your heels should be just off the ground, your knees slightly soft.



## Extended leg

You will feel a gentle stretch through your upper **calf** towards the end of your range of movement. The **quads** work to extend your knee and push your heel down to the ground. Keep your weight on the forefoot.

Knee  
Tibialis anterior  
Gastrocnemius  
Soleus  
Peroneus longus  
Flexor hallucis longus  
Ankle  
Abductor digiti minimi

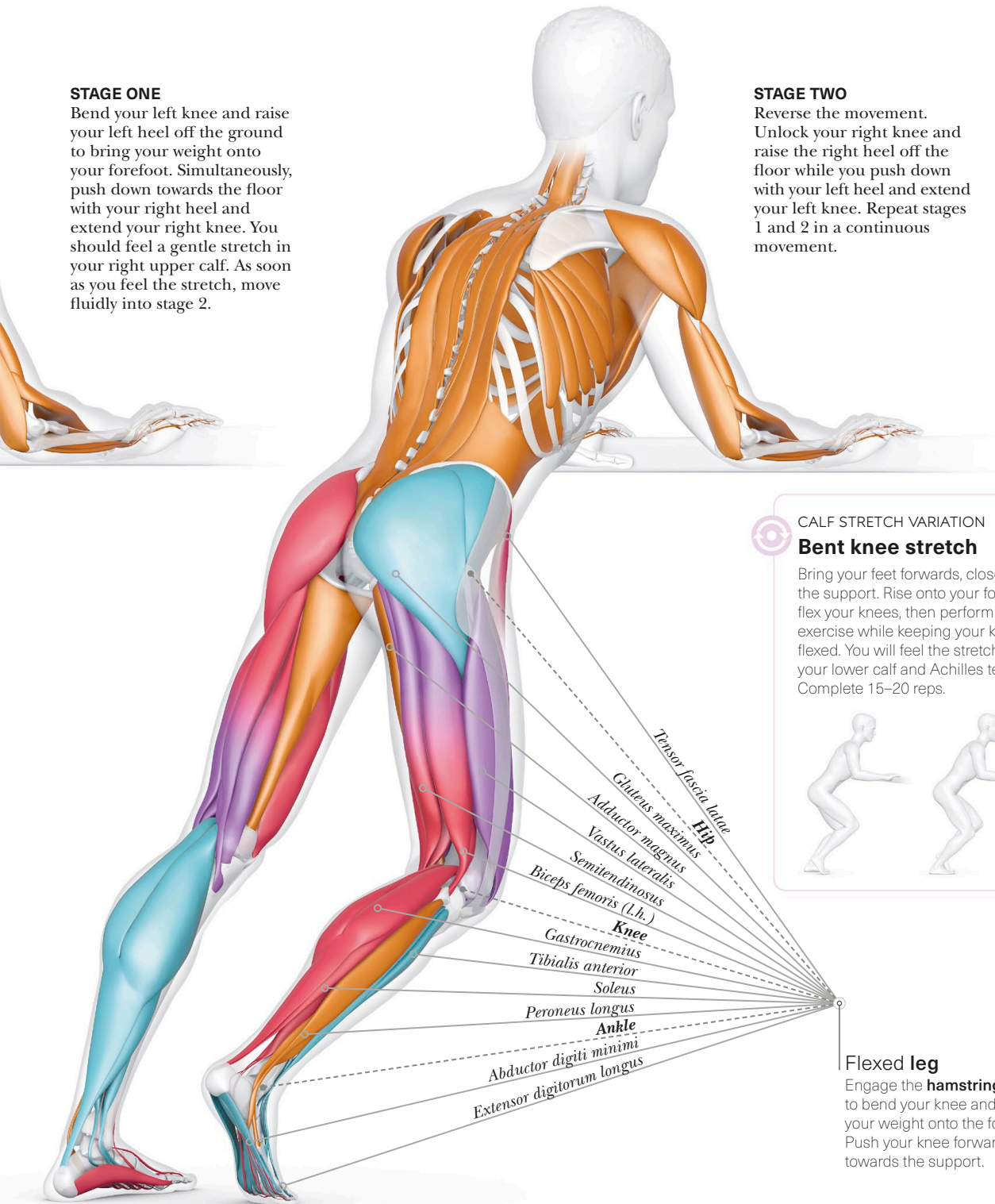


**STAGE ONE**

Bend your left knee and raise your left heel off the ground to bring your weight onto your forefoot. Simultaneously, push down towards the floor with your right heel and extend your right knee. You should feel a gentle stretch in your right upper calf. As soon as you feel the stretch, move fluidly into stage 2.

**STAGE TWO**

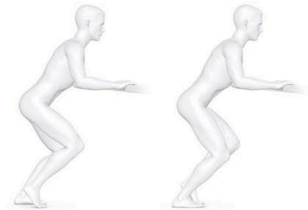
Reverse the movement. Unlock your right knee and raise the right heel off the floor while you push down with your left heel and extend your left knee. Repeat stages 1 and 2 in a continuous movement.



**CALF STRETCH VARIATION**

**Bent knee stretch**

Bring your feet forwards, closer to the support. Rise onto your forefeet, flex your knees, then perform the exercise while keeping your knees flexed. You will feel the stretch in your lower calf and Achilles tendon. Complete 15–20 reps.

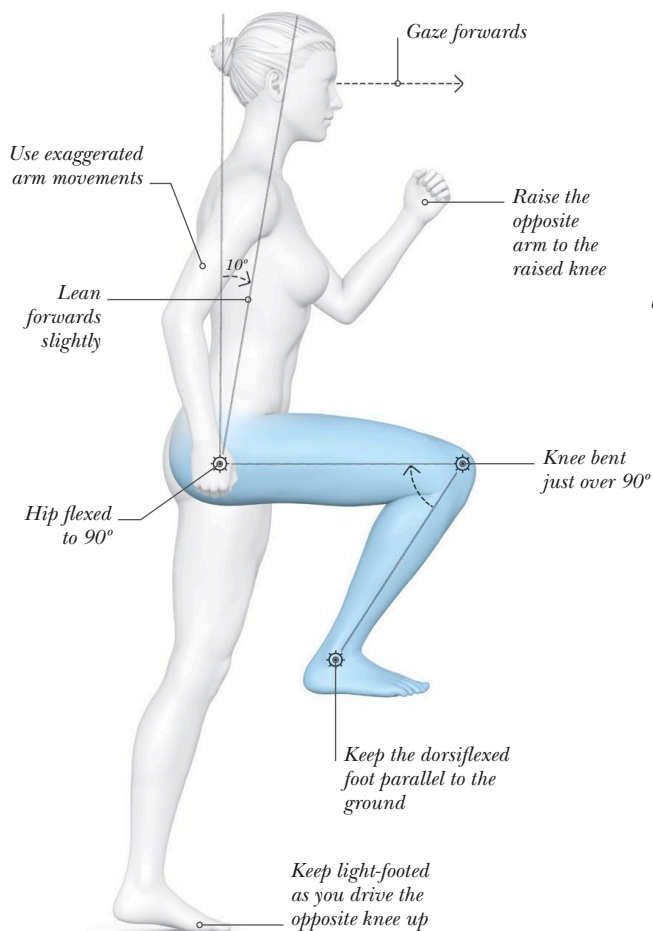


**Flexed leg**

Engage the **hamstrings** to bend your knee and shift your weight onto the forefoot. Push your knee forwards towards the support.

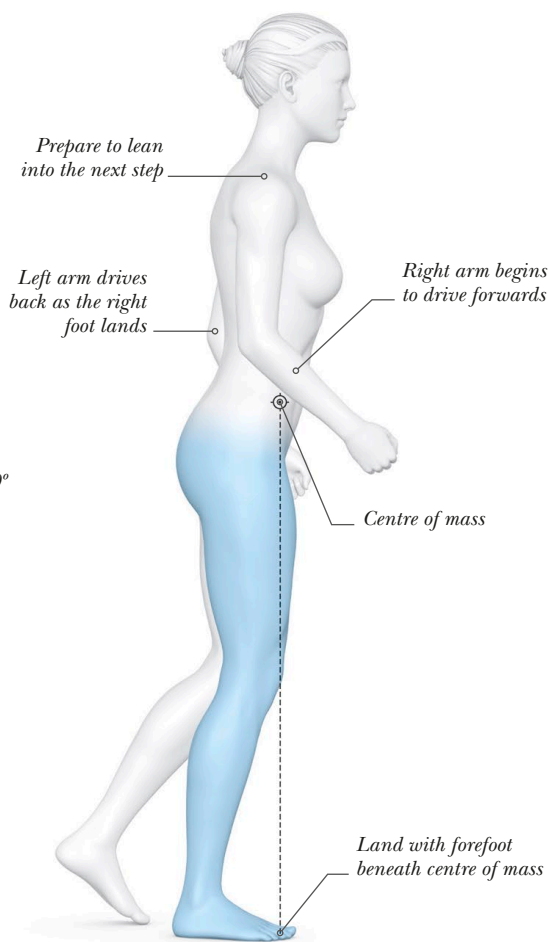
## DRILLS: RUNNING As

This marching drill emphasizes a driving knee lift, coordinated arm and leg movements, and good posture by maintaining a slight forward lean in the body. Your muscles must work hard to achieve the high-knee motion, which warms up the body and helps it tune in to good running form. Try to keep light on your feet, and note that the steps, while exaggerated, are small, allowing for a slow progression forwards.



### DRIVE THE KNEE UP

Stand tall, leaning forward slightly. Raise the right knee high and swing your arms in running motion. As you drive into the next step, allow the left heel to raise off the ground so your weight rests on the forefoot.

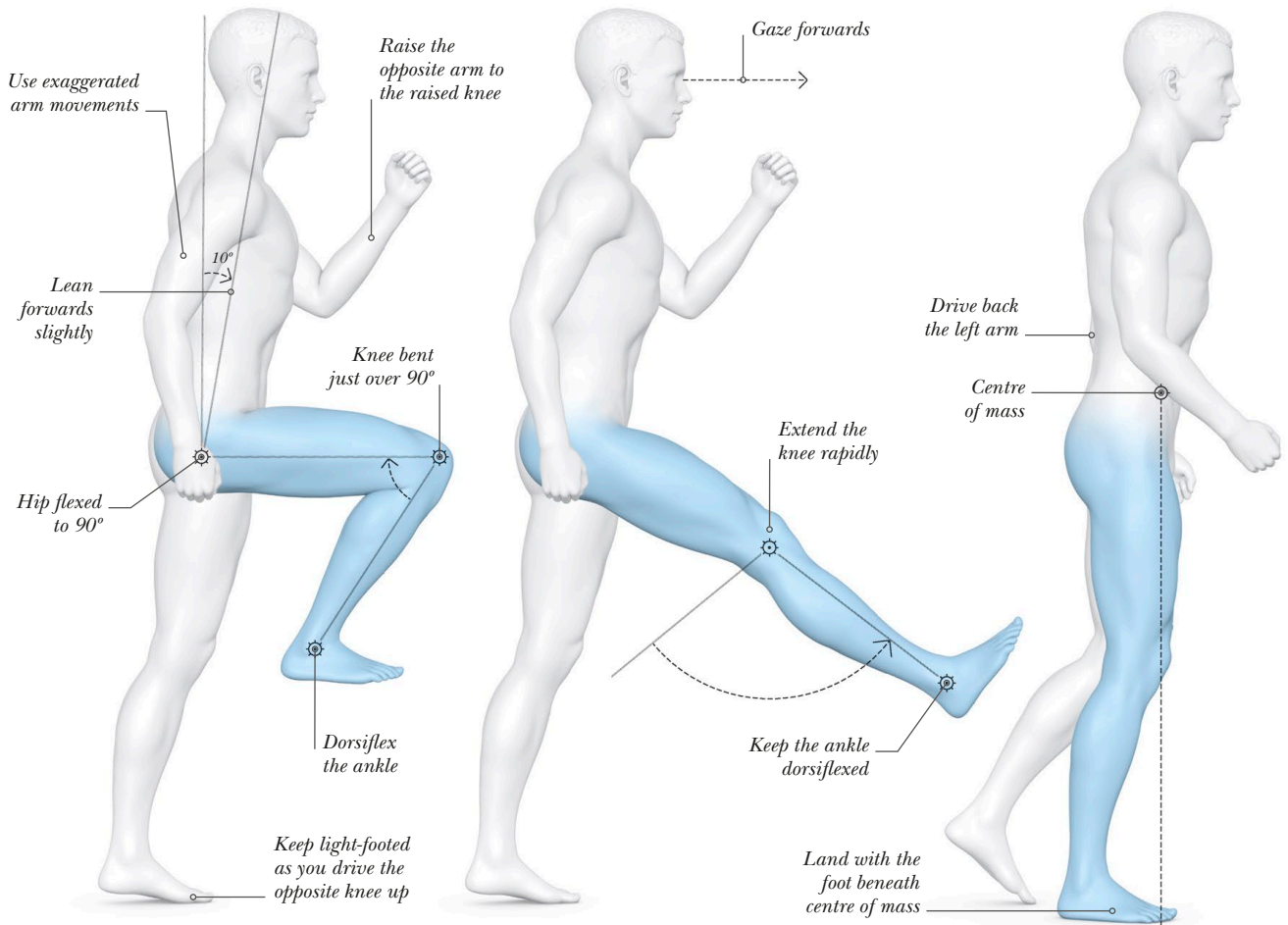


### TAKE SMALL STEPS

Quickly return the right leg to the ground slightly ahead of the opposite foot, landing on the forefoot. Drive the opposite leg back in running motion. Repeat for 15–20 repetitions per leg.

## DRILLS: RUNNING Bs

Adding a swift knee extension after driving the knee up challenges the hamstrings in this drill. The quick movement makes the sequence feel similar to skipping. Try to make the movements as smooth and fluid as possible. Regular practice improves stability in the lower limbs and increases the range of motion available in the hip, knee, and ankle joints.



### DRIVE THE KNEE UP

Stand tall, leaning forwards slightly. Raise the right knee high and swing your arms in running motion. As you drive forwards into the next step, allow the left heel to raise off the ground.

### EXTEND THE KNEE

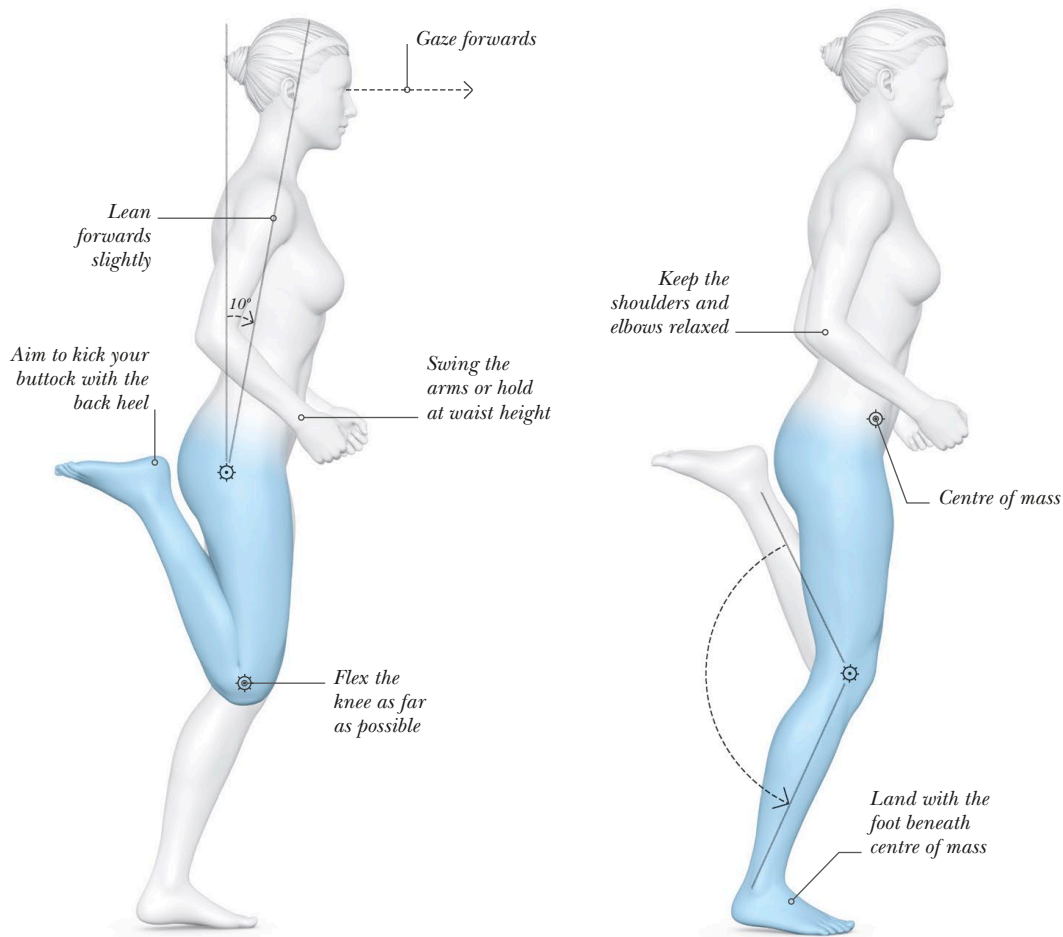
Just as you begin to pull the leg back down to the ground, extend the knee powerfully to straighten the leg.

### LAND UNDER CENTRE OF MASS

Swiftly sweep the extended leg back underneath you and land the right foot slightly ahead of the left, with the forefoot beneath your centre of mass. Drive the left arm back in running motion.

## DRILLS: RUNNING Cs

This drill incorporates a butt kick with each stride as you drive forwards smoothly in small, positive running steps. Regular practice promotes hip flexor and quadriceps flexibility, as well as efficient footwork and running cadence. Move the arms in a running motion, raising the opposite arm to the raised leg, or if you find this distracting, hold them by your waist and focus your attention on the movement.



### KICK ONE SIDE

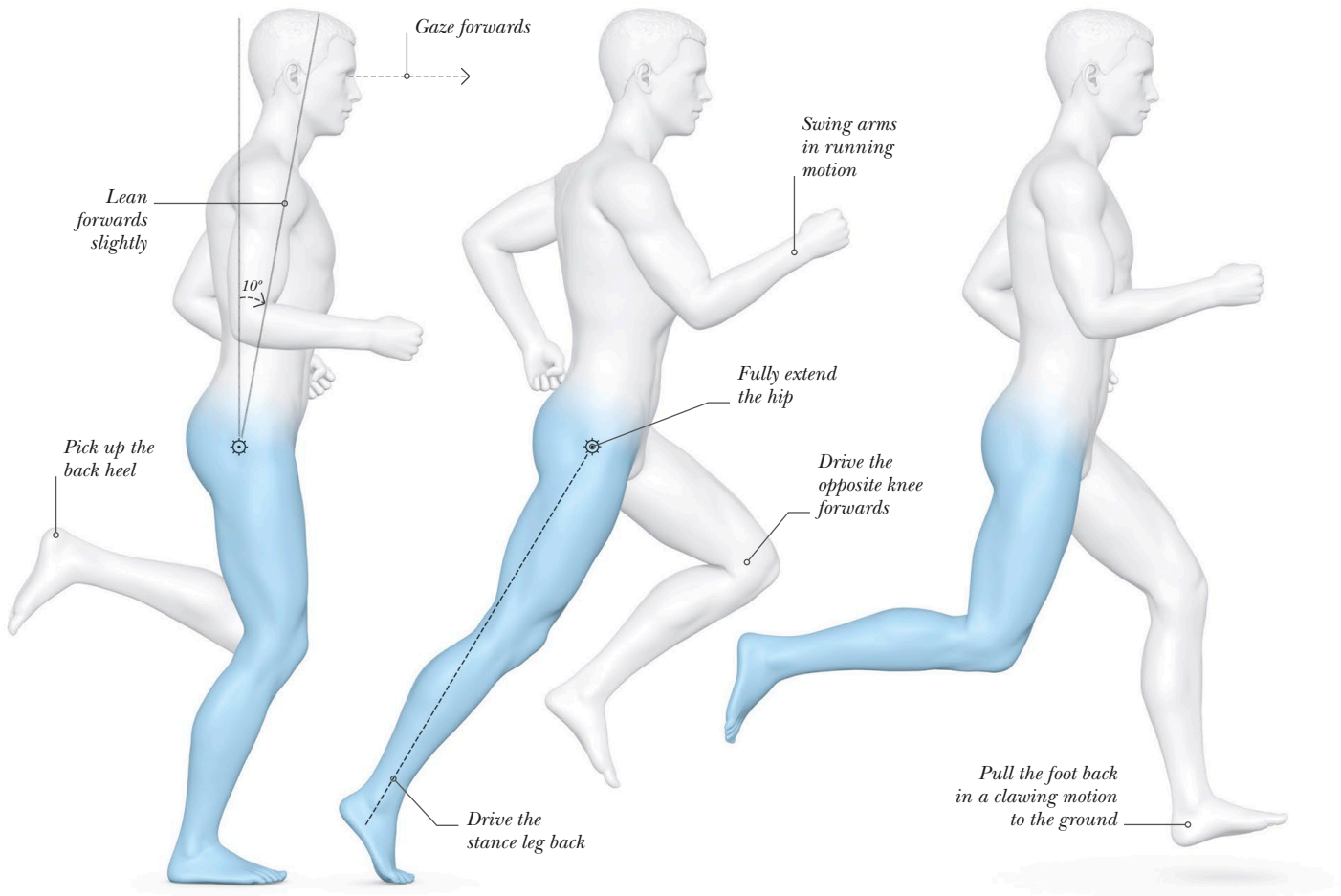
Stand tall with a slight forward lean. Snap your right heel up towards your buttock, keeping the left leg straight as you drive into the next step. Allow the left heel to raise off the ground so your weight rests on the forefoot.

### KICK THE OPPOSITE SIDE

Immediately bring the right leg back to the ground after a short flight phase (when both feet are off the ground). Land with the forefoot beneath your centre of mass and slightly ahead of the opposite foot.

## DRILLS: STRIDES

Strides allow you to perfect your form at speed. Make your strides a slightly exaggerated version of your running form. Begin at a comfortable pace, focussing on posture and footwork, then accelerate during the set to roughly 80 per cent of your maximum speed for the final 5–10 seconds.



### FOCUS ON FORM

Stand tall with a slight forward lean as you begin your set of strides. Focus on your form, ensuring your forefoot or heel (whichever is natural to you) lands beneath your hips. Keep your shoulders relaxed.

### PICK UP SPEED

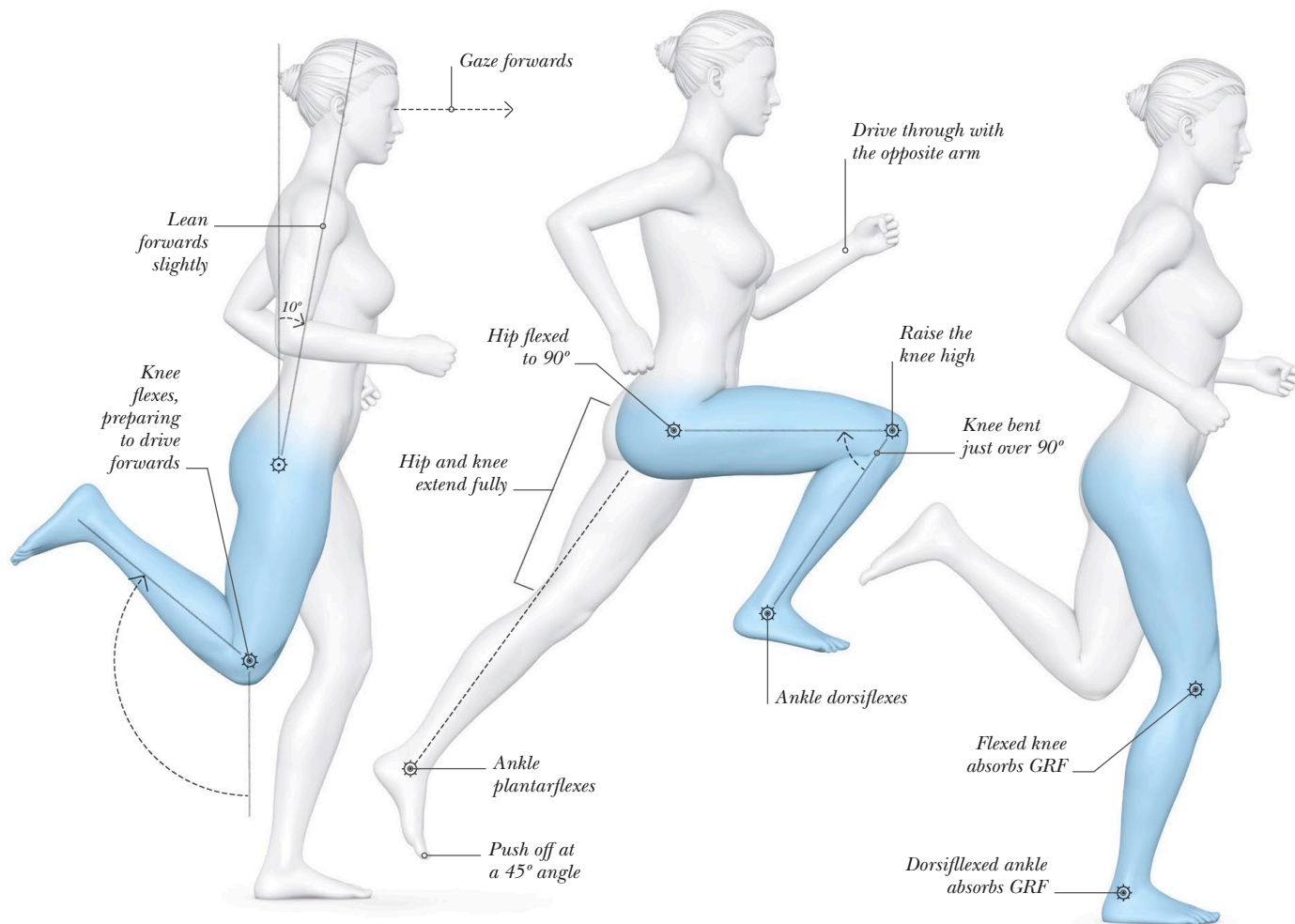
As you accelerate, ensure that you drive the stance leg back and pull the opposite knee up and forwards with each step. A strong knee drive creates a powerful hip extension in the stance leg for push-off.

### FINAL SPRINT

Maintain your form as you power into a sprint at 80 per cent of your maximum speed for a short burst to end the set. Drive your arms back and forth in running motion to help power the movement.

## DRILLS: BOUNDING

The Bounding drill increases the power of your leg springs. As you land, aim to drive straight through into an explosive take-off, then continue powerfully with the opposite knee. Aim to bound as high and as far forward as you can, then hold the sprint position at the height of the movement briefly, before landing with some velocity, ready to spring forwards again.



### PREPARE TO DRIVE THE KNEE

As you land, lean forwards from the ankle, with your weight on the forefoot, and with your knee and hip slightly flexed. Flex the opposite knee, ready to drive it up with the next stride.

### PUSH OFF EXPLOSIVELY

Push off strongly in an exaggerated running motion to drive yourself up and forwards off the ground. Drive the opposite knee forwards, and the arms through in running motion to help propel you off the ground.

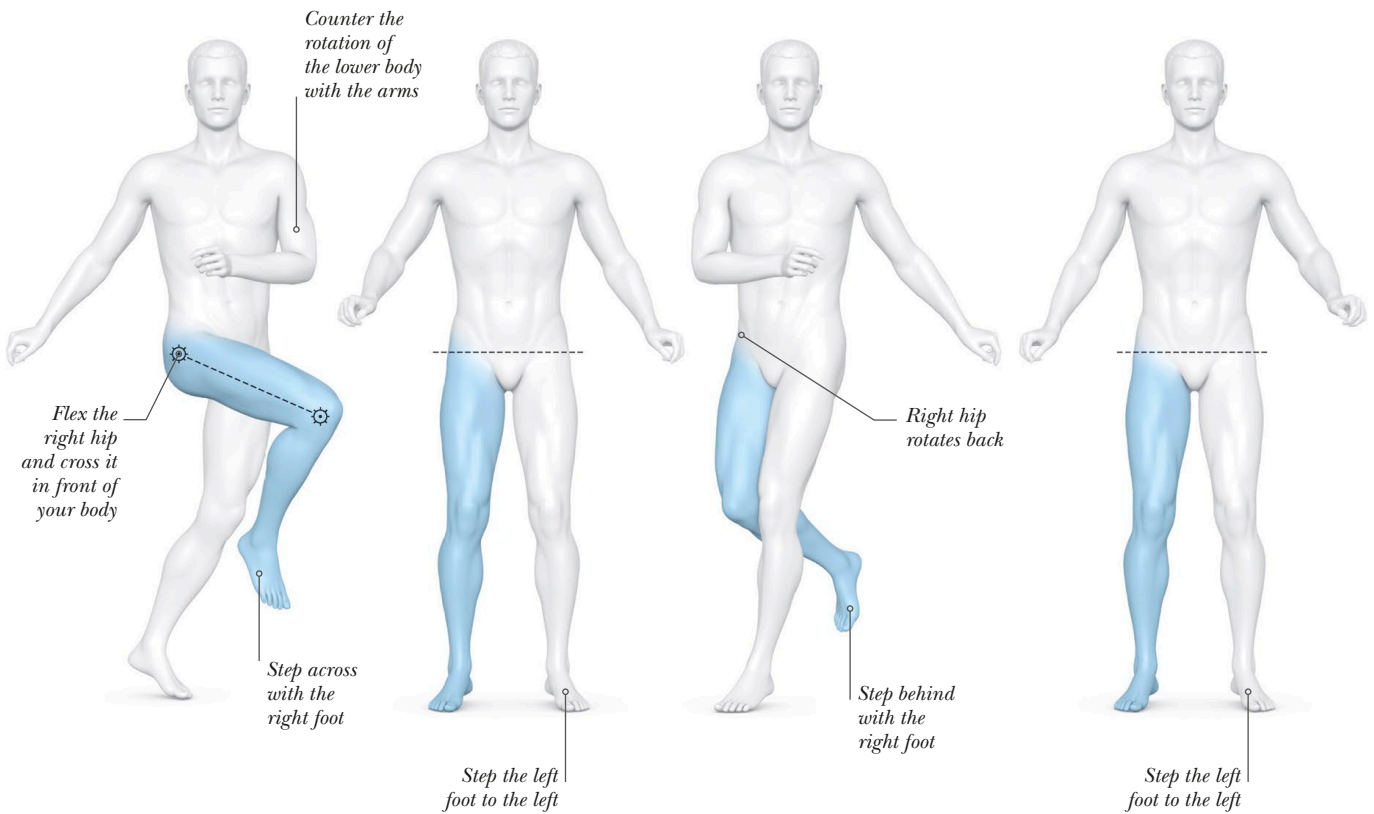
### LAND SOFTLY

As you land and start absorbing the ground reaction force (GRF), focus on powering through into the next stride. Think of your leg as a spring, storing GRF energy to propel explosively forwards and upwards.



## DRILLS: CARIOCA

The carioca drill is a sideways movement that helps improve a runner's agility, coordination, and mobility. Aim to make the movements quick and fluid. As the drill becomes familiar, increase your speed to keep the coordinated movement challenging. Move first in one direction, then immediately travel back in the opposite direction to complete a set.



**STEP ACROSS THE FRONT**  
Start slightly raised on your forefeet. To travel to your left, focus on your right leg. Raise your right knee and step across your body to the left.

**STEP TO THE SIDE**  
Step your left foot out to the left. Remain springy and light-footed on your forefeet.

**STEP ACROSS THE BACK**  
Now pull your right hip back and then cross your right leg back and behind your left.

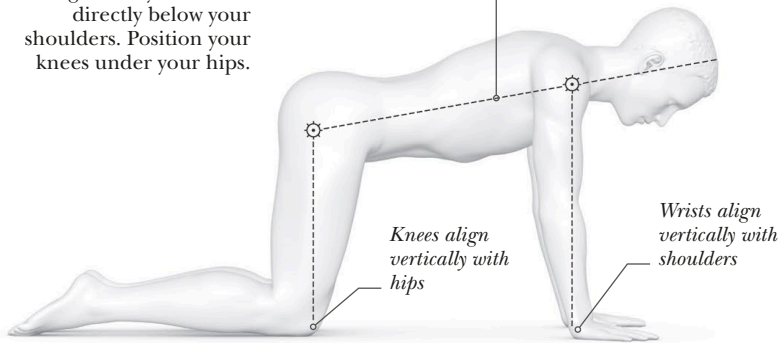
**STEP TO THE SIDE**  
Step your left foot to the left. To travel to your right, focus on your left leg and reverse the directions.



### PREPARATORY STAGE

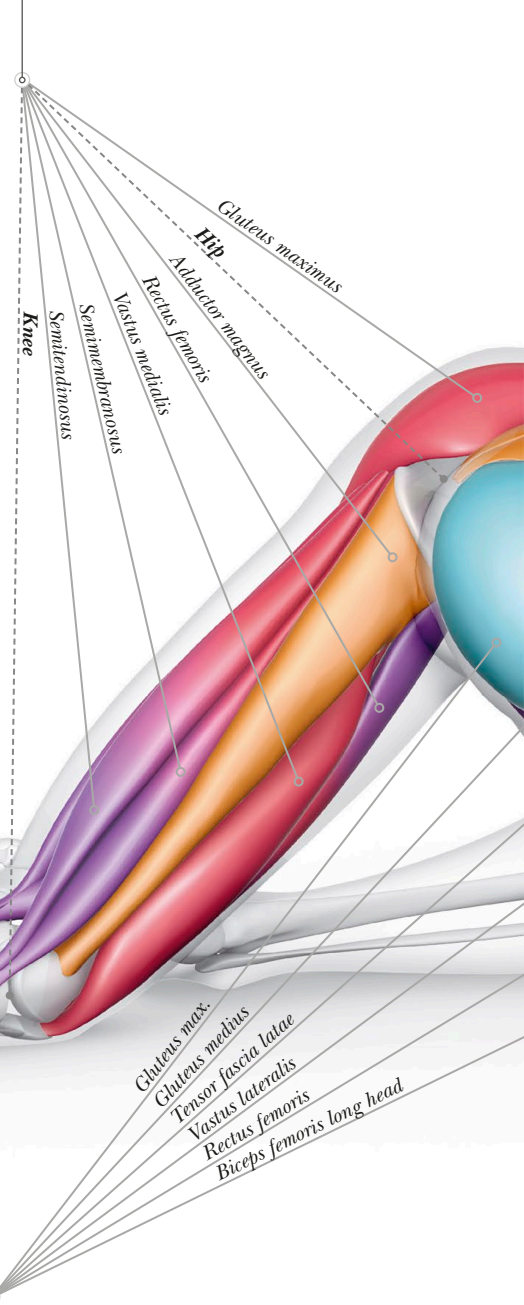
Start on your hands and knees with your elbows straight and your hands directly below your shoulders. Position your knees under your hips.

Keep your back flat and the spine neutral



### Extended leg

Slide your foot back, relaxing the **hip flexors** and engaging the **glutes** as you extend your hip.



## RECOVERY STRETCH: MODIFIED PIGEON

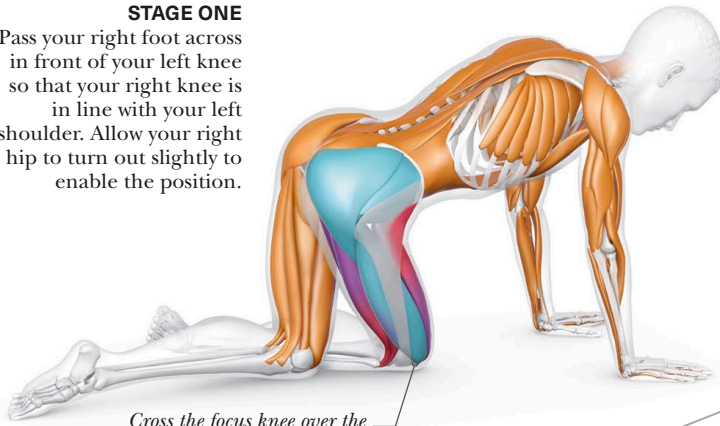
The hard-working piriformis muscle receives a strong stretch in this modified yoga pose, which relaxes the deep six hip external rotators (see p.128) – a group of muscles that is commonly tight in distance runners. Practise this cool-down stretch 2–3 times on each leg in turn. As you hold the position, allow your body to gradually sink further into the pose. You should feel a stretch through the focus hip and buttock. Gently adjust the angle of the focus hip and shift your weight slightly until you feel this stretch.

### Front hip and leg

The crossed position of your leg shifts your weight so that it drops through the lateral right knee. The stretch is felt through your right **hip** into the **glutes** and **deep external rotators**.

**STAGE ONE**

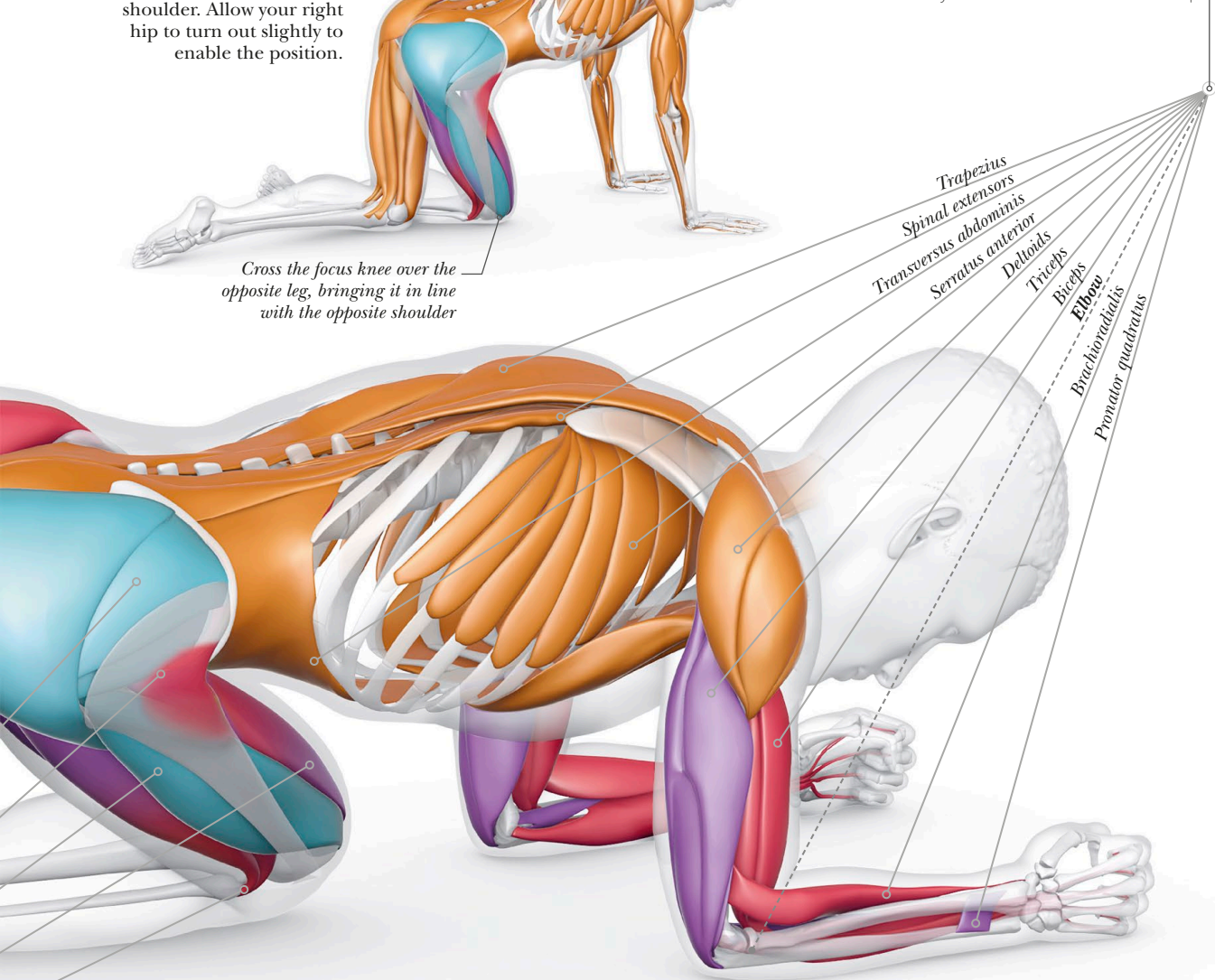
Pass your right foot across in front of your left knee so that your right knee is in line with your left shoulder. Allow your right hip to turn out slightly to enable the position.



Cross the focus knee over the opposite leg, bringing it in line with the opposite shoulder

**Upper body**

Keep your **torso** square to the ground. Your **arm muscles** support the weight of your upper body. Keep your head in line with your back – do not allow it to drop.



**KEY**

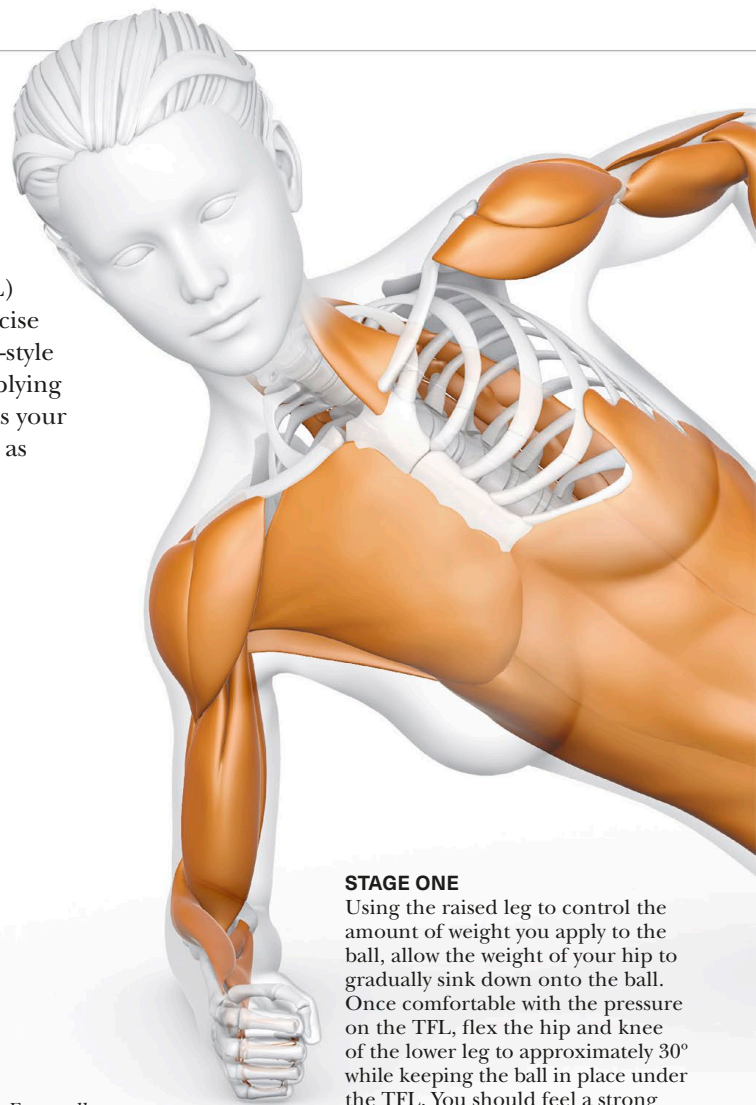
- Joints
- Muscles
- Shortening under tension
- Lengthening under tension
- Lengthening without tension (stretching)
- Held muscles without motion

**STAGE TWO**

Flex your elbows, position them vertically beneath your shoulders, and rest on your forearms. Now slowly slide your left leg backwards to draw your hips back and downwards. Lean into your forearms and hold a comfortable stretch for 30–60 seconds. Slide your leg forwards to return to stage 1 before repeating. To come out of the stretch, return to stage 1 and uncross the legs.

# RECOVERY STRETCH: TFL BALL RELEASE

If you have recently increased your training load, or if your occupation requires you to sit for prolonged periods, you might find your tensor fascia latae (TFL) muscles are frequently tight. This active-release exercise using a ball relaxes the TFL. Select a harder lacrosse-style therapy ball rather than a soft foam one. Start by applying light pressure on the ball, increasing this gradually as your body allows. Repeat 10–12 times on each side, or for as long as needed, to feel a release in the TFL muscle.

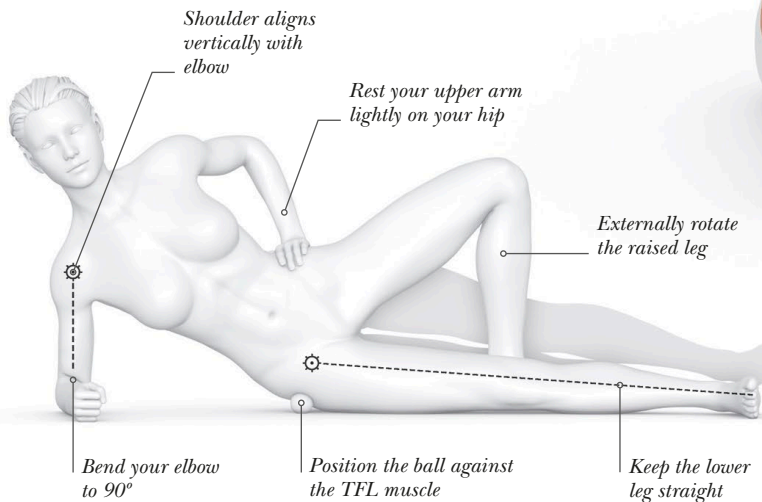


## KEY

- Joints
- Muscles
- Shortening under tension
- Lengthening under tension
- Lengthening without tension (stretching)
- Held muscles without motion

## STAGE ONE

Using the raised leg to control the amount of weight you apply to the ball, allow the weight of your hip to gradually sink down onto the ball. Once comfortable with the pressure on the TFL, flex the hip and knee of the lower leg to approximately 30° while keeping the ball in place under the TFL. You should feel a strong sensation across the TFL, and possibly in the buttock, lateral thigh, and groin areas.

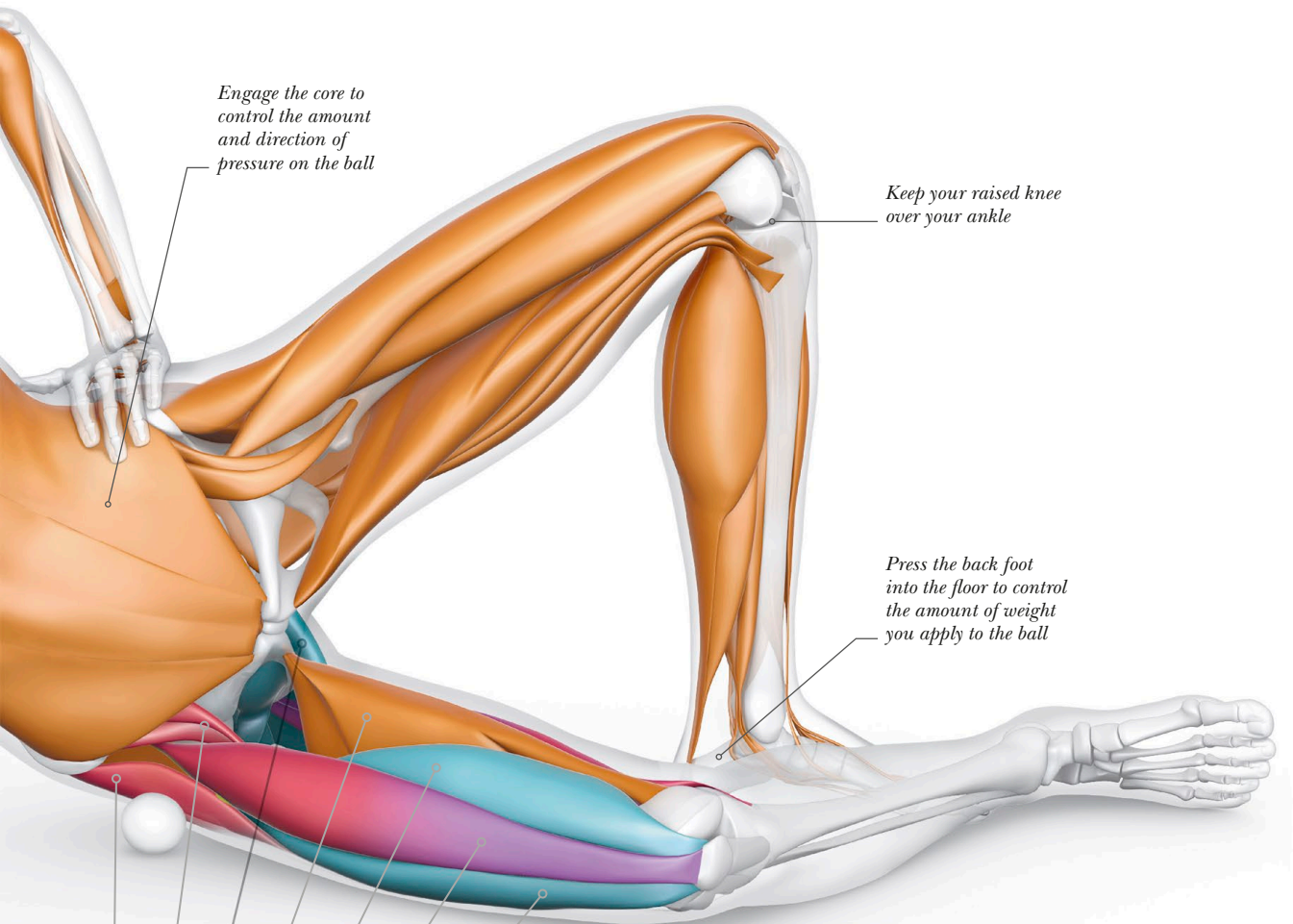


## PREPARATORY STAGE

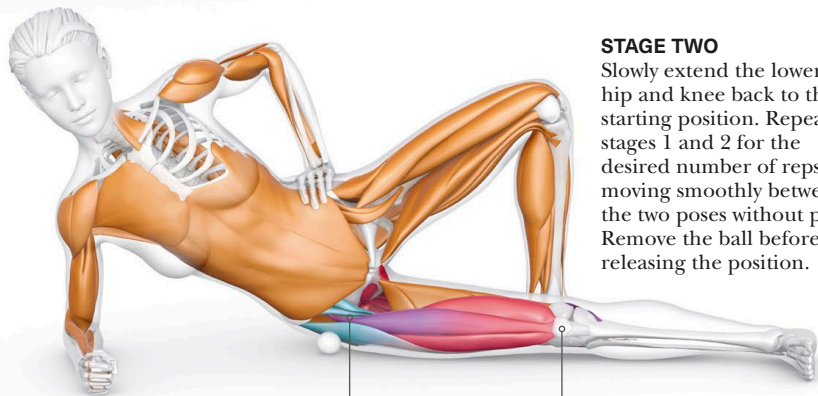
Lie down on one side with your legs straight. Prop yourself up on one arm. Flex the upper knee, raise the leg, and bring the heel to the floor behind the straight knee. Press into the foot to raise your hip off the floor and place the ball between the floor and the centre of the TFL muscle. Gently roll your torso forwards slightly if necessary to hold the ball in place.

## Lower hip

The **hip flexors** engage to bend your hip, while the **TFL** receives an intense stretch. The **hamstrings** engage to bend the knee as it is raised towards your chest.



Tensor fascia latae  
 Iliopsoas  
 Gluteus maximus  
 Adductor magnus  
 Vastus medialis  
 Rectus femoris  
 Vastus lateralis

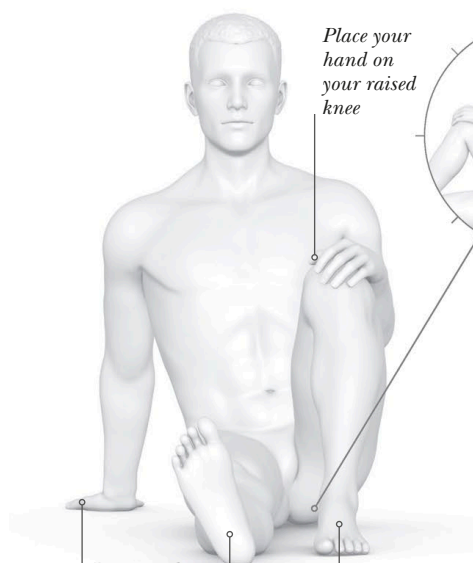


**STAGE TWO**

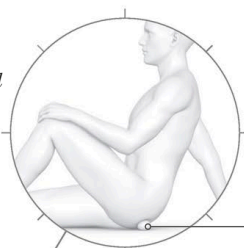
Slowly extend the lower hip and knee back to the starting position. Repeat stages 1 and 2 for the desired number of reps, moving smoothly between the two poses without pause. Remove the ball before releasing the position.

# RECOVERY STRETCH: PIRIFORMIS BALL RELEASE

This active-release exercise using a therapy ball (see p.92) relaxes the piriformis muscle, which can become tight with increased training volume and sedentary occupations. Start by applying your weight lightly on the ball as you move your knee from side to side in a fluid, continuous movement. Increase the amount of pressure gradually, as your body allows. Repeat 10–12 times on each leg, or for as long as needed to feel a release in the piriformis.



Place your hand on your raised knee



Position the ball beneath the piriformis muscle

Lean on the opposite arm

Keep the opposite leg straight

Bend the leg on the side of the focus hip

## PREPARATORY STAGE

Sit with straight legs, then bend one knee and set the heel alongside the calf of the straight leg. Press your foot into the floor to raise your hip, then position the ball under the piriformis. Gradually allow your weight to sink down onto the ball – as pressure increases, you should feel a comfortable stretch in the buttock.

## STAGE ONE

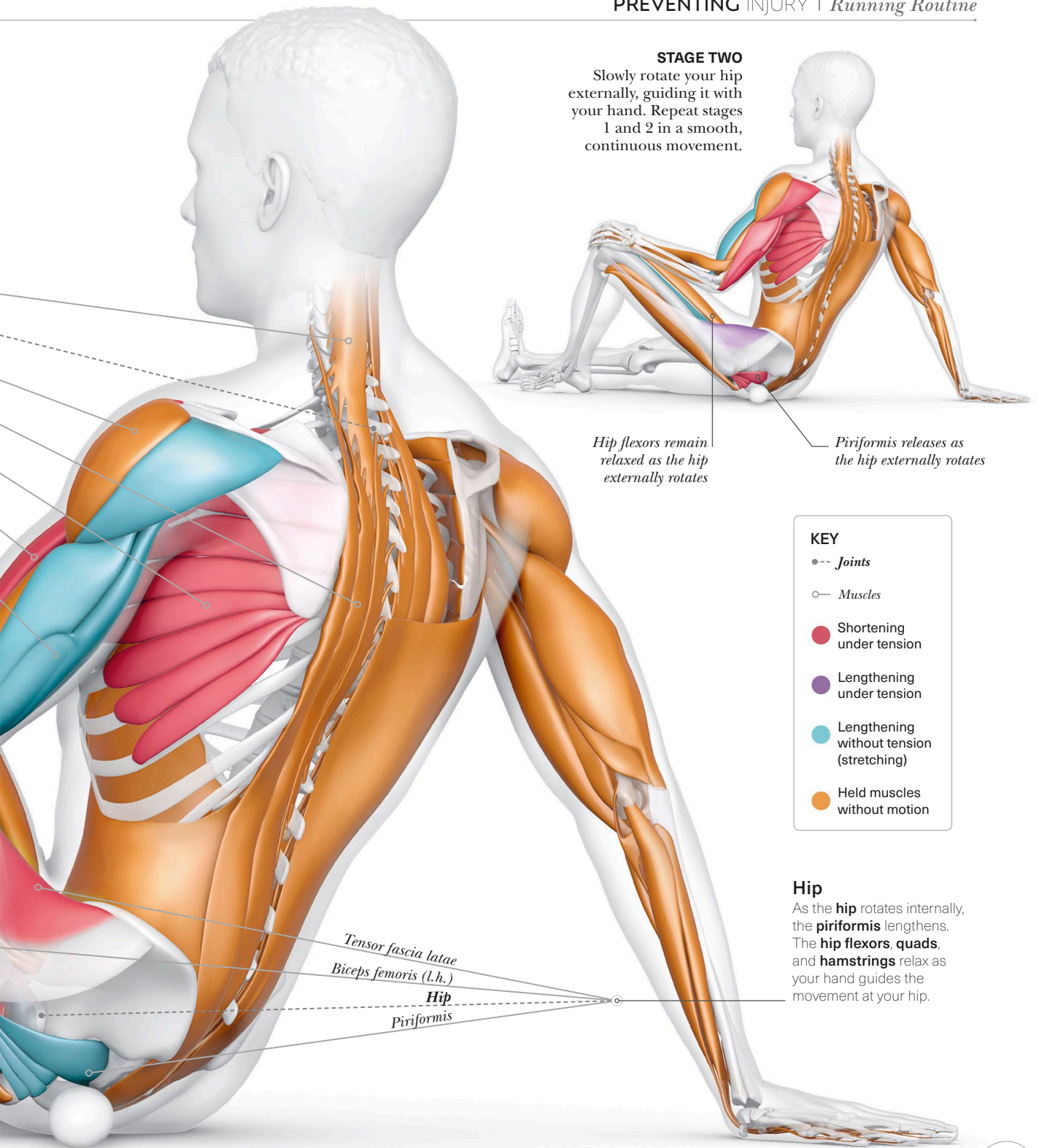
Slowly rotate the focus hip internally, guiding it with the hand on your knee. As it stretches, you will feel a strong sensation across the piriformis, and possibly in your thigh, groin, or buttock.



## Upper body

The **deltoids** and **triceps** in the supporting arm engage to prop up your upper body, while the muscles of the active arm guide the rotational movement of your hip via your knee.

Semispinalis capitis  
Spine  
Deltoids  
Spinal extensors  
Serratus anterior  
Biceps  
Triceps  
Brachioradialis  
Elbow



**STAGE TWO**

Slowly rotate your hip externally, guiding it with your hand. Repeat stages 1 and 2 in a smooth, continuous movement.

*Hip flexors remain relaxed as the hip externally rotates*

*Piriformis releases as the hip externally rotates*

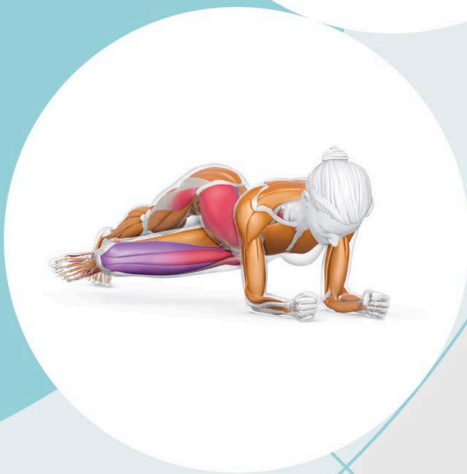
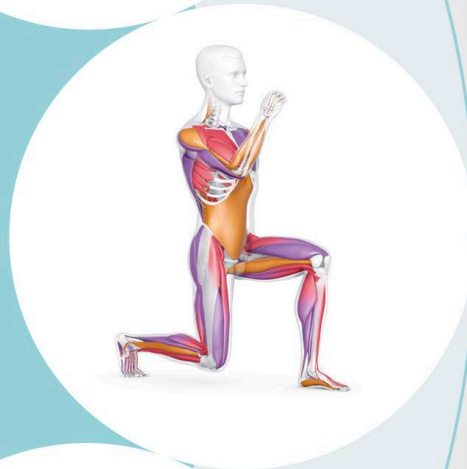
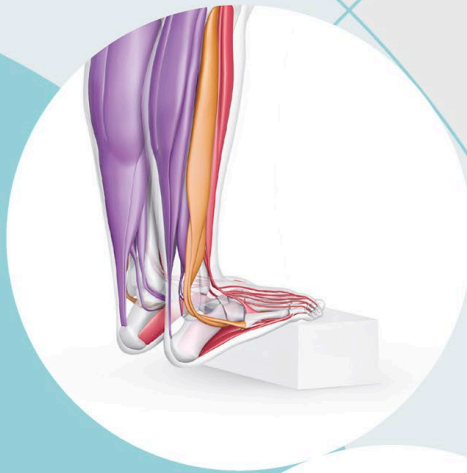
**KEY**

- Joints
- Muscles
- Shortening under tension
- Lengthening under tension
- Lengthening without tension (stretching)
- Held muscles without motion

**Hip**

As the **hip** rotates internally, the **piriformis** lengthens. The **hip flexors**, **quads**, and **hamstrings** relax as your hand guides the movement at your hip.

*Tensor fascia latae*  
*Biceps femoris (l.h.)*  
**Hip**  
*Piriformis*





# STRENGTH EXERCISES

**Selected for their focus on the muscles used most in running,** the strength-training exercises featured in this chapter can be used to develop the power and robustness needed to withstand the repetitive impacts involved in running, as well as the increasing loads of a training programme. There is growing evidence to suggest that strength training has a beneficial effect not just on injury risk, but also on performance.



# PLANNING YOUR DRILLS

**Regular strength training using the exercises in this chapter can complement your running and become a valuable cross-training activity (see p.187). By understanding which muscles are working, the joint actions involved, and how each drill benefits your training, you can ensure you are exercising optimally and gaining the maximum benefit.**

## WHY DO STRENGTH TRAINING?

If fast, pain-free running is your goal, it may seem counter-intuitive to do any training other than running. However, the reality is that strength training can improve running performance and economy and reduce the risk of injury.

### TARGETED TRAINING

The storage and release of energy in your tendons (see pp.18–19) contributes up to half of the total work involved in each step. Targeting the efficiency of this process can have significant effects on running performance. To do this we need to increase “stiffness” in our tendons. Stiffness, in the biomechanical

sense, is the extent to which a structure resists deformation in response to an externally applied force. Stiffer tendons can store more energy when stretched in the loading phase of running, and release more energy during the propulsion phase.

### IMPROVING STIFFNESS

Increasing the stiffness of tendons requires high loads and greater time under tension. Running can produce loads of up to only 2.5–3 times bodyweight, and places tendons under tension for short periods of time (when your foot is in contact with the ground). Heavy

resistance training offers an opportunity to increase tendon stiffness under loads greater than those achieved during running, and for longer periods, thereby improving running performance.

### ! Caution

Pay attention to cautions indicated alongside exercise instructions. If you find you experience pain while practising any exercise, consult a physiotherapist to establish the cause and avoid aggravating an existing condition. If you experience pain greater than 3/10 (see p.56), discontinue the exercise until you are advised otherwise by your clinician.

### Enhancing impact absorption and propulsion

Some of the exercises in this chapter increase the capacity of the lower limbs to absorb the ground reaction force (GRF, see p.18). Others improve the body's ability to generate propulsive power (see p.19). Several of the exercises provide both benefits. Ensure you include a mix of these exercises in your regular drills.

#### Exercises that improve propulsion capacity

- Hip Extension
- Step Up
- Hamstring Ball Roll-in

- Lunge
- Box Jump
- Single Leg Hop
- Heel Drop
- Traditional Deadlift
- Romanian deadlift
- Single Leg Ball Squat

#### Exercises that improve GRF absorption capacity

- Hip Hike
- Step Down

# PERFORMING THE EXERCISES

Most of the 18 exercises and variations in this chapter involve repeated movements between two poses, either held for a specific length of time or continued fluidly between poses. Pay attention to timings and covering the complete range of movement for each exercise, following all of the form and alignment cues.

For each exercise, the main image features the movement that is the main focus. There is often a target or focus leg and a non-focus leg, so that you work each side of the body in isolation. This is important, since in running you are only ever on one leg at a time. Progressions for exercises are provided where they exist; otherwise, when you find you are no longer working hard, move

on to a more difficult version of the exercise. Often, progressions add the use of weights (see right), but sometimes you will move on to a different exercise altogether.

## ESTABLISHING A REGIMEN

If you are just starting out and have no injuries, choose 3–5 exercises that target the hip, thigh, and calf muscles. Aim for 2 sessions per week for at least 6 weeks in order to see strength gains. Perform the stated number of reps and sets on each side of the body (alternating sides between sets), ensuring there is enough resistance for your muscles to feel fatigued by the end of each set. Give yourself 2–3 minutes recovery time between sets. If you are rehabilitating a specific injury, follow the guidance of your physiotherapist.

## What you will need

While most of the exercises do not involve the use of props, you will need to invest in a few pieces of equipment if you lack access to a gym:

- resistance bands – use bands of increasing strengths as you become stronger
- exercise step/box – high (30cm/12in) and low (15cm/6in)
- exercise mat for floor exercises, if desired
- barbell for deadlifts
- dumbbells of various weights – switch to heavier weights as you become stronger
- backpack for weights (see below)
- exercise ball – 55cm (21½in) or 65cm (26in) diameter.

Many of the exercises instruct you to “add weight” once an exercise becomes easy. You can simply perform the exercise holding dumbbells, if the body position will allow it. Alternatively, wear a backpack containing weights, adding more as required to progress.

## Injury prevention and rehabilitations

Many of the exercises in this book can be used to help you rehabilitate from a number of common running-related injuries. Those exercises also help to protect

against the same injuries. If you are prone to, or rehabilitating from, any of the injuries below, focus on the listed exercises.

### IT band pain (see p.61)

- Hip Hike
- Standing Hip Rotation
- Single Leg Ball Squat
- Step Down
- Step Up
- Hip Extension
- Lunge
- Box Jump (advanced)

### Patellofemoral pain (see p.57)

- Hip Hike
- Standing Hip Rotation
- Step Down
- Step Up
- Single Leg Ball Squat
- Traditional Deadlift
- Lunge
- Box Jump (advanced)
- Single Leg Hop

### Ankle sprains and chronic ankle instability

- Ankle Eversion
- Ankle Inversion
- Resisted Toe
- Foot Doming
- Single Leg Hop

### Achilles tendinopathy (see p.58)

- Heel Drop, including seated variation
- Dynamic Calf Stretch
- Single Leg Hop (advanced)

### Hamstring tendinopathy

- Hamstring Ball Roll In
- Hip Extension
- Traditional Deadlift
- Romanian Deadlift

### Plantar heel pain (see p.60)

- Resisted Toe
- Foot Doming
- Ankle Turn In
- Single Leg Hop (advanced)

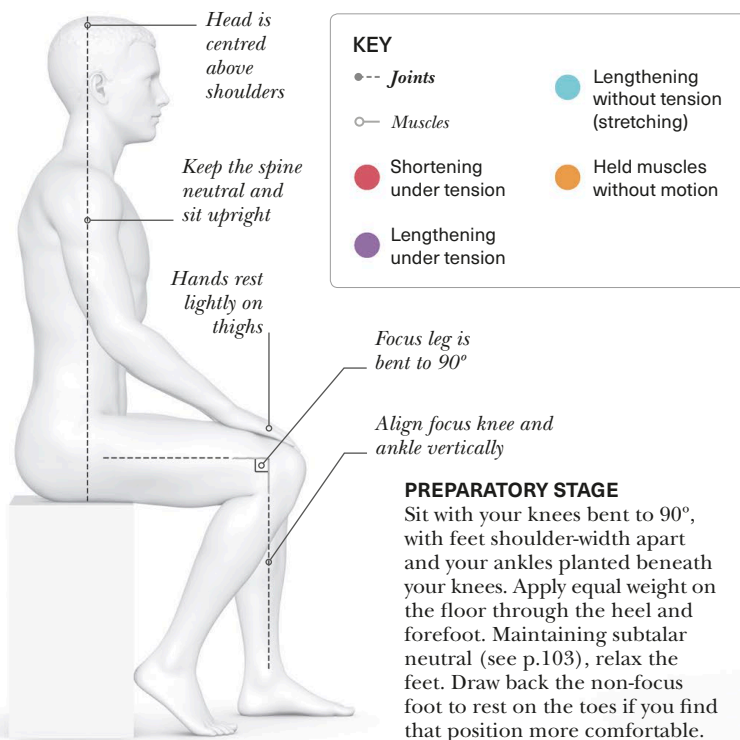
# FOOT DOMING

**This exercise targets the intrinsic muscles of the foot** (see p.102), enhancing the foot's spring-like nature to aid in performance. Regular practice improves the function and stability of the foot and ankle, which may benefit runners with chronic ankle instability from repeated sprains.

## THE BIG PICTURE

The foot core (see p.22) is your target in this exercise. During stage one you raise it in a dome shape, decreasing the distance between the heel and the first big toe joint.

If new to this exercise, perform 3–4 sets of 10–12 reps. To advance, work through the following progressions, performing the exercise: while standing; while standing on one leg; while holding a squat; while holding a single-leg squat; holding stage 1 while stepping forwards; holding stage 1 while stepping onto, then down from, a step; holding stage 1 while hopping.

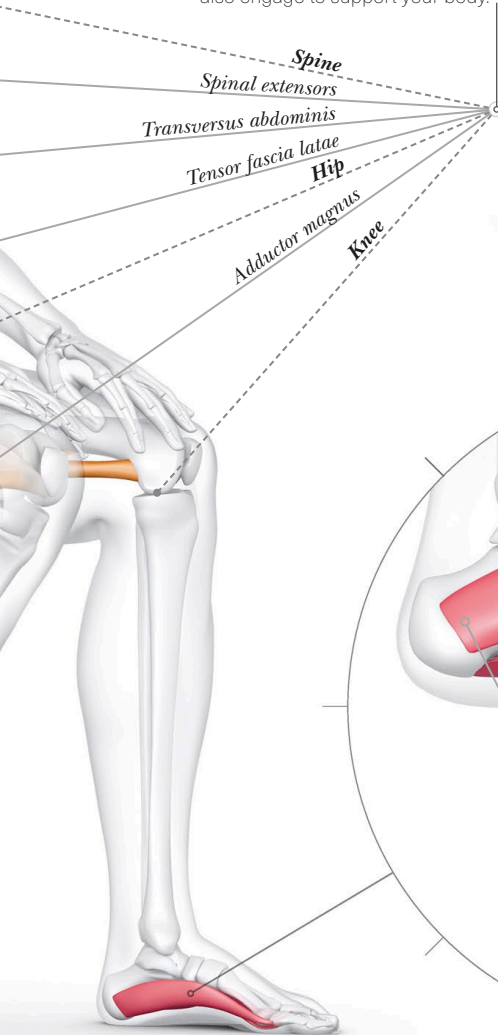


## STAGE ONE

Draw back the ball of your foot towards your heel to raise your arch in a dome shape and shorten your foot. Keep the outside of the foot in contact with the floor and the toes relaxed – do not curl them. Ensure the weight of your leg is applied evenly through your heel and forefoot. Hold for 5 seconds.

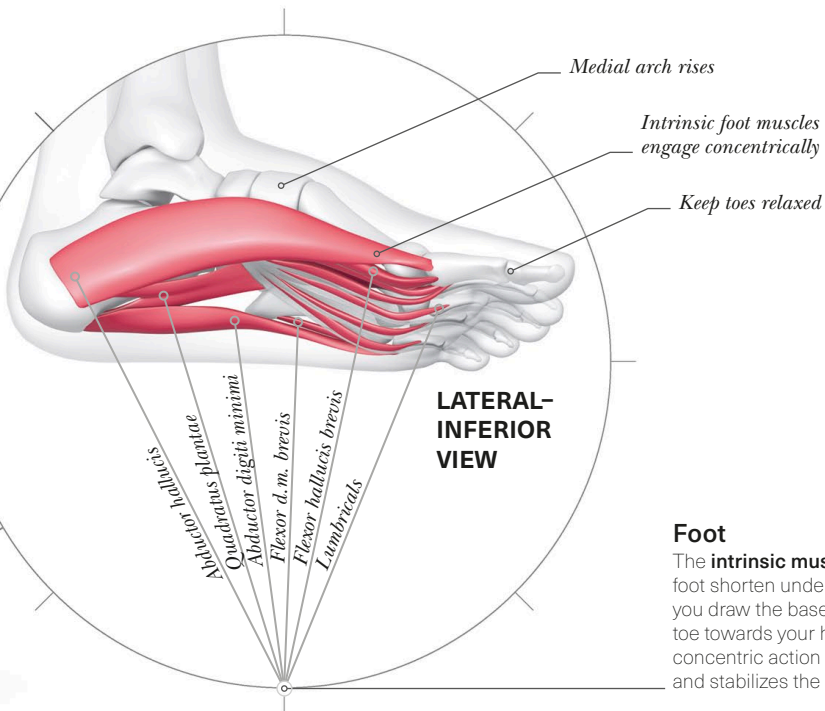
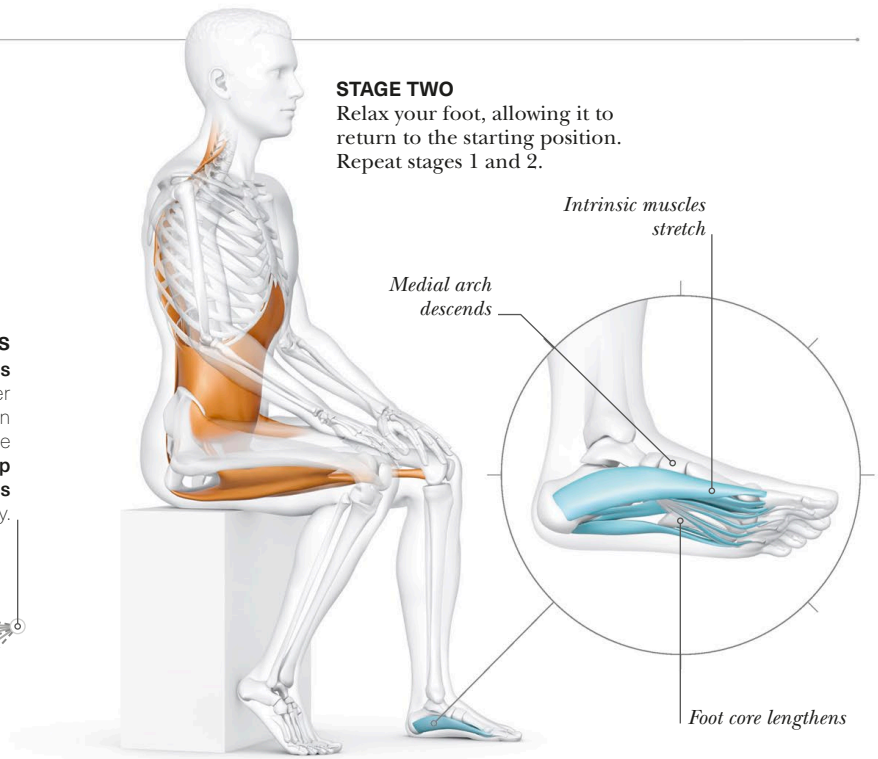
### Core and upper legs

The **spinal extensors** and **transversus abdominis** engage isometrically, neither lengthening or shortening, to maintain an upright posture and support the motion. In your upper legs, the **hip flexors** and the **adductor magnus** also engage to support your body.



## STAGE TWO

Relax your foot, allowing it to return to the starting position. Repeat stages 1 and 2.

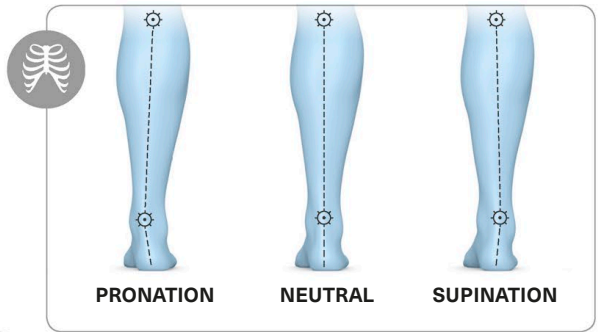


### Foot

The **intrinsic muscles** of the foot shorten under tension as you draw the base of your big toe towards your heel. This concentric action strengthens and stabilizes the arch.

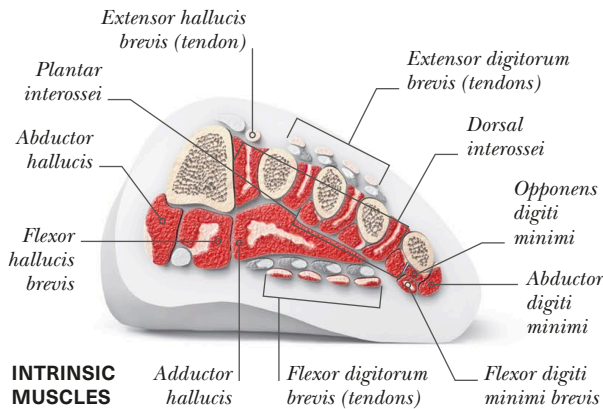
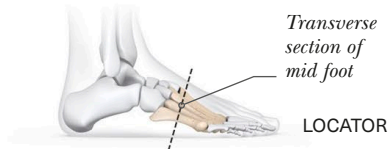
## » CLOSER LOOK

The foot is an incredibly complex structure that can act as both a spring and a shock absorber during running (see pp.18–19). As a runner it is well worth taking the time to understand its anatomy (see pp.22–23) and to strengthen its structures with targeted exercises like Foot Doming.

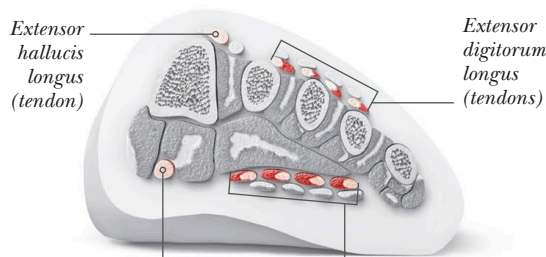


### Subtalar neutral

When the foot is midway between pronation and supination, it is in a neutral position, referred to as “subtalar neutral” because the ankle (subtalar) joint is aligned in its neutral zone. The talus stacks squarely on the calcaneus, allowing the tibia and fibula to sit squarely on top without any rotation at the ankle joint in the frontal plane. The knee should then be directly over the ankle if sitting. Aim for this position at the start of the exercise so you begin with the muscles in a mid-range position.



**INTRINSIC MUSCLES**



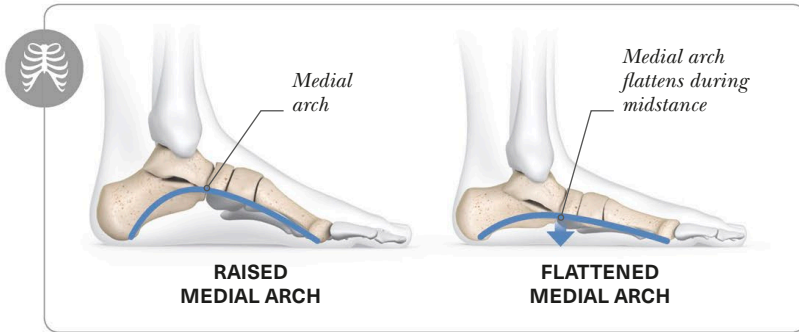
**EXTRINSIC MUSCLES**



### Intrinsic and extrinsic foot muscles

Foot doming strengthens both the intrinsic and extrinsic muscles of the foot. The extrinsic muscles originate from outside the foot, specifically the anterior, posterior, and lateral lower leg. They enable inversion, eversion, plantarflexion, and dorsiflexion of the ankle. The intrinsic muscles are located within the foot and are primarily responsible for stabilizing the foot and arch.

### STAGE ONE | ANTERIOR-MEDIAL VIEW



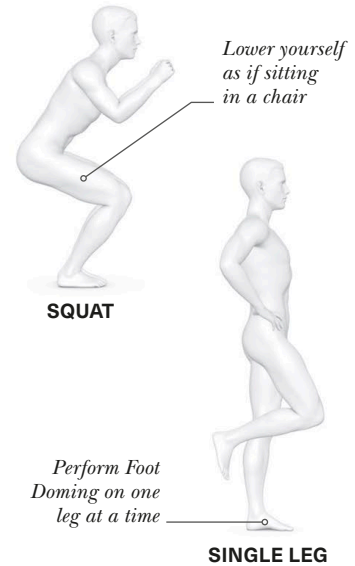
### Medial arch: the shock absorber

As the arch collapses in the midstance phase of running (see p.67), the medial longitudinal arch flattens and elongates. This acts as a shock-absorption mechanism, as the plantar fascia and intrinsic foot muscles generate tension to slow down this collapse and absorb energy from the weight of the body. The energy is then used to assist in propulsion as the foot resupinates and pushes off the ground. The foot provides up to 17 per cent of the energy required to power a stride.

### FOOT DOMING PROGRESSIONS

#### Dynamic Foot Doming

Progressions for this exercise (see p.100) involve increasing the amount of weight passing through the arch, adding movement, and mimicking the actions of running by using single-leg versions. Add weight to your upper body by holding dumbbells, increasing the weight over time.



*Relax your toes – do not curl them as your muscles engage*

*Relaxing your intrinsic muscles allows your arch to drop*

### STAGE TWO | ANTERIOR-MEDIAL VIEW

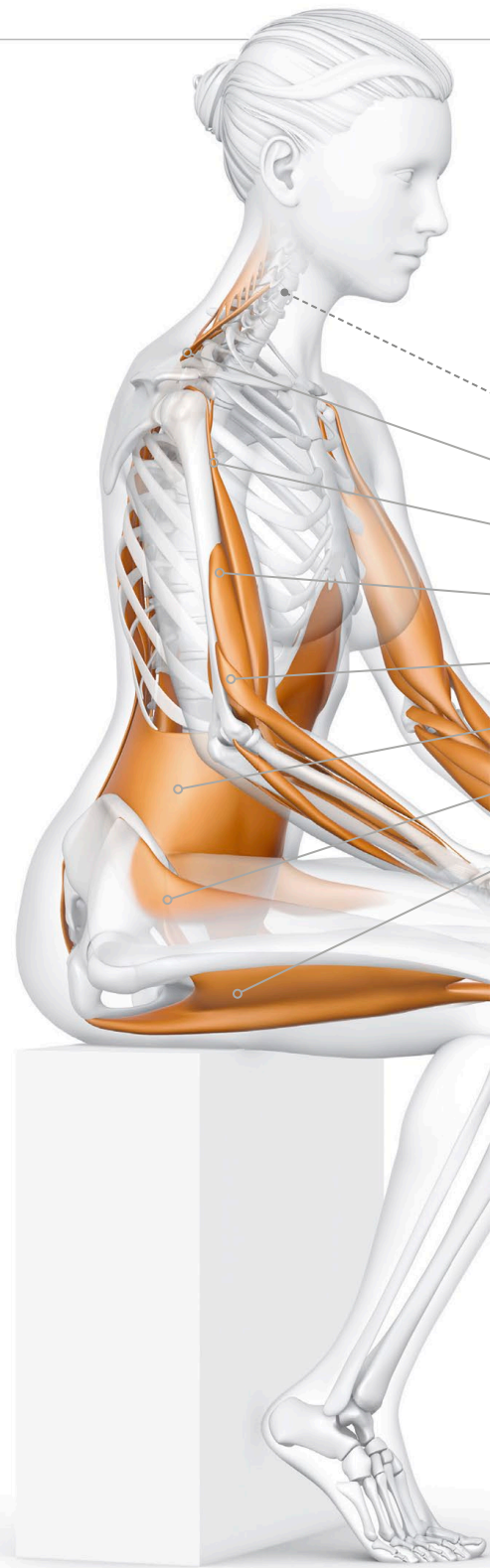
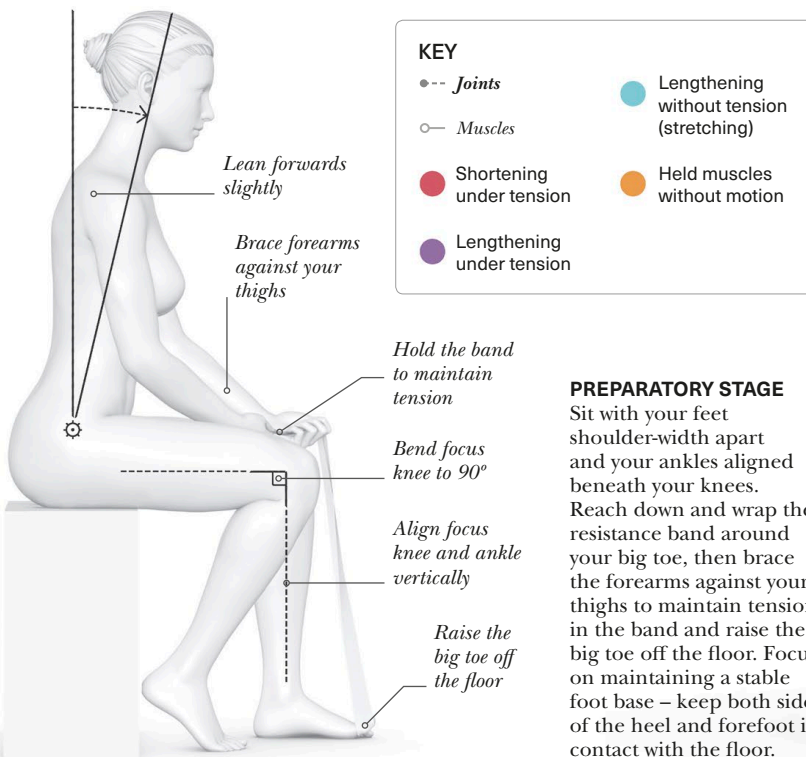
# RESISTED TOE

**Strong intrinsic muscles** (see p.102) allow the foot to alternate between rigidity and flexibility, providing a stable foundation throughout the running cycle (see pp.66–69). This exercise strengthens the intrinsic muscles of the foot as well as the extrinsic muscles and tendons supporting the medial and lateral longitudinal arches (see p.106).

## THE BIG PICTURE

You will need a resistance band to perform this exercise. Keep both feet planted on the floor throughout, or if you find it more comfortable, draw back the non-focus foot to rest on its toes.

If new to this exercise, perform 3–4 sets of 10–12 repetitions. To advance, first increase the resistance (see p.99), then work through the following progressions to perform the exercise: while standing; while standing on one leg.





### STAGE ONE

Pushing down against the resistance of the band, slowly lower the big toe to the floor in a smooth, controlled movement. Hold for 3 seconds.

#### Upper body

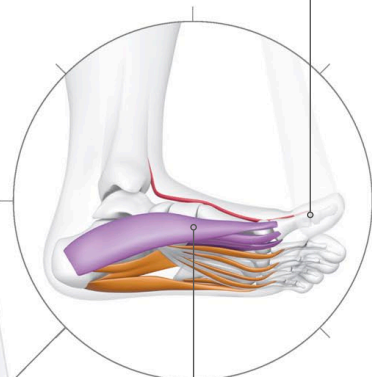
The muscles of the **torso** keep you upright by maintaining a stable isometric contraction, as do the **arm muscles**, which brace against the resistance of the band.

- Spinal extensors
- Spine**
- Biceps
- Brachialis
- Brachioradialis
- Transversus abdominis
- Tensor fascia latae
- Adductor magnus
- Flexor d. superficialis
- Knee**

### STAGE TWO

Raise the big toe back to the starting position in a slow, controlled movement. Repeat stages 1 and 2.

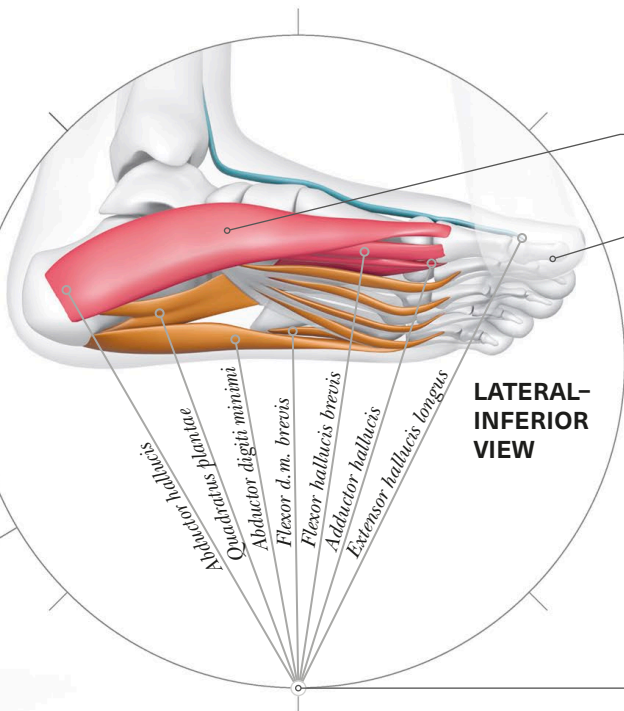
Raise the big toe



Intrinsics engage eccentrically to control the movement

Intrinsic foot muscles engage concentrically

Big toe descends against the band's tension



#### LATERAL-INFERIOR VIEW

- Adductor hallucis
- Abductor hallucis
- Quadratus plantae
- Abductor digiti minimi
- Flexor d. m. brevis
- Flexor hallucis brevis
- Adductor hallucis
- Extensor hallucis longus

#### Foot

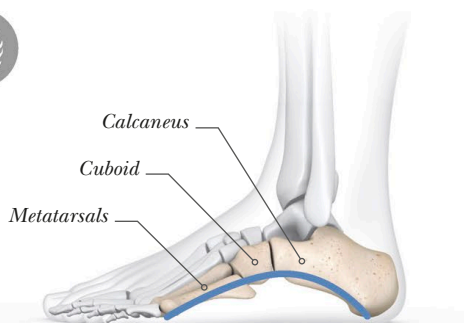
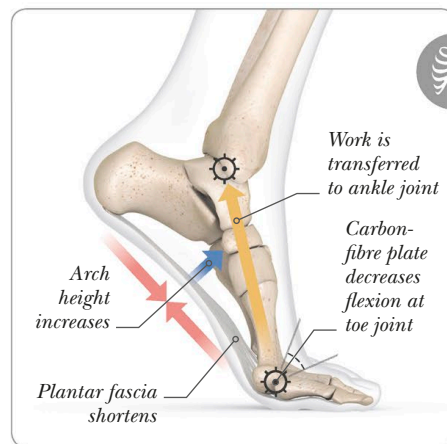
Try to isolate the **flexor hallucis brevis**, **abductor hallucis**, and **adductor hallucis**, which shorten as they engage to hold the band to the floor. An efficient big toe joint activates the windlass mechanism (see p.111) to raise the medial arch, helping to stabilize the foot during stance phase (see pp.66–68) and assist with propulsion during toe-off.

## » CLOSER LOOK

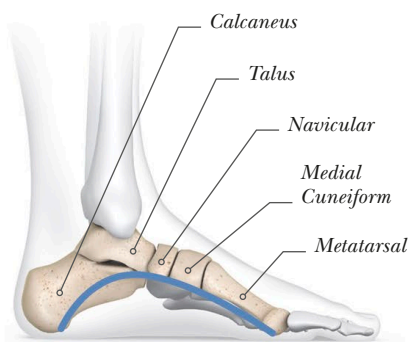
The toes are vital structures in themselves. The muscles that control them contribute to the overall power-generation and shock-absorption capacity of the foot. Strengthening the individual muscles of the toes through exercises like Resisted Toe and its variations will give you a more stable and powerful base for running.

### Big-toe energy loss

During the push-off phase in running, the big-toe joint bends, resulting in lost energy. The windlass mechanism (see p.111) limits this bending by resisting the movement. Some recent shoe designs include a carbon-fibre plate to reduce bending and instead transfer work to the ankle. While this has positive implications for performance, it increases stress elsewhere, possibly increasing risk of injury.



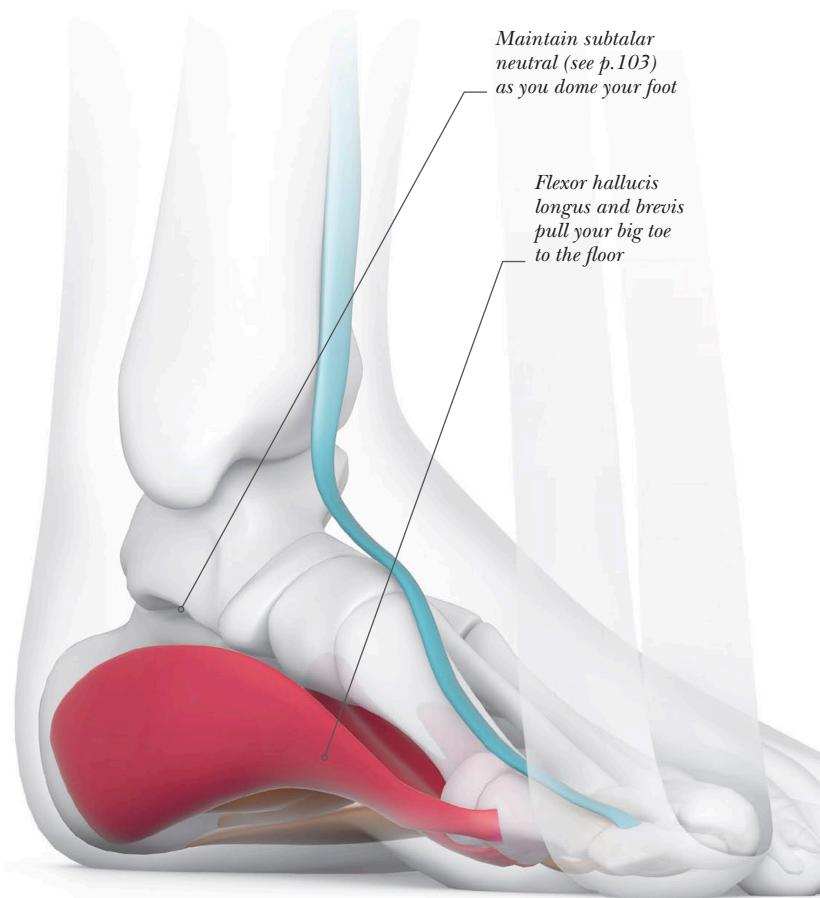
LATERAL ARCH



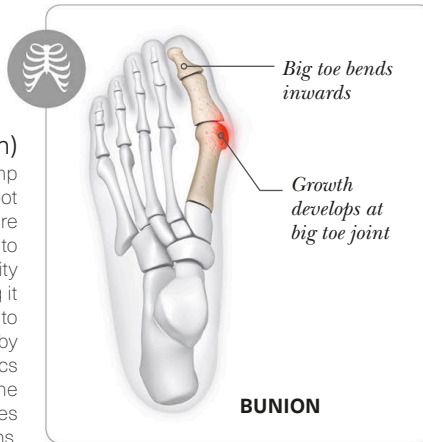
MEDIAL ARCH

### Strengthening the arches

The two longitudinal arches of the foot are composed of different sets of bones and are supported by different muscles (see p.22). Depending on which variation of the exercise you perform (see opposite), you strengthen either the medial arch (by exercising the big toe), the lateral arch (by working the fifth toe), or both (by working any of the other toes).



STAGE ONE | ANTERIOR-MEDIAL VIEW



### Hallux valgus (bunion)

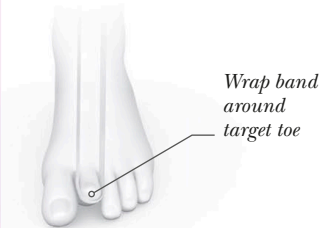
A bunion is a painful bony bump that develops on the medial foot at the big-toe joint, as pressure on the joint causes the big toe to bend inwards. This deformity gradually increases, making it painful to wear certain shoes or to run. Bunions may be caused by narrow shoes or biomechanics (abducted feet). Strengthening the feet with targeted foot exercises may help prevent and treat bunions.



### RESISTED TOE VARIATIONS

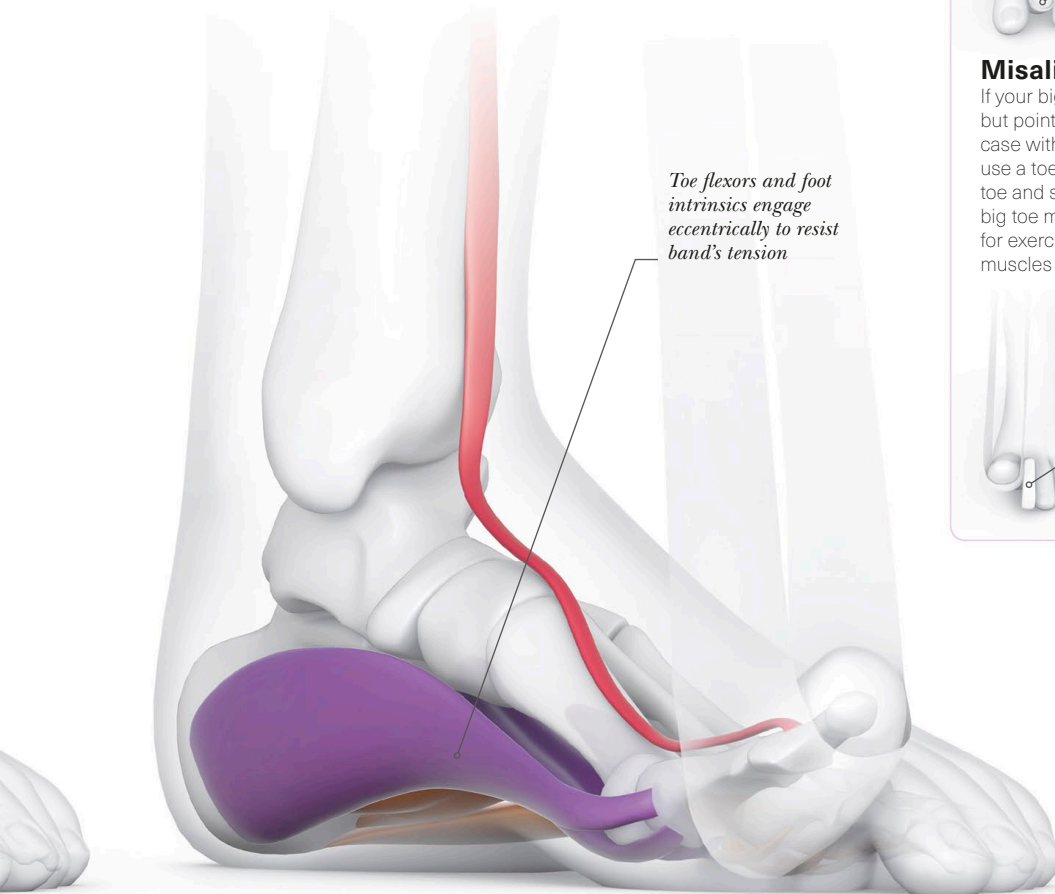
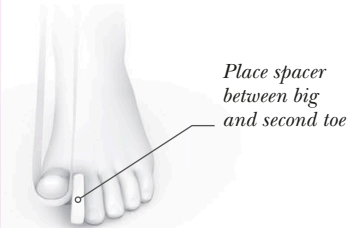
#### Individual toes

Repeat the exercise with toes 2–5 to strengthen different intrinsic foot muscles. For example, when carried out with the second toe (shown below), the flexor digitorum brevis, lumbricals, and quadratus plantae are activated. When performed with the fifth toe, the abductor digiti minimi is activated, which strengthens the lateral longitudinal arch.



#### Misaligned big toe

If your big toe does not align neutrally, but points inwards (as may be the case with a bunion, see above left), use a toe spacer between your big toe and second toe. This brings the big toe muscles to the optimal length for exercising, and strengthening the muscles may improve alignment.



# HEEL DROP

The **plantar flexor muscles** and **Achilles tendon** absorb considerable impact forces during the loading phase of the running cycle, and also generate powerful propulsion forces for toe-off (see pp.18–19). Heel Drop strengthens this muscle group.

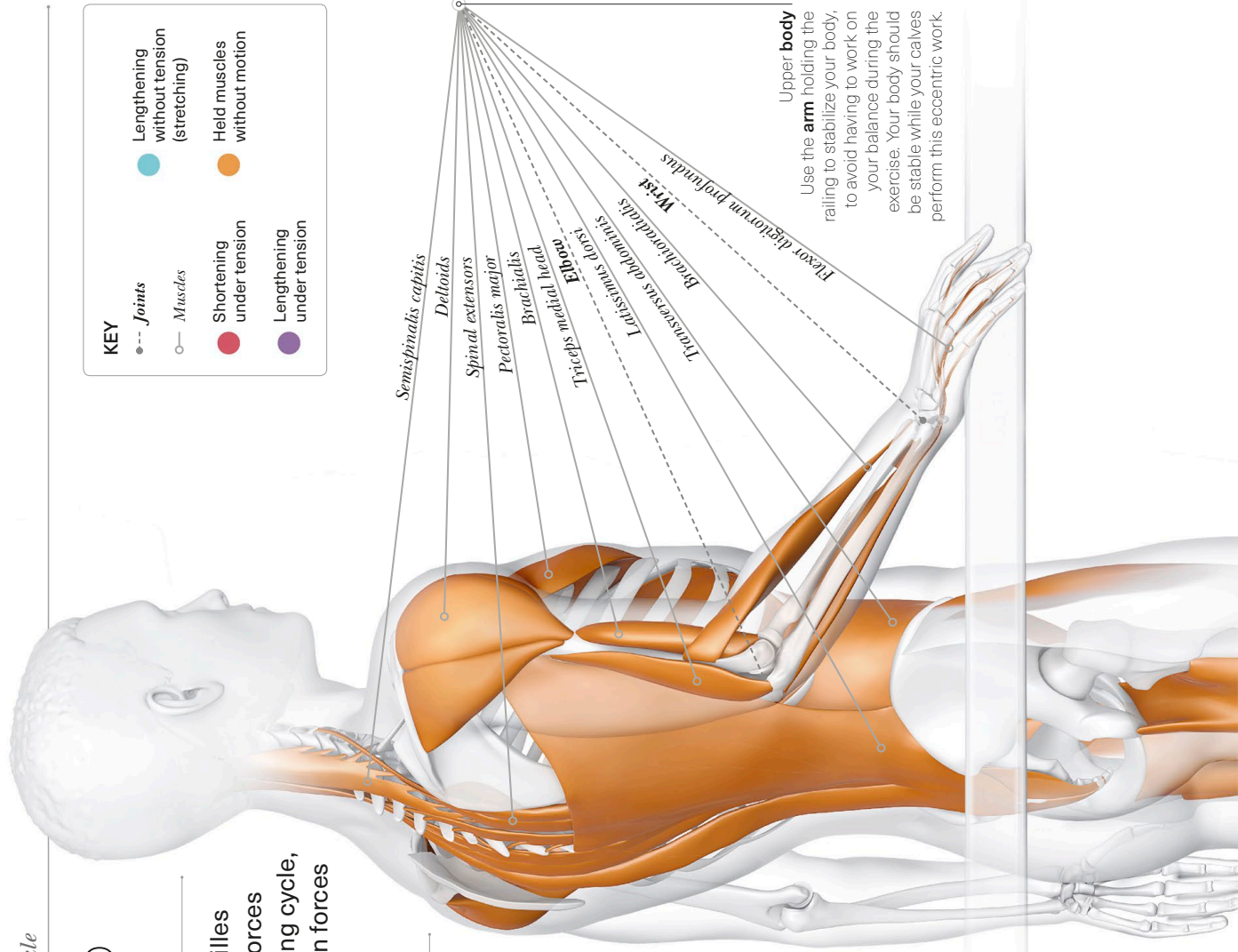
## THE BIG PICTURE

You will need a low exercise step (see p.99) for Heel Drop, or use the bottom step of a staircase. During the exercise, your forefeet should remain in contact with the step from the ball of the foot to the tips of the toes only. Hold on to the back of a chair or a stair railing for support. Focus on the calves and Achilles tendon as you raise and drop the heels.

If new to the exercise, perform 3 sets of 10–12 repetitions. To progress, work through the following progressions: add weights (see p.99) and reduce to 3–4 sets of 6–8 repetitions; practise on one leg; increase the speed of the movement.

### Caution

If you have a history of insertional Achilles pain or bursitis, perform this exercise on the floor and stop the heel drop at the neutral (flat feet) position, to avoid taking the ankles into dorsiflexion.



Upper **body**  
Use the **arm** holding the railing to stabilize your body, to avoid having to work on your balance during the exercise. Your body should be stable while your calves perform this eccentric work.

**Lower legs**  
The **ankle plantar flexors**, including the **gastrocnemius** and **Achilles tendon**, lengthen under tension as they control the speed of the heel's descent. This eccentric action builds strength through the calf and Achilles complex, the energy storage-and-return mechanism at work during the stance phase.

Maintain an upright posture

Hold a railing for support

Keep the knees straight

Forefeet are planted firmly on the step

Adductor magnus  
Knee  
Tibialis anterior  
Gastrocnemius  
Soleus  
Peroneus longus  
Extensor digitorum longus  
Ankle  
Flexor hallucis longus  
Abductor digiti minimi

Raise the heels as high as you can

### PREPARATORY STAGE

Stand with the balls of your feet on the step, feet just less than hip-width apart. Ensure your weight is distributed evenly across the forefeet. Keep ankles neutral and feet parallel to the floor. Now raise your heels as high as possible.

### STAGE ONE

Slowly (taking 3 seconds), drop your heels down as far as they will go in a smooth, controlled movement.

### STAGE TWO

As soon as your heels reach their lowest point, immediately raise them again. Using a slow, controlled movement (taking 3 seconds), return them to their topmost position. Hold at the top for 2 seconds. Repeat stages 1 and 2.

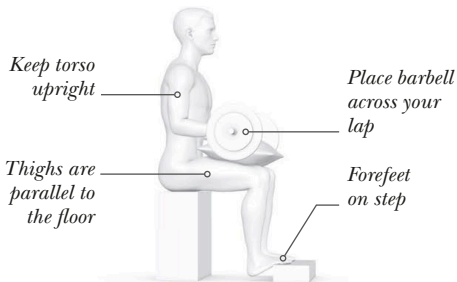
## » CLOSER LOOK

Heel Drop and its variations activate the calf, Achilles, and plantar fascia. If you invest time in strengthening any one area of the body, make it this group of muscles, which contributes roughly half the work required for each step. Included here are variations of the Heel Drop exercise that work the soleus muscle and the plantar fascia.

### HEEL DROP VARIATION

#### Seated Heel Drop

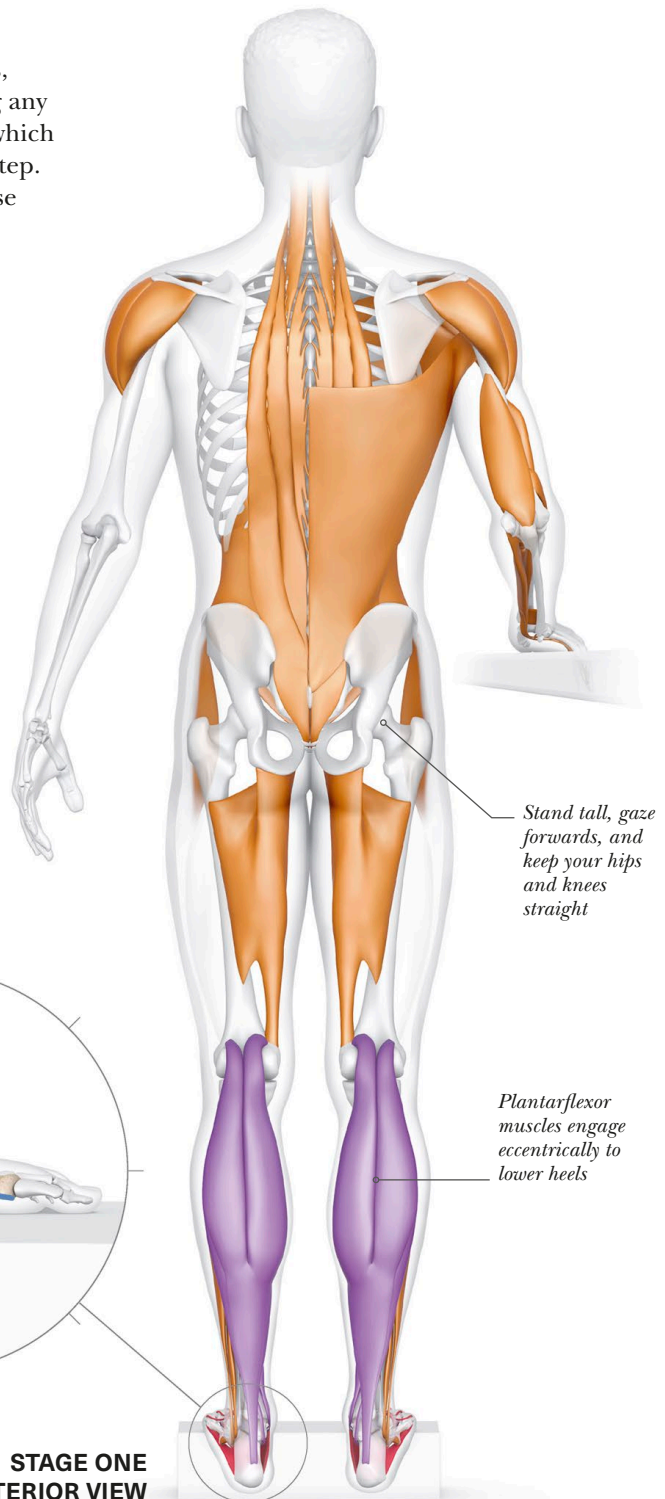
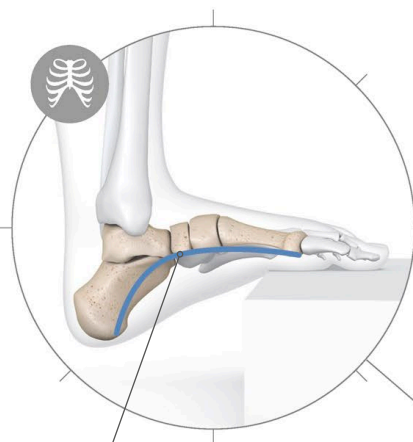
This version of Heel Drop works the soleus, which bears loads of up to eight times body weight during running. Place your forefeet on the step, bend your knees to 90°, then lay a cushion on your lap with a weighted barbell on top. Now lower and raise the heels as in the main exercise, ending the drop stage when your heels touch the floor or reach their lowest point. Perform 3 sets of 10–12 reps. To progress, add weight (see p.99) and reduce to 3–4 sets of 6–8 reps.

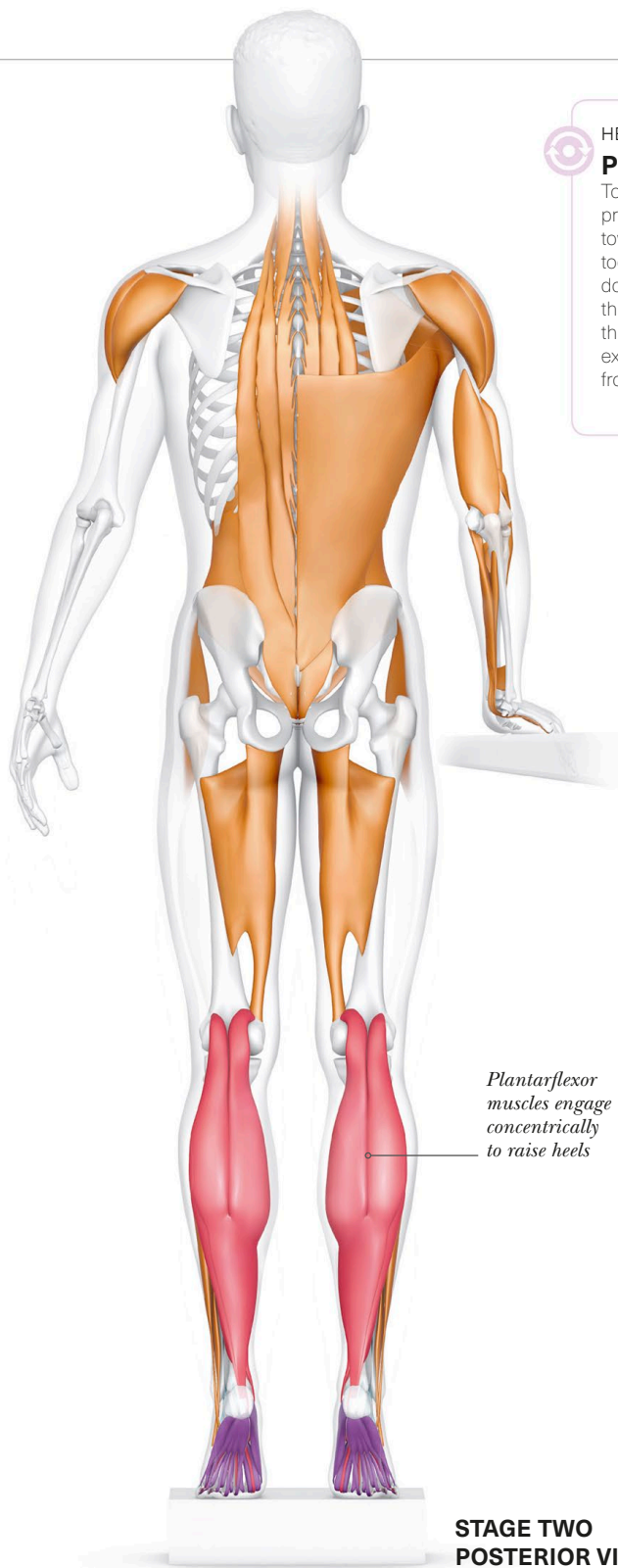


#### Shape of the arch

During the exercise, try to maintain a subtalar neutral ankle position (see p.103) and an engaged medial longitudinal arch (see p.106) as you raise and lower the heels. This activates both the intrinsic and extrinsic foot muscles (see p.102). Avoid allowing the ankle to roll in and collapse the arch.

*Engage medial arch as you raise and lower heels*





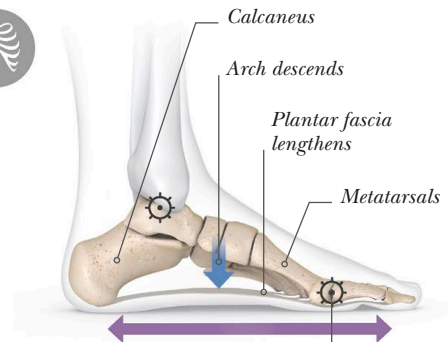
**STAGE TWO  
POSTERIOR VIEW**



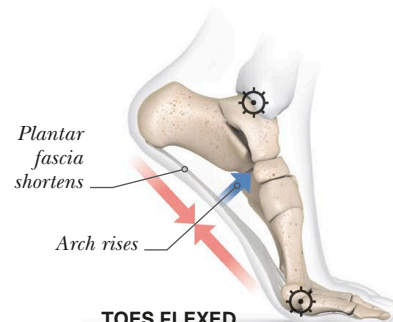
**HEEL DROP VARIATION**

**Plantar fascia activation**

To strengthen the plantar fascia, practise Heel Drop with a rolled-up towel positioned under your toes, so that they are maximally dorsiflexed when the feet are at the top of the heel raise. Perform this variation in addition to the main exercise to prevent or rehabilitate from plantar heel pain.



**TOES NEUTRAL**



**Windlass mechanism**

The windlass mechanism describes the shortening of the longitudinal arch that results from toe dorsiflexion. The plantar fascia acts like a cable attached to the calcaneus at one end and the metatarsophalangeal joints at the other.

Dorsiflexion of the toe during the propulsive phase of the running cycle (see p.68) winds the plantar fascia around the head of the metatarsal.

This winding of the plantar fascia shortens the distance between the calcaneus and metatarsals to elevate the medial longitudinal arch.

# ANKLE TURN OUT

This exercise strengthens the lateral stabilizers of the lower leg – the ankle evertors. During the main stage, as the ankle is inverting, the evertors engage, working against the band's tension to resist the ankle turning in, so that the movement is smooth and controlled.

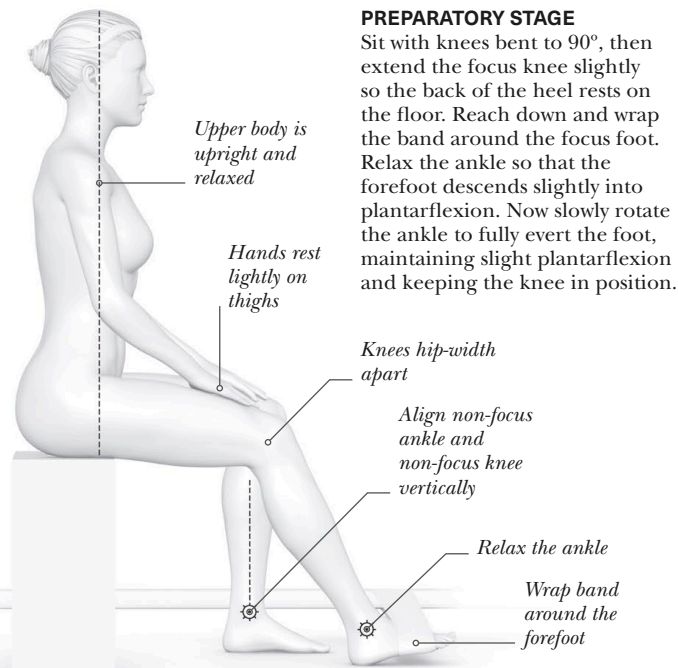
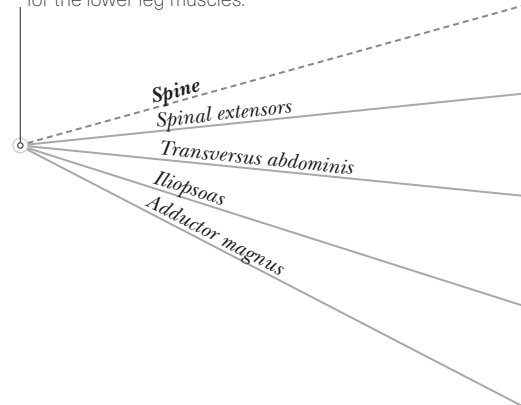
## THE BIG PICTURE

You will need a resistance band for this exercise. Secure it at ankle height and position your chair so the band approaches the focus foot medially. It should be taut enough to work the ankle evertors during stage 1. During the exercise, isolate the movement to the ankle – do not allow the leg to roll in or out.

If new to this exercise, perform 3 sets of 15–20 reps on each side with light resistance. To progress, increase the resistance (see p.99) and reduce to 3–4 sets of 6–8 reps.

### Core

Engage your **transversus abdominus** to maintain a neutral and stable spine. The **iliopsoas** and **adductor muscles** stabilize the hip to maintain a firm anchor for the lower leg muscles.

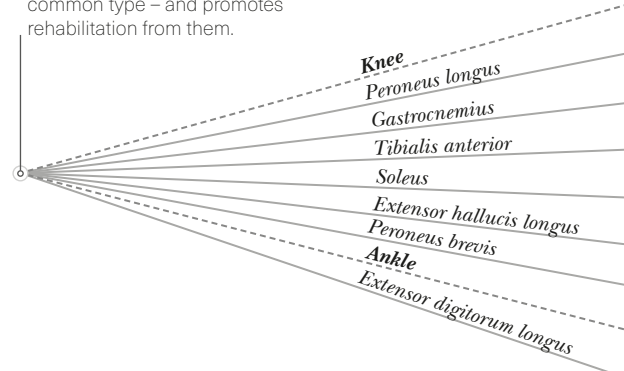


### PREPARATORY STAGE

Sit with knees bent to 90°, then extend the focus knee slightly so the back of the heel rests on the floor. Reach down and wrap the band around the focus foot. Relax the ankle so that the forefoot descends slightly into plantarflexion. Now slowly rotate the ankle to fully evert the foot, maintaining slight plantarflexion and keeping the knee in position.

### Lower leg

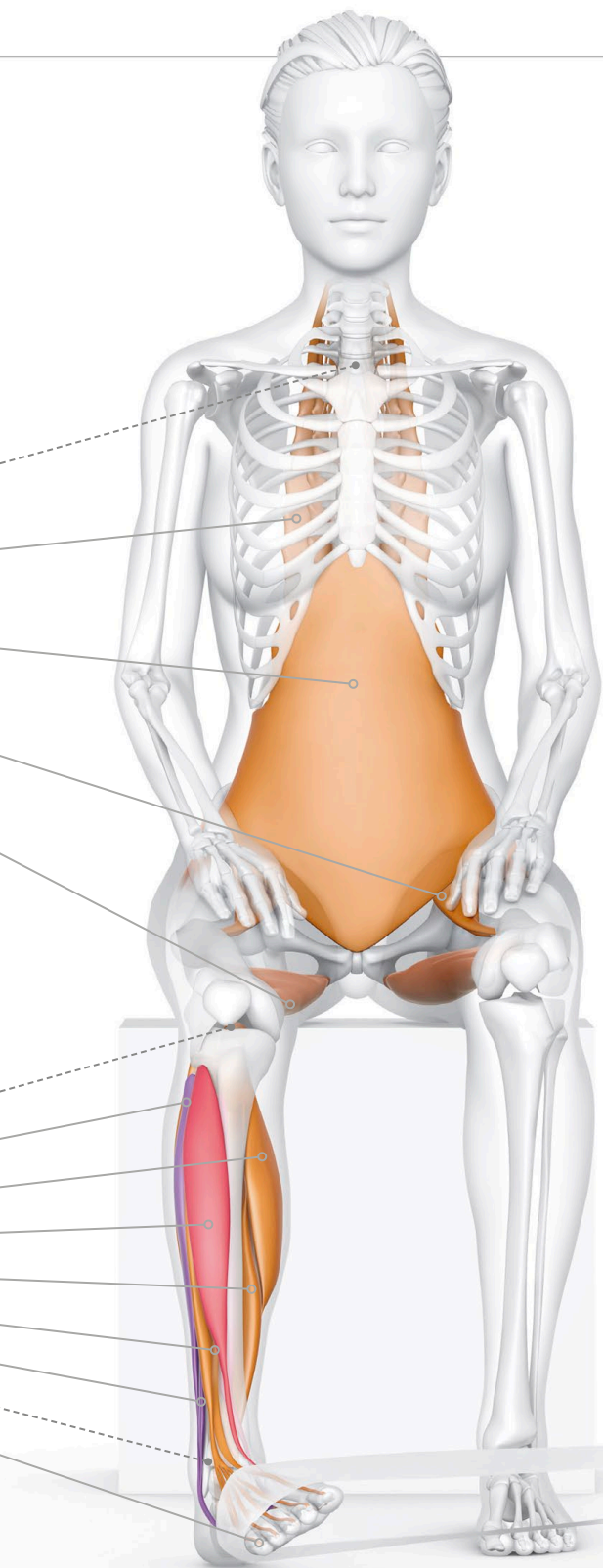
The **peroneus longus** and **peroneus brevis** work eccentrically, lengthening as they slow down the inversion of the foot. Strong **ankle evertors** stabilize the lateral ankle, which helps to prevent ankle inversion sprains – the most common type – and promotes rehabilitation from them.



### STAGE ONE

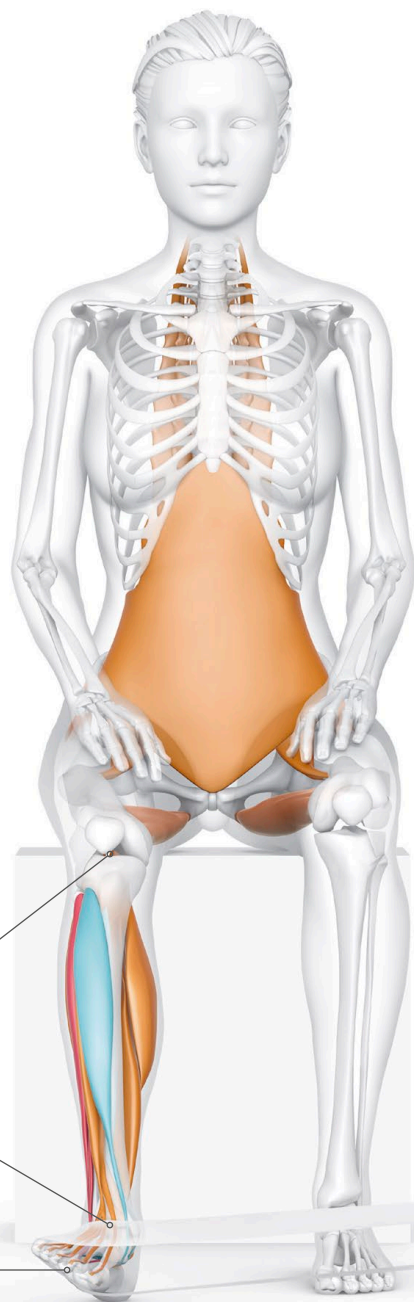
Slowly (over 3 seconds) rotate your ankle to bring your foot into full inversion. Use a slow, controlled scooping motion, keeping the foot close to the floor.





**KEY**

- Joints
- Muscles
- Shortening under tension
- Lengthening under tension
- Lengthening without tension (stretching)
- Held muscles without motion



*Keep knee still while the ankle rotates*

*Rotate at the ankle*

*Move foot in a scooping motion*

**STAGE TWO**

Take 2 seconds to return the foot into eversion in a smooth scooping motion. Repeat stages 1 and 2.

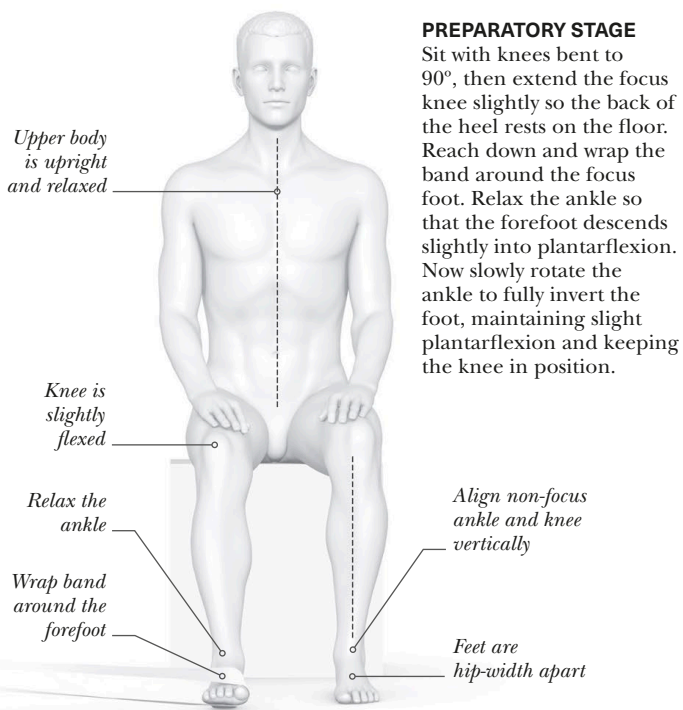
# ANKLE TURN IN

This exercise strengthens the medial stabilizers of the lower leg – the ankle invertors. During the main stage, as the ankle is everting, the invertors engage, working against the band's tension to resist the ankle turning out, so that the movement is smooth and controlled.

## THE BIG PICTURE

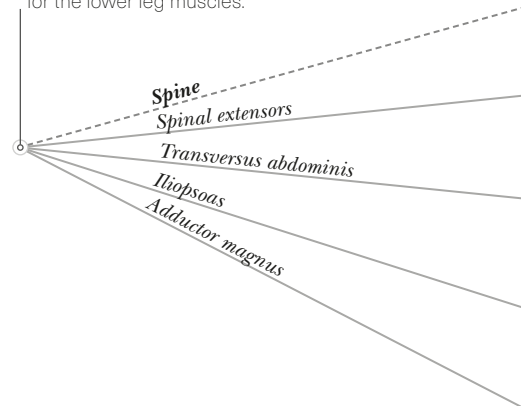
You will need a resistance band for this exercise. Secure it at ankle height and position your chair so the band approaches the focus foot laterally. As with Ankle Turn Out (see pp.112–13), keep the movement within the ankle joint – the knee of the focus leg remains still throughout.

If new to this exercise, perform 3 sets of 15–20 reps with light resistance. To progress, increase the resistance (see p.99) and reduce to 3–4 sets of 6–8 reps. Then move on to the progression shown on p.116.



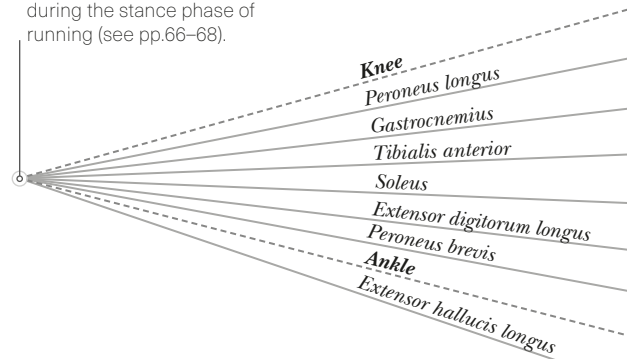
### Core

Engage your **transversus abdominis** to maintain a neutral and stable spine. The **iliopsoas** and **adductor muscles** stabilize the hip to maintain a firm anchor for the lower leg muscles.



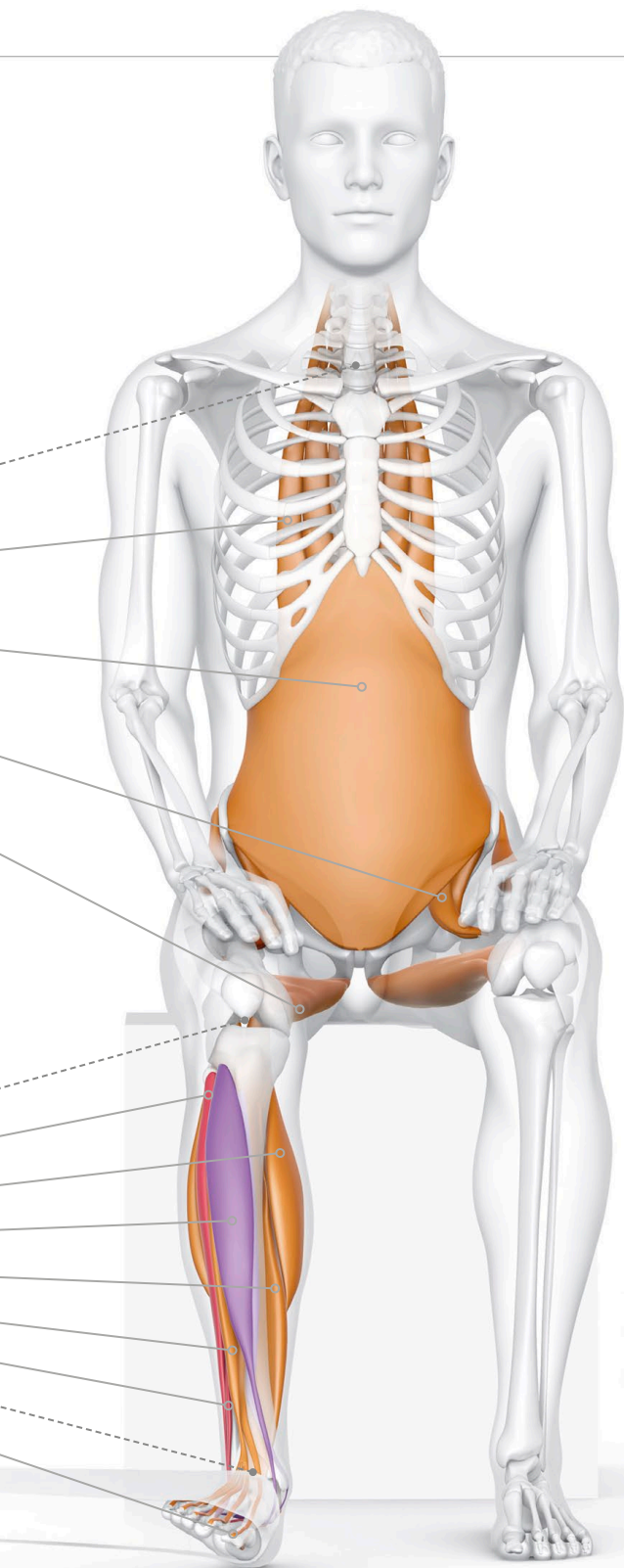
### Lower leg

The **tibialis posterior** works eccentrically, lengthening as it controls the eversion of the foot. This muscle is important for controlling the arch through pronation during the stance phase of running (see pp.66–68).



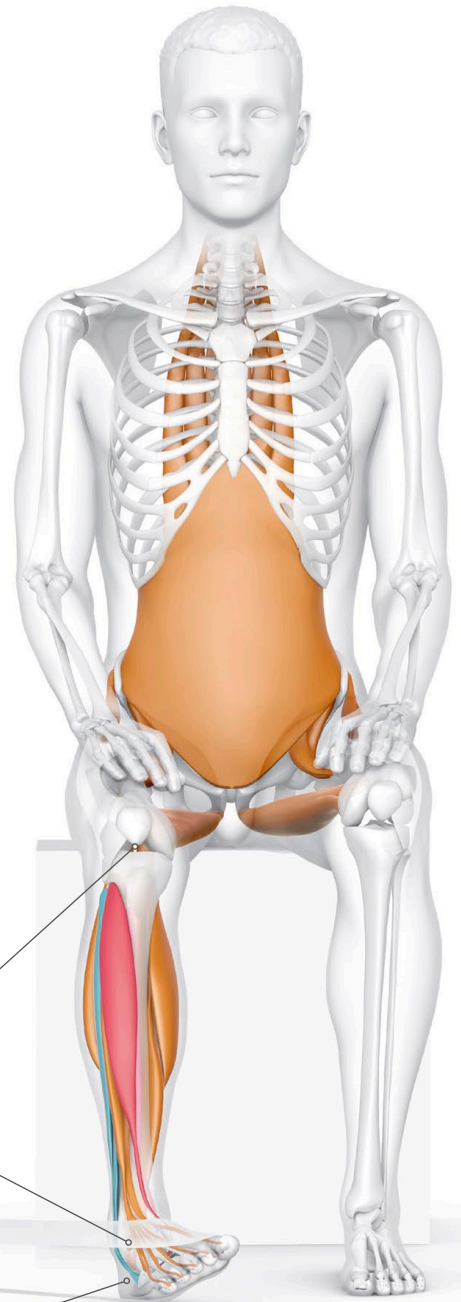
### STAGE ONE

Slowly (over 3 seconds) rotate your ankle to bring your foot into full eversion. Use a slow, controlled scooping motion, keeping the foot close to the floor.



**KEY**

- *Joints*
- *Muscles*
- Shortening under tension
- Lengthening under tension
- Lengthening without tension (stretching)
- Held muscles without motion



*Keep knee still while the ankle rotates*

*Rotate at the ankle*

*Move foot in a scooping motion*

**STAGE TWO**

Take 2 seconds to return the foot in a smooth scooping motion to inversion. Repeat stages 1 and 2.

## » CLOSER LOOK

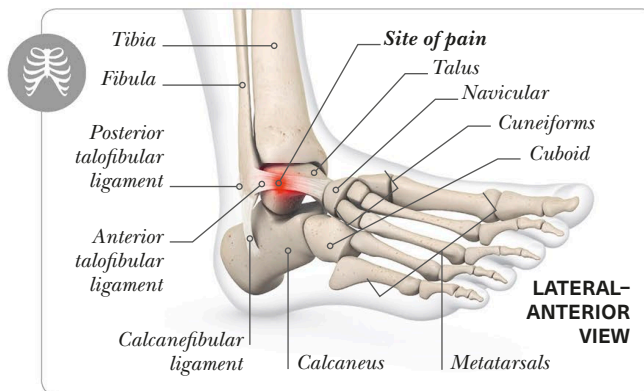
The muscles of the medial and lateral lower leg stabilize your ankle joint when you run across rough terrain. They also support the arch from above, especially during the early loading phase (see pp.66–68). Practise Ankle Turn Out in conjunction with Ankle Turn In to develop all-round strength and stability in your lower limbs.

*Relax tibialis anterior and allow ankle to remain slightly plantarflexed*

*Peroneus longus and brevis engage concentrically to evert ankle*

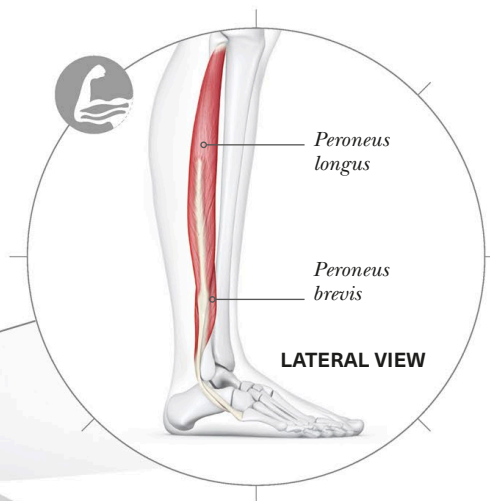
### Muscles that evert the ankle

The ankle evertors help to stabilize the lateral ankle and protect against ankle sprains, which are typically inversion sprains. This is important when running on uneven terrain such as trails and cambered surfaces (see p.51).



### Chronic ankle instability

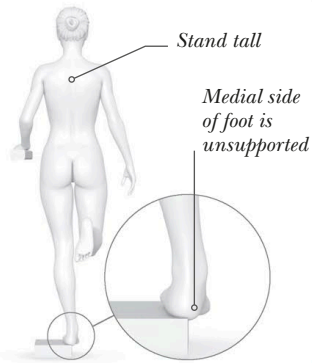
Approximately one in five people with acute ankle sprains go on to develop chronic ankle instability. Following an acute sprain, deficits in balance, strength, and reaction time typically occur. These can result in recurrent sprains if the condition is not rehabilitated appropriately. Some runners also report impingement pain in the anterior ankle joint. Strength training targeting the ankle invertors and evertors may help runners to avoid this recurring condition or recover from it successfully.



## ANKLE TURN OUT VARIATION

**Eccentric Eversion on Step**

Stand on the edge of a step with the medial half of your foot off the step. Raise the other foot, holding a railing for support if necessary. Slowly (over 3 seconds) roll onto the lateral side of your foot so the medial side is higher. Hold for 2 seconds, then slowly (over 3 seconds) evert the ankle so the medial side is lower. Raise the medial side again to complete 1 rep. Perform 3 sets of 10–12 reps on each leg. To progress, hold a dumbbell in the opposite hand and reduce to 3–4 sets of 6–8 reps.

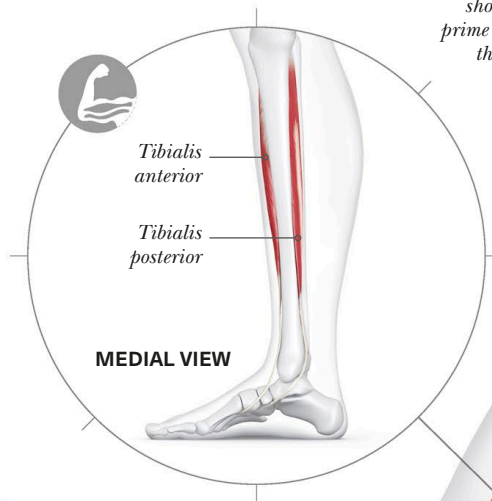


*Do not allow tibialis anterior to dorsiflex your foot; keep ankle slightly plantarflexed*

**Muscles that invert the ankle**

The ankle invertors are extrinsic foot muscles (see p.102) that control arch collapse. The tibialis posterior attaches into the medial longitudinal arch and slows down arch collapse during the stance phase of running (see pp.66–69).

Bearing large loads during running, this muscle is vulnerable to posterior tibial tendon dysfunction. Strength training may help to prevent the condition.



*Tibialis posterior should be the prime mover for this exercise*

# HIP HIKE

**Hip Hike strengthens the hip abductors**, which play an important role in maintaining stability of the pelvis during running. Weak or poorly recruited hip abductors have been linked with a number of running injuries such as iliotibial band pain (see p.61) and patellofemoral pain (see p.57).

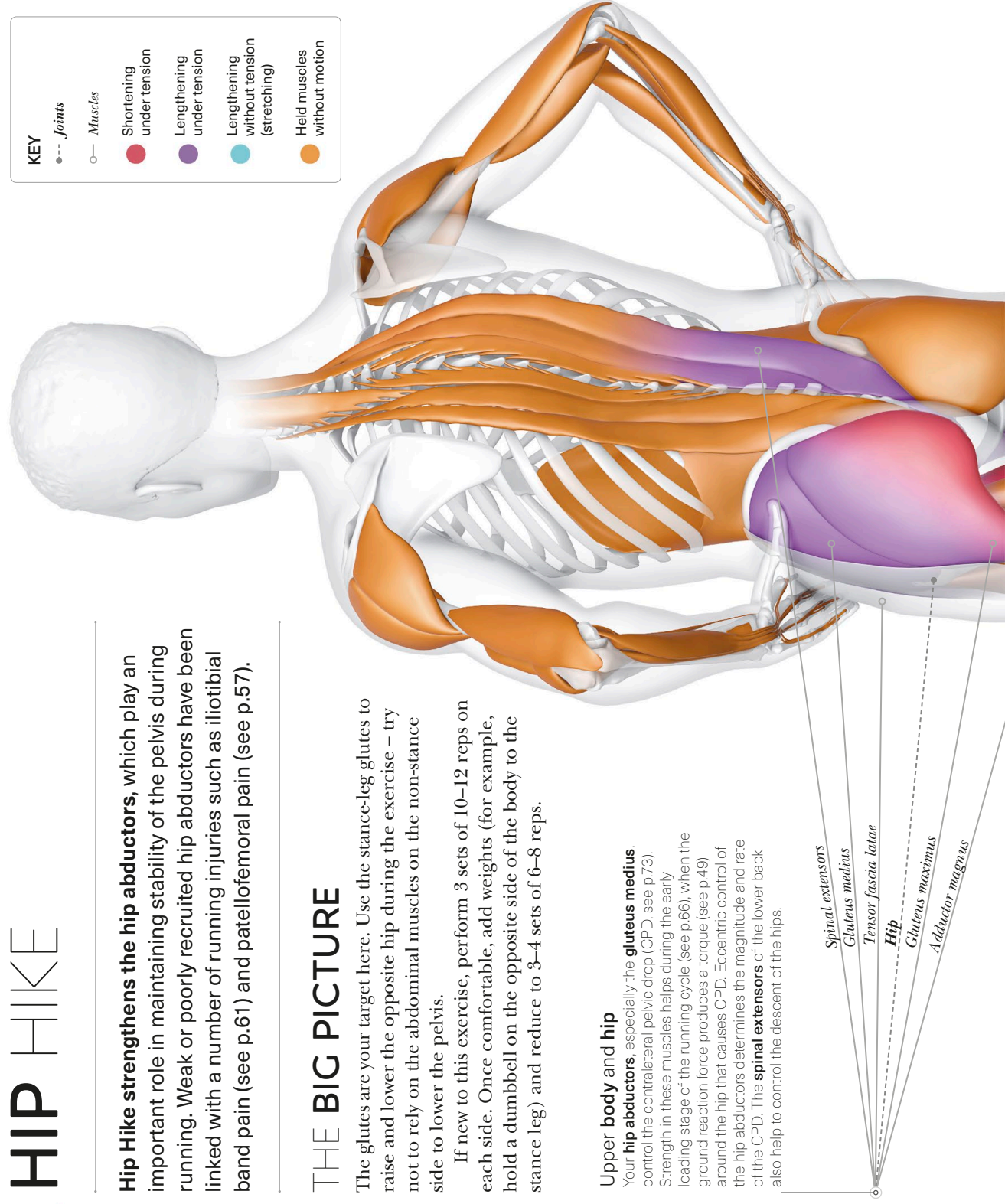
## THE BIG PICTURE

The glutes are your target here. Use the stance-leg glutes to raise and lower the opposite hip during the exercise – try not to rely on the abdominal muscles on the non-stance side to lower the pelvis.

If new to this exercise, perform 3 sets of 10–12 reps on each side. Once comfortable, add weights (for example, hold a dumbbell on the opposite side of the body to the stance leg) and reduce to 3–4 sets of 6–8 reps.

### Upper body and hip

Your **hip abductors**, especially the **gluteus medius**, control the contralateral pelvic drop (CPD, see p.73). Strength in these muscles helps during the early loading stage of the running cycle (see p.66), when the ground reaction force produces a torque (see p.49) around the hip that causes CPD. Eccentric control of the hip abductors determines the magnitude and rate of the CPD. The **spinal extensors** of the lower back also help to control the descent of the hips.



#### KEY

••• Joints

○ Muscles

● Shortening  
under tension

● Lengthening  
under tension

● Lengthening  
without tension  
(stretching)

● Held muscles  
without motion

Spinal extensors

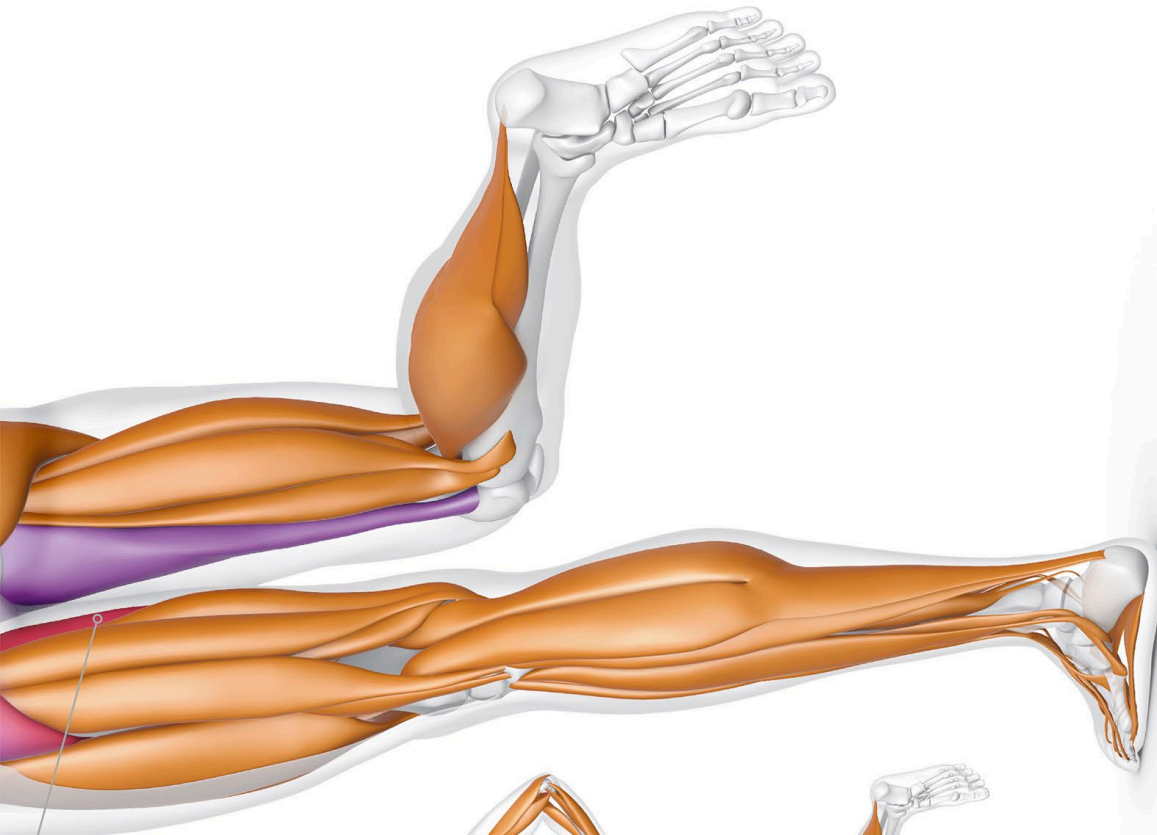
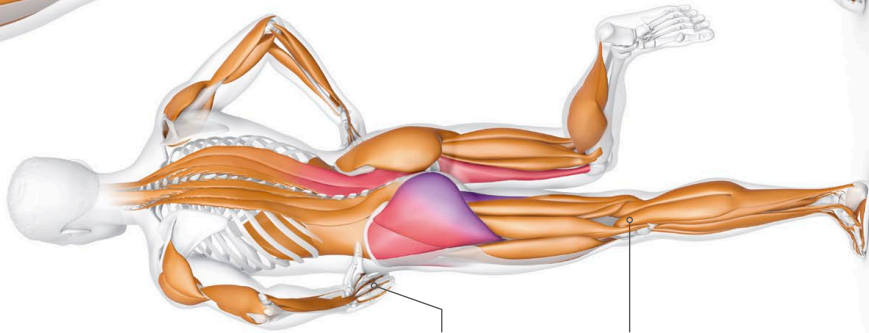
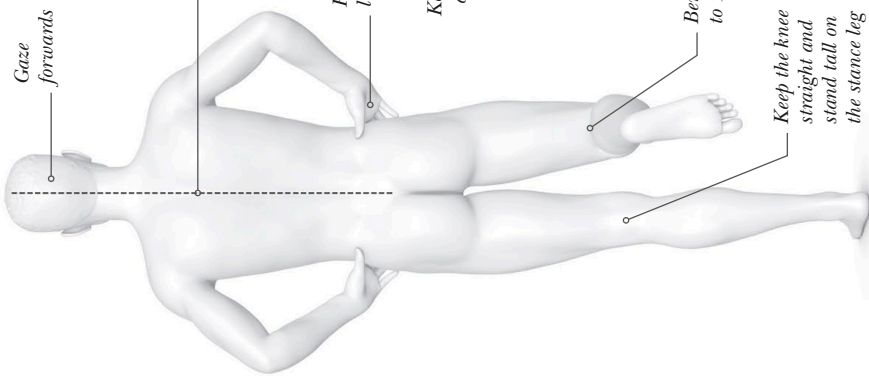
Gluteus medius

Tensor fascia latae

Hip

Gluteus maximus

Adductor magnus



### PREPARATORY STAGE

Stand tall with hands on hips. Keeping the knees aligned, bend one knee to 90° and raise the heel behind you so that the shin is parallel to the floor. Relax the foot. Ensure the hips are level and your weight is evenly distributed across the stance foot.

### STAGE ONE

Slowly (over 3 seconds), raise the non-stance hip, so that the pelvis is lower on the stance side. Hold for 2 seconds.

### STAGE TWO

Slowly (over 3 seconds) lower the raised hip as far as it will go so that it is now higher on the stance side. Repeat stages 1 and 2.

# STEP DOWN

The **quadriceps** and **hip abductors** are among the main muscle groups used in running. One important role they play is to help control knee alignment. Training these muscles with exercises like Step Down increases strength and control, and reduces your risk of injury.

## THE BIG PICTURE

You will need an exercise step that is 10–15cm (4–6in) high for this exercise. Note that the focus leg is the stance leg, not the stepping leg. Ensure it is fully supported on the step – your toes should not extend over the edge. Concentrate on the stance-leg quads and glutes as you bend and straighten the knee. Also, pay attention to the position of the stance knee throughout the exercise; it should not move from side to side. Maintaining its position in the frontal plane (see p.10) is important in this exercise. Do not transfer any weight onto the stepping leg when it reaches the floor. Simply touch down with the heel before you raise the leg again.

If new to this exercise, perform 3 sets of 10–12 reps on each side. To progress, add weight (see p.99) and reduce to 3–4 sets of 6–8 reps. Then move on to Single Leg Hop (see pp.154–55) Box Jump (see pp.150–51).

### KEY

••• Joints

— Muscles

● Lengthening without tension (stretching)

● Shortening under tension

● Lengthening under tension

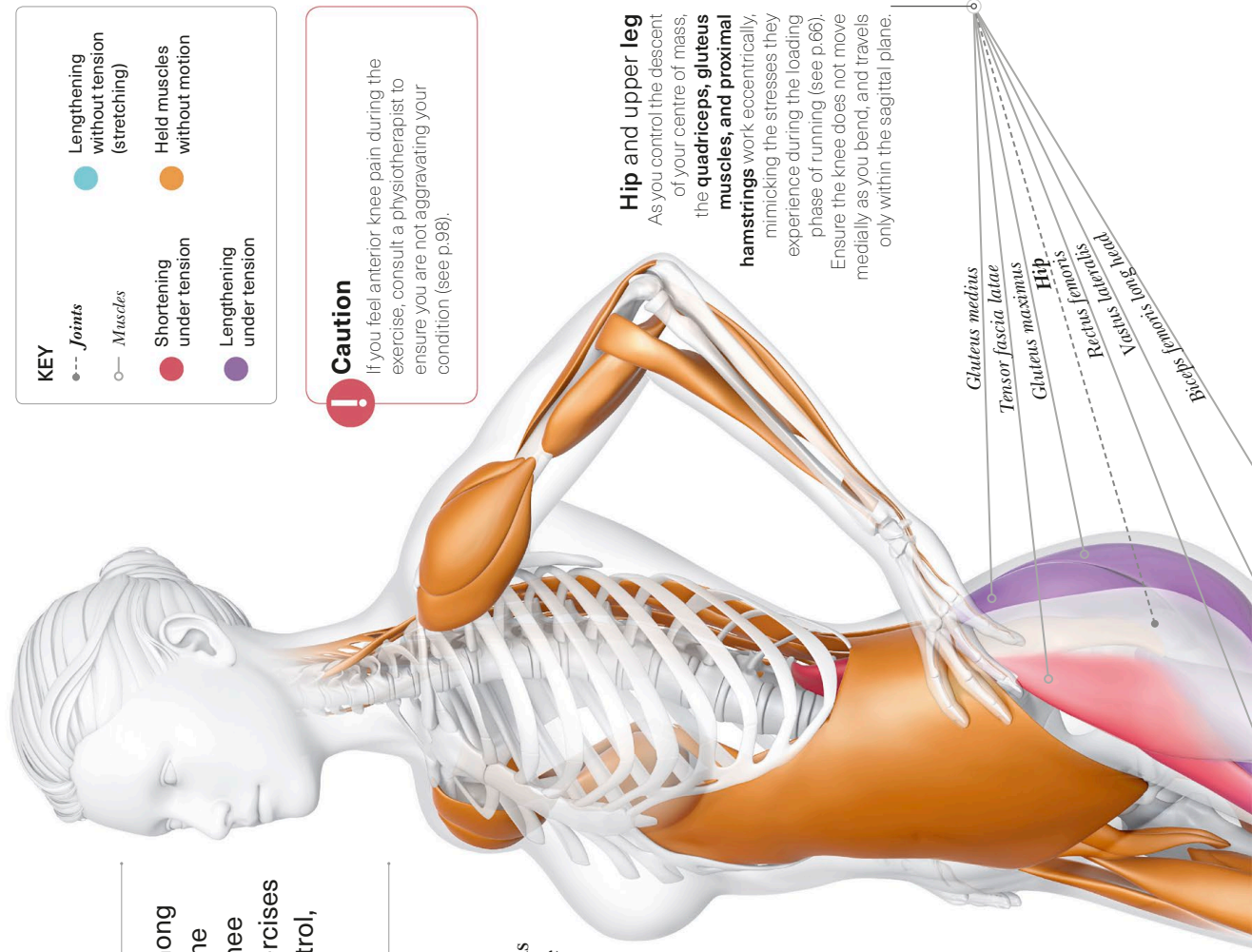
● Held muscles without motion

### Caution

If you feel anterior knee pain during the exercise, consult a physiotherapist to ensure you are not aggravating your condition (see p.98).

### Hip and upper leg

As you control the descent of your centre of mass, the **quadriceps, gluteus muscles, and proximal hamstrings** work eccentrically, mimicking the stresses they experience during the loading phase of running (see p.66). Ensure the knee does not move medially as you bend, and travels only within the sagittal plane.



*Gluteus medius*

*Tensor fascia latae*

*Gluteus maximus*

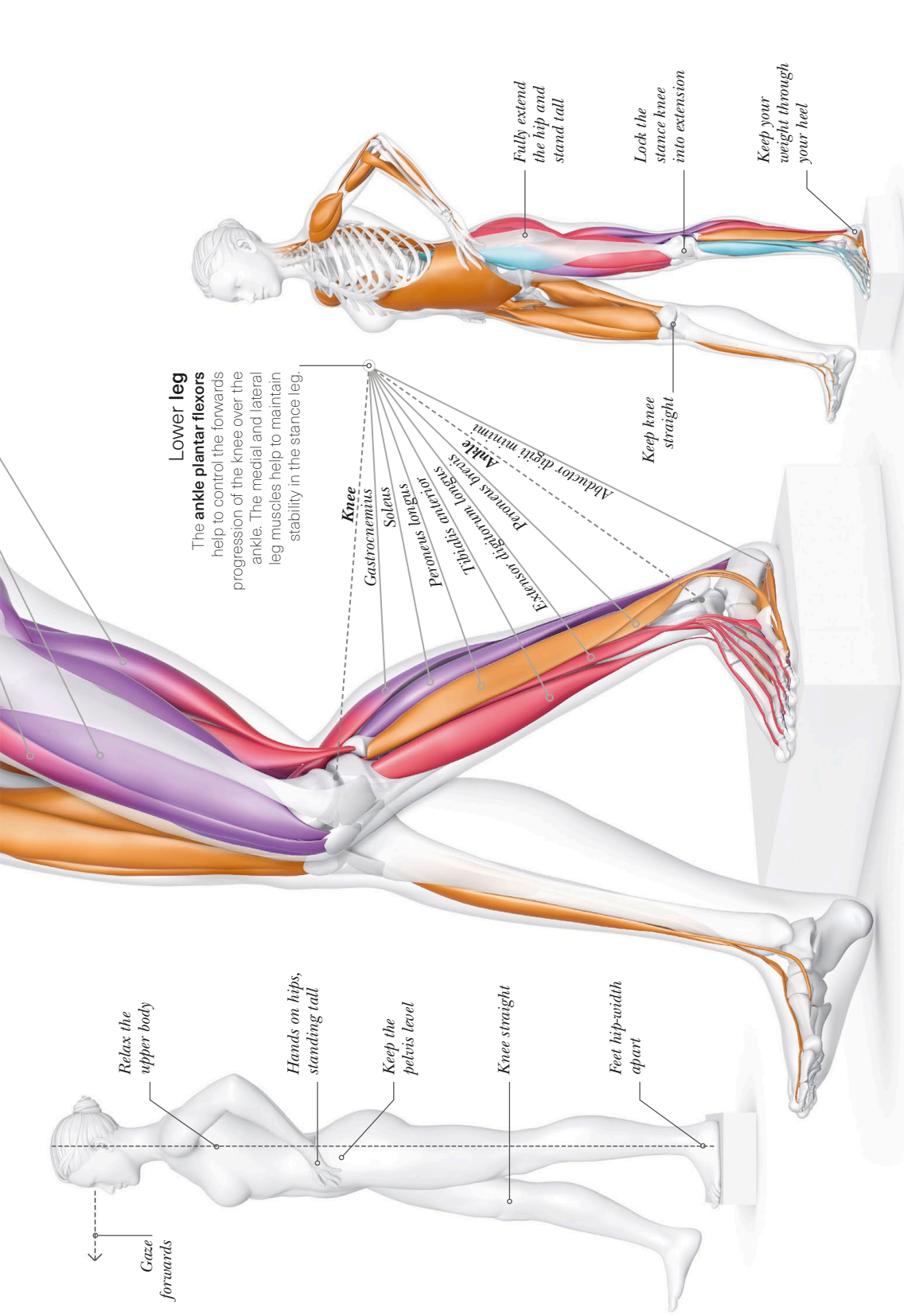
**Hip**

*Rhamstrings femoris*

*Vastus lateralis*

*Biceps femoris long head*





**Lower leg**  
**The ankle plantar flexors** help to control the forwards progression of the knee over the ankle. The medial and lateral leg muscles help to maintain stability in the stance leg.

- Knee
- Gastrocnemius
- Soleus
- Peroneus longus
- Tibialis anterior
- Peroneus tertius
- Extensor digitorum longus
- Abductor digiti minimi
- Ankle

Gaze forwards

Relax the upper body

Hands on hips, standing tall

Keep the pelvis level

Knee straight

Feet hip-width apart

Fully extend the hip and stand tall

Lock the stance knee into extension

Keep your weight through your heel

Keep knee straight

**PREPARATORY STAGE**

Stand tall on the step, hands on hips. Shift your weight into the stance leg. Now reach out in front of you with the non-stance leg as though about to step down. Ensure you keep your hips level.

**STAGE ONE**

Slowly (taking 3 seconds) bend the stance knee to lower the “stepping” foot to the floor, touching it lightly with the heel. Keep the weight through the heel of the stance foot throughout the movement, and your hips level.

**STAGE TWO**

Slowly (taking 3 seconds) straighten the stance leg to return to the starting position. Hold this position for 2 seconds. Repeat stages 1 and 2.

# STEP UP

**This exercise offers a great method of strengthening the quadriceps and glutes – these muscles play an important role during the propulsion stage of running.**

## THE BIG PICTURE

You will need an exercise step at least 30cm (12in) high for Step Up. The focus leg is the one that remains on the step. Ensure it is fully supported on the step and that your toes do not extend over the edge. This exercise involves the coordinated movement of your arms and legs. The arms adopt a running position – as you shift your weight onto the focus leg, raise the opposite arm to the raised leg, as you would if running.

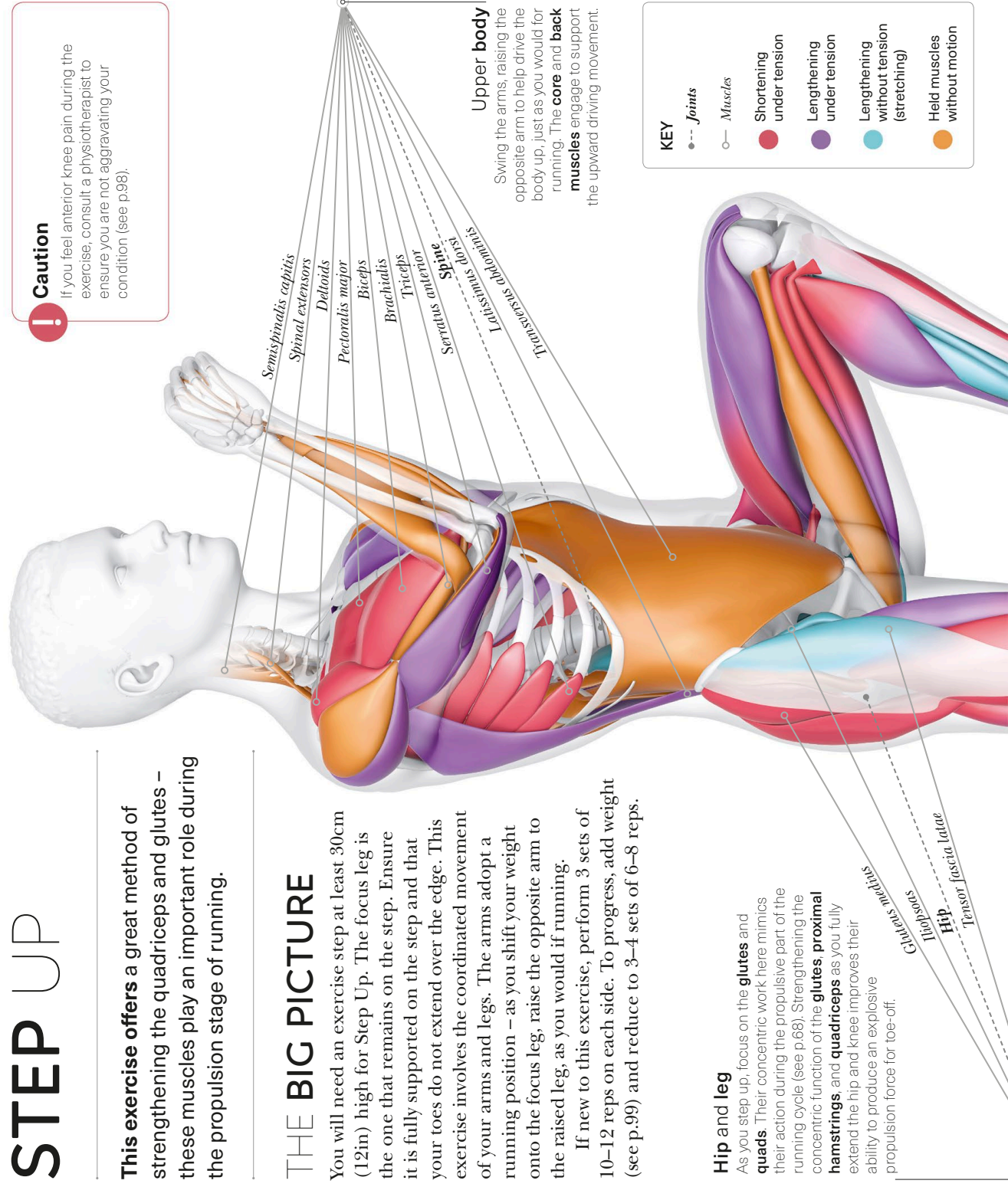
If new to this exercise, perform 3 sets of 10–12 reps on each side. To progress, add weight (see p.99) and reduce to 3–4 sets of 6–8 reps.

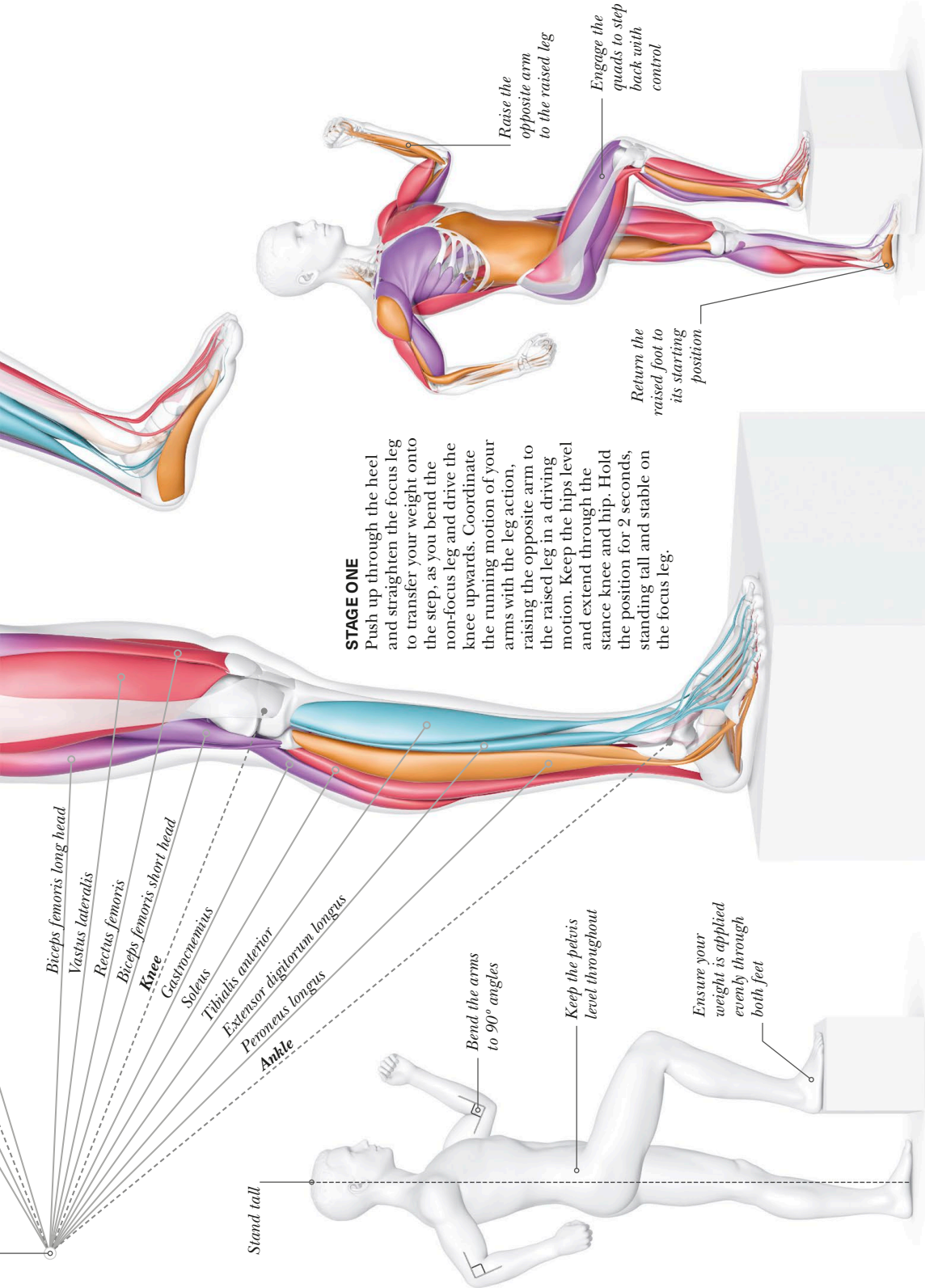
### Hip and leg

As you step up, focus on the **glutes** and **quads**. Their concentric work here mimics their action during the propulsive part of the running cycle (see p.68). Strengthening the concentric function of the **glutes, proximal hamstrings**, and **quadriceps** as you fully extend the hip and knee improves their ability to produce an explosive propulsion force for toe-off.

### Caution

If you feel anterior knee pain during the exercise, consult a physiotherapist to ensure you are not aggravating your condition (see p.98).





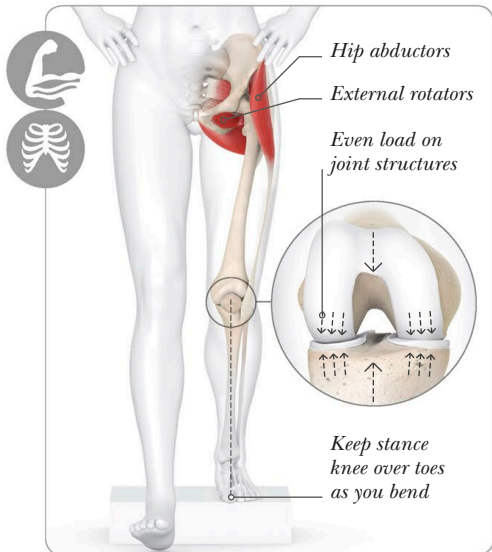
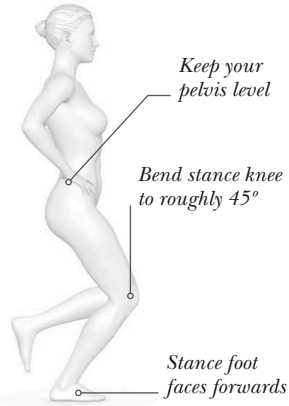
## » CLOSER LOOK

The movements involved in these exercises mimic the early loading (Step Down) and terminal stance (Step Up) phases of running. Learning how to control these movements, and building strength for them, will improve your efficiency as a runner.

### STEP DOWN VARIATION

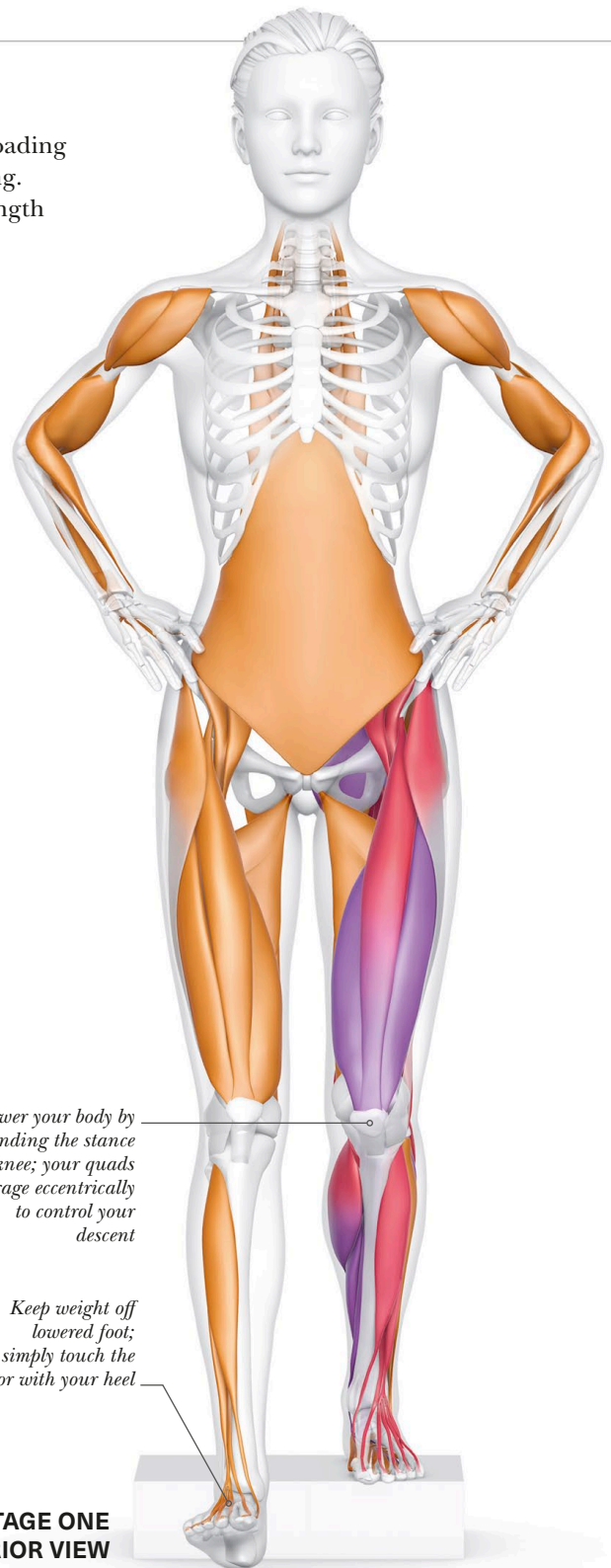
#### Single Leg Squat

This exercise strengthens the glutes, quads, and hip abductors. Stand tall with hands on hips. Raise one foot and bend the knee to 90°, keeping it aligned with the stance knee. Slowly (over 3 seconds) bend the stance knee to lower yourself, then slowly (over 2 seconds) straighten it to return to the starting position. Perform 3 sets of 10–12 reps. To progress, add weight (see p.99) and reduce to 3–4 sets of 6–8 reps. If you feel anterior knee pain during the exercise, consult a physiotherapist (see p.98).

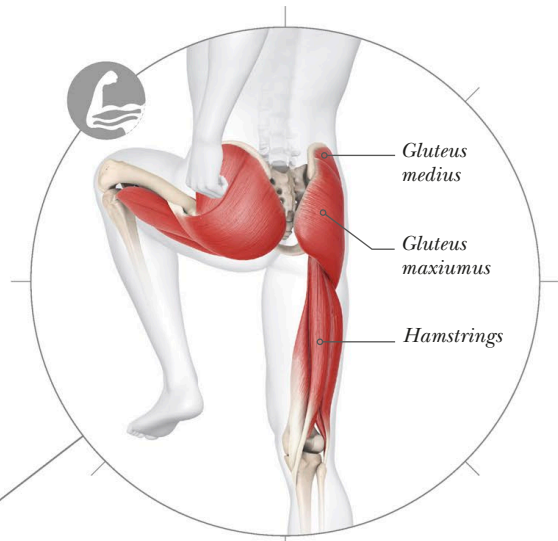
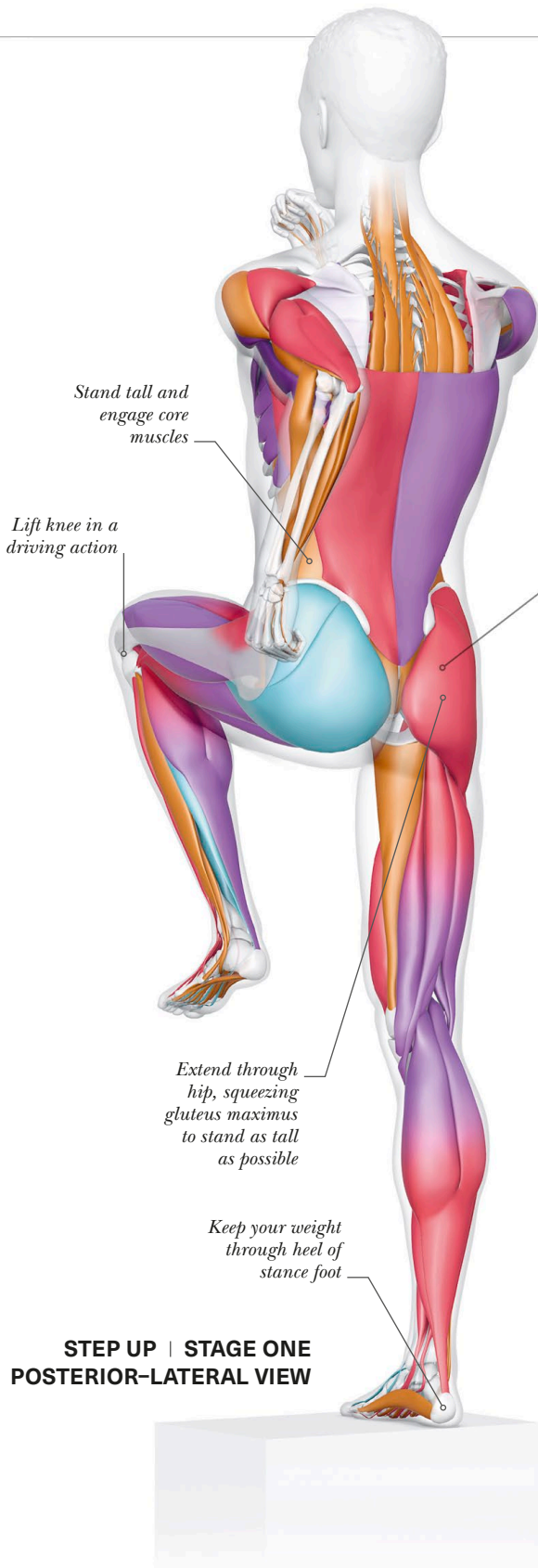


#### Knee alignment

When performing Step Down, it is important to maintain the alignment of the stance knee. It should move primarily within the sagittal plane (see p.10) as you descend and rise. Engage the hip abductors and external rotators to avoid the valgus collapse of the knee (see p.73) towards the midline.

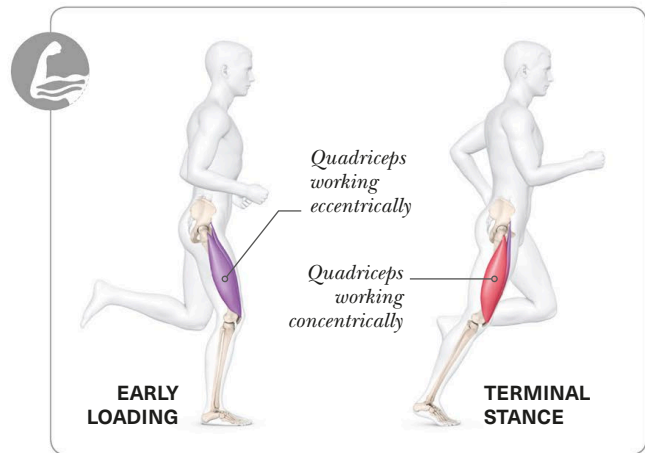


### STEP DOWN | STAGE ONE ANTERIOR VIEW



**Prime hip movers**

When we run, the hip extensors produce much of the force required to propel the body forwards. Given their proximity to the axis of rotation of the hip, the glutes should be the prime mover for this action, with the hamstrings working secondarily. Regularly spending long hours seated lengthens the glutes and inhibits them from being recruited, placing undue strain on the hamstrings. The Step Up exercise targets the glutes, which results in better recruitment of these muscles.



**Role of the quadricep muscles**

During the loading phase of running (see p.66), the knee flexes to absorb the ground reaction force – the quads work eccentrically to control the rate of this flexion. During the propulsive phase (see p.68), they work concentrically to extend the knee and drive the body forwards. These actions are mimicked during the Step Down (eccentric) and Step Up (concentric) exercises, which target the quads to improve their performance in running and help to avoid injury.

# STANDING HIP ROTATION

**Performing this exercise regularly** strengthens the hip abductors and external rotators. These muscles provide stability at the hip during running, which helps to prevent injury and improve running form.

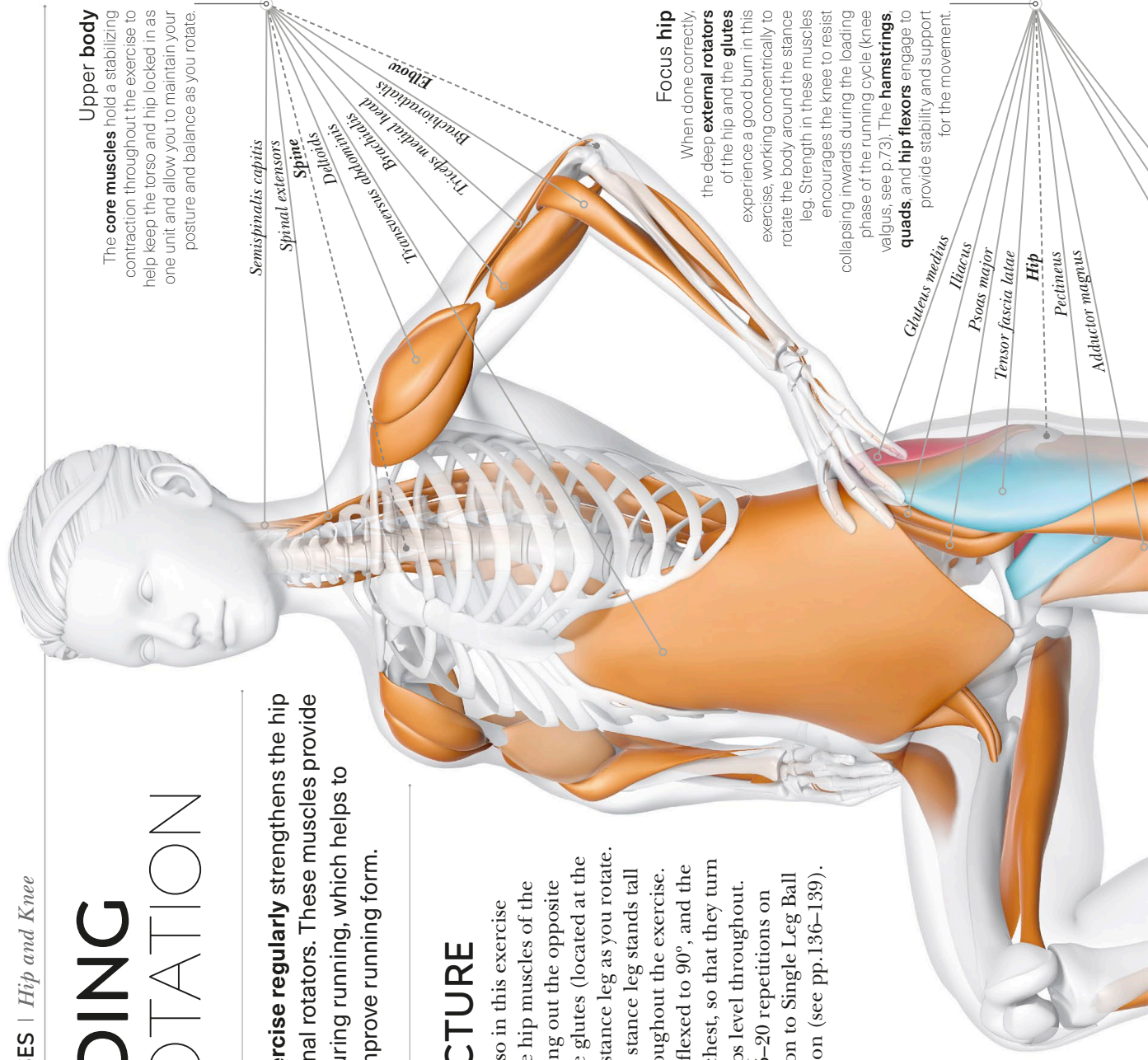
## THE BIG PICTURE

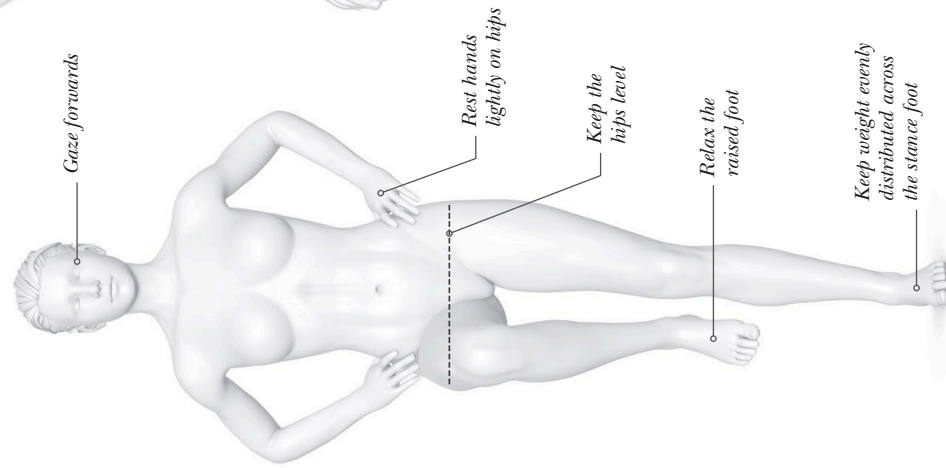
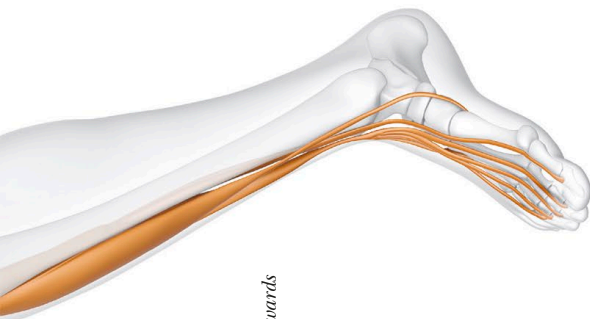
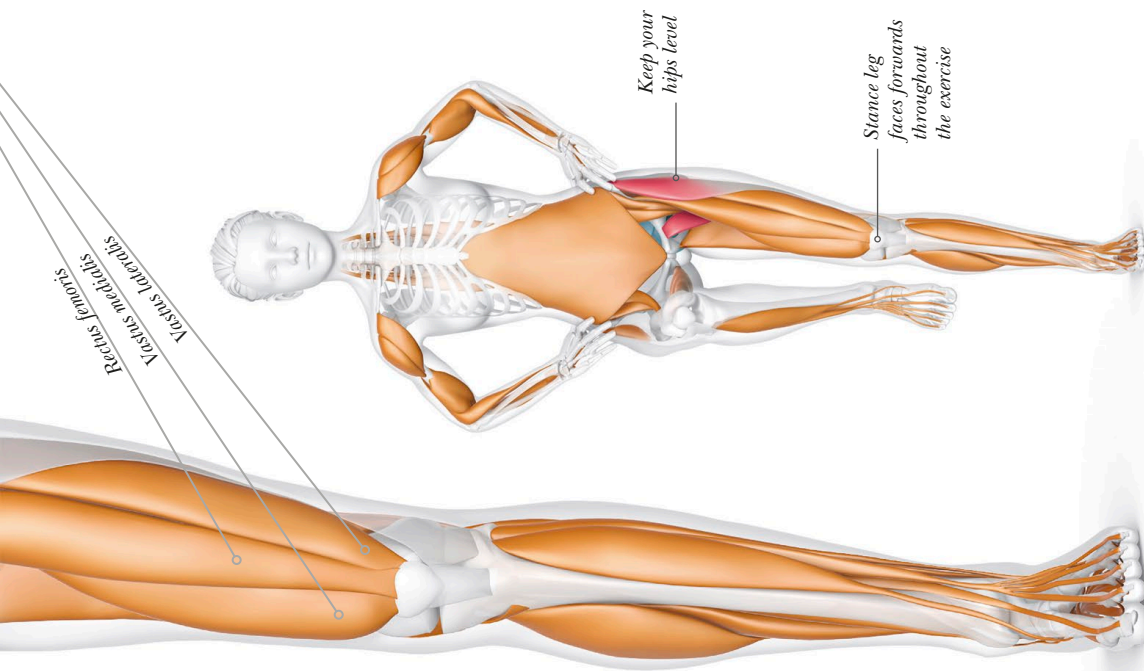
The rotation of the torso in this exercise is achieved by using the hip muscles of the stance leg, not by turning out the opposite hip. Focus on using the glutes (located at the side of the hip) of the stance leg as you rotate. Ensure the knee of the stance leg stands tall and faces forwards throughout the exercise. Keep the opposite hip flexed to 90°, and the pelvis square with the chest, so that they turn as a unit. Keep your hips level throughout.

Perform 3 sets of 15–20 repetitions on each side. Then move on to Single Leg Ball Squat with pelvic rotation (see pp.136–139).

**Upper body**  
The **core muscles** hold a stabilizing contraction throughout the exercise to help keep the torso and hip locked in as one unit and allow you to maintain your posture and balance as you rotate.

**Focus hip**  
When done correctly, the deep **external rotators** of the hip and the **glutes** experience a good burn in this exercise, working concentrically to rotate the body around the stance leg. Strength in these muscles encourages the knee to resist collapsing inwards during the loading phase of the running cycle (knee valgus, see p.73). The **hamstrings**, **quads**, and **hip flexors** engage to provide stability and support for the movement.





**KEY**

- Joints
- Muscles
- Shortening under tension
- Lengthening under tension
- Lengthening without tension (stretching)
- Held muscles without motion

**PREPARATORY STAGE**

Stand tall with your hands on your hips. Raise one knee in front of you so that the thigh is parallel to the floor, keeping your hips level.

**STAGE ONE**

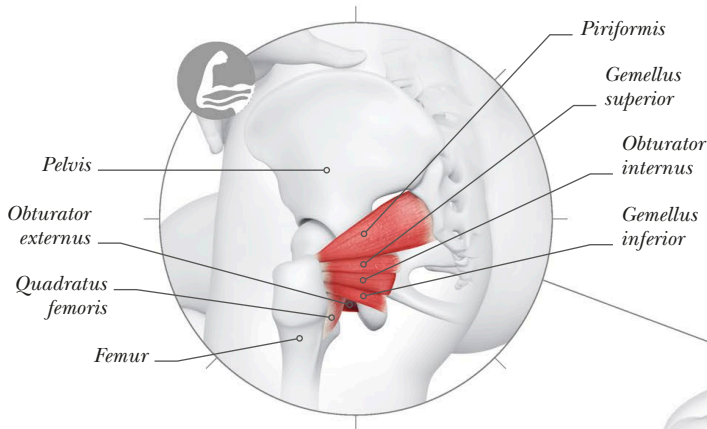
Using the glute muscles of the stance hip, slowly rotate your pelvis and torso in the direction of the raised leg. Keep the torso locked in with the pelvis so they turn as a unit. Ensure the stance leg does not turn in. Go as far as your hip range of motion allows. You may feel a stretch through the anterior hip during this stage.

**STAGE TWO**

Return the torso and pelvis back to the starting position as shown in the preparatory stage. Repeat stages 1 and 2.

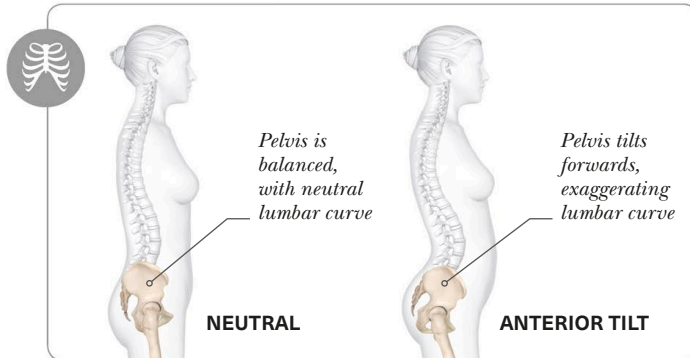
## » CLOSER LOOK

Due to the ball-and-socket configuration of the hip joint (see p.26), rotations occur in all three planes, enabling a broad range of movement. The hip muscles play a key role in controlling these movements, as well as in absorbing the GRF (see pp.46–47) and generating power for push-off.



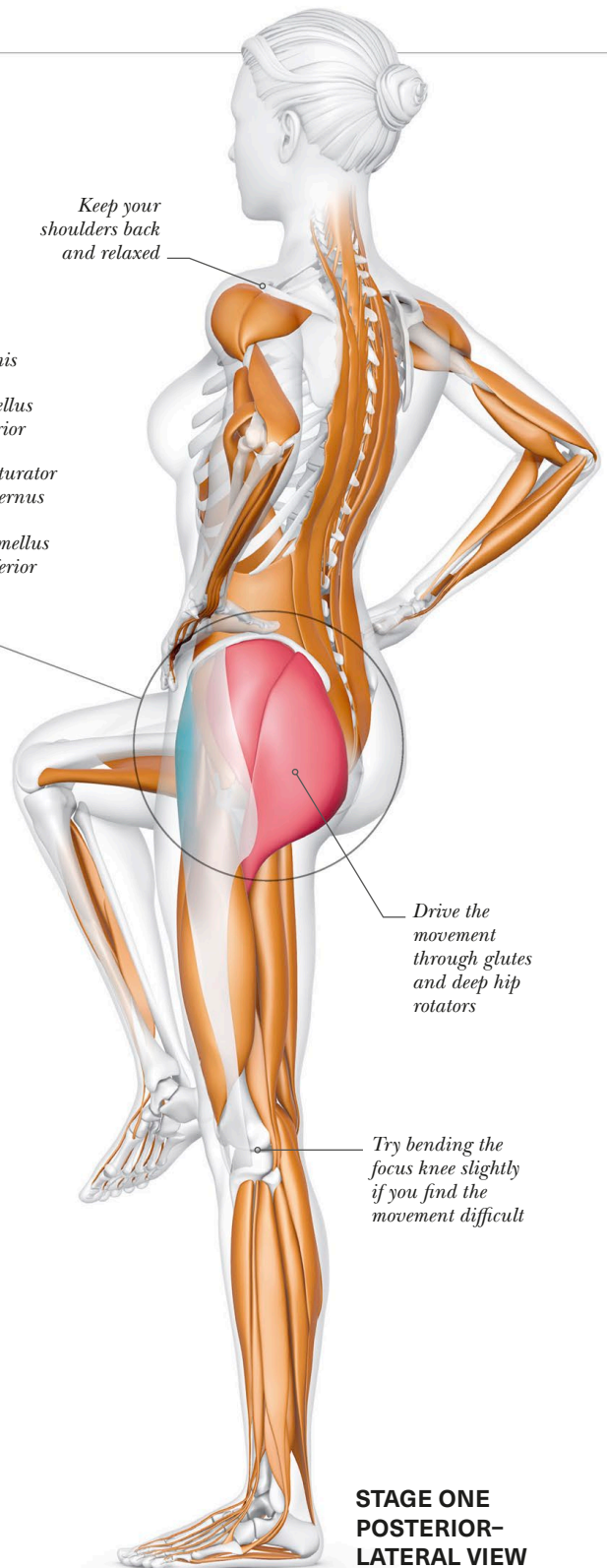
### Deep six external rotators

The muscles in this group all originate from the pelvis and insert on the femur (thigh bone). They externally rotate the hip (or control internal rotation) and stabilize the sacroiliac joint during the loading and midstance phases of running (see pp.66–67). They maintain the alignment of the hip joint by keeping the ball centred in the socket during movement, so that larger muscles can work effectively.



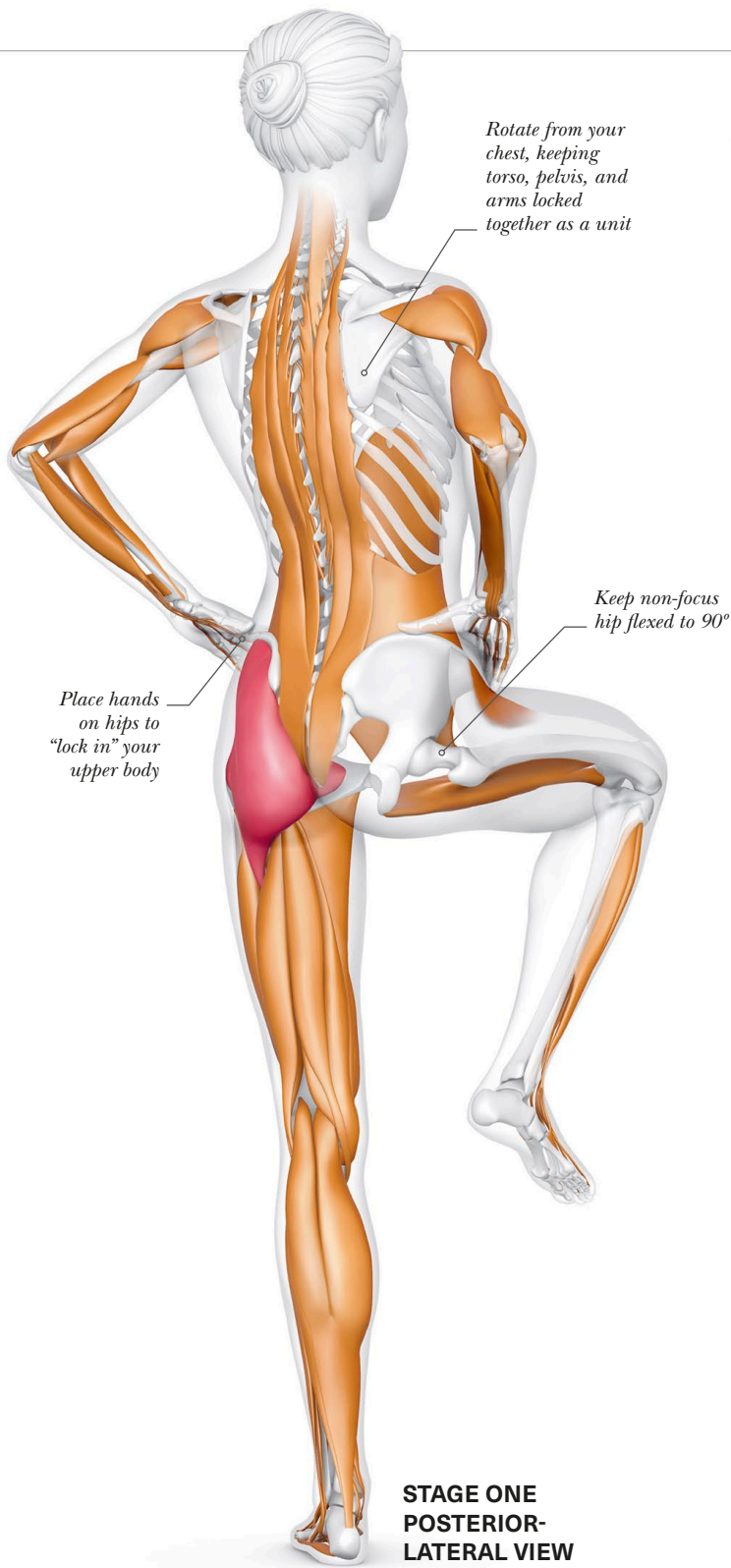
### Pelvic alignment

The degree of anterior pelvic tilt during running affects the amount of hip extension achieved in toe-off. While some anterior tilt is required, excessive tilt may increase the risk of femoroacetabular impingement (see p.27) and place the hip extensors at a mechanical disadvantage for generating force. To minimize excessive tilt, target the hip extensors with exercises, and limit the time spent seated, which puts your hip flexors in a shortened position.



**STAGE ONE  
POSTERIOR-  
LATERAL VIEW**





Rotate from your chest, keeping torso, pelvis, and arms locked together as a unit

Place hands on hips to "lock in" your upper body

Keep non-focus hip flexed to 90°

**STAGE ONE  
POSTERIOR-  
LATERAL VIEW**



STANDING HIP ROTATION VARIATION

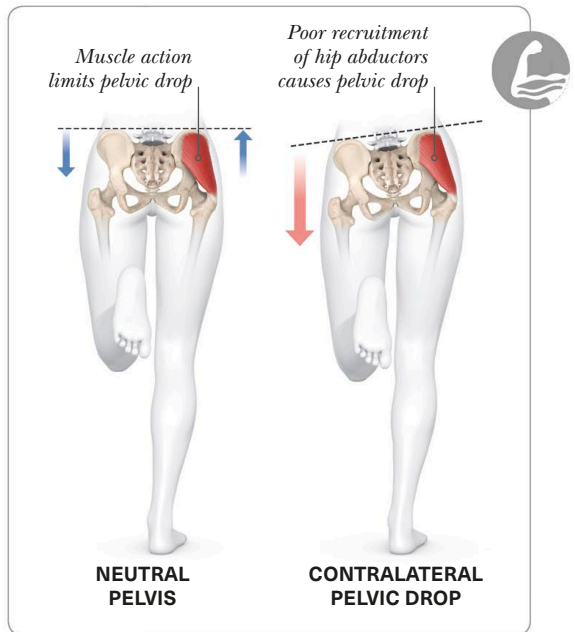
**Supported Hip Rotation**

If you have difficulty engaging your gluteal muscles while performing Standing Hip Rotation, wrap a resistance band around your knee to give your stance (focus) leg something to push against during the exercise.



Secure band to a fixed point at knee height

Wrap resistance band around the stance knee



Muscle action limits pelvic drop

Poor recruitment of hip abductors causes pelvic drop

**NEUTRAL PELVIS**

**CONTRALATERAL PELVIC DROP**

**Gluteus medius**

This muscle is often referred to as a hip abductor, but rarely is this its function, as we do not often lift our thigh out to the side. (That is an "open-chain" action, with the foot not in contact with the ground.) Instead, the major function of the gluteus medius is its reverse action, when the foot is fixed and the gluteus medius keeps the pelvis level. (This is a "closed-chain" action, with the foot connected to the ground.) In running, this function prevents excessive contralateral pelvic drop (see p.73) and excessive hip adduction during the loading phase of running.

# HIP EXTENSION

**The gluteus maximus is the primary hip extensor** and is an important contributor to the propulsion force in terminal stance (see p.68), especially as speeds increase. This exercise strengthens the gluteus maximus and reinforces its role as the primary hip extensor.

## THE BIG PICTURE

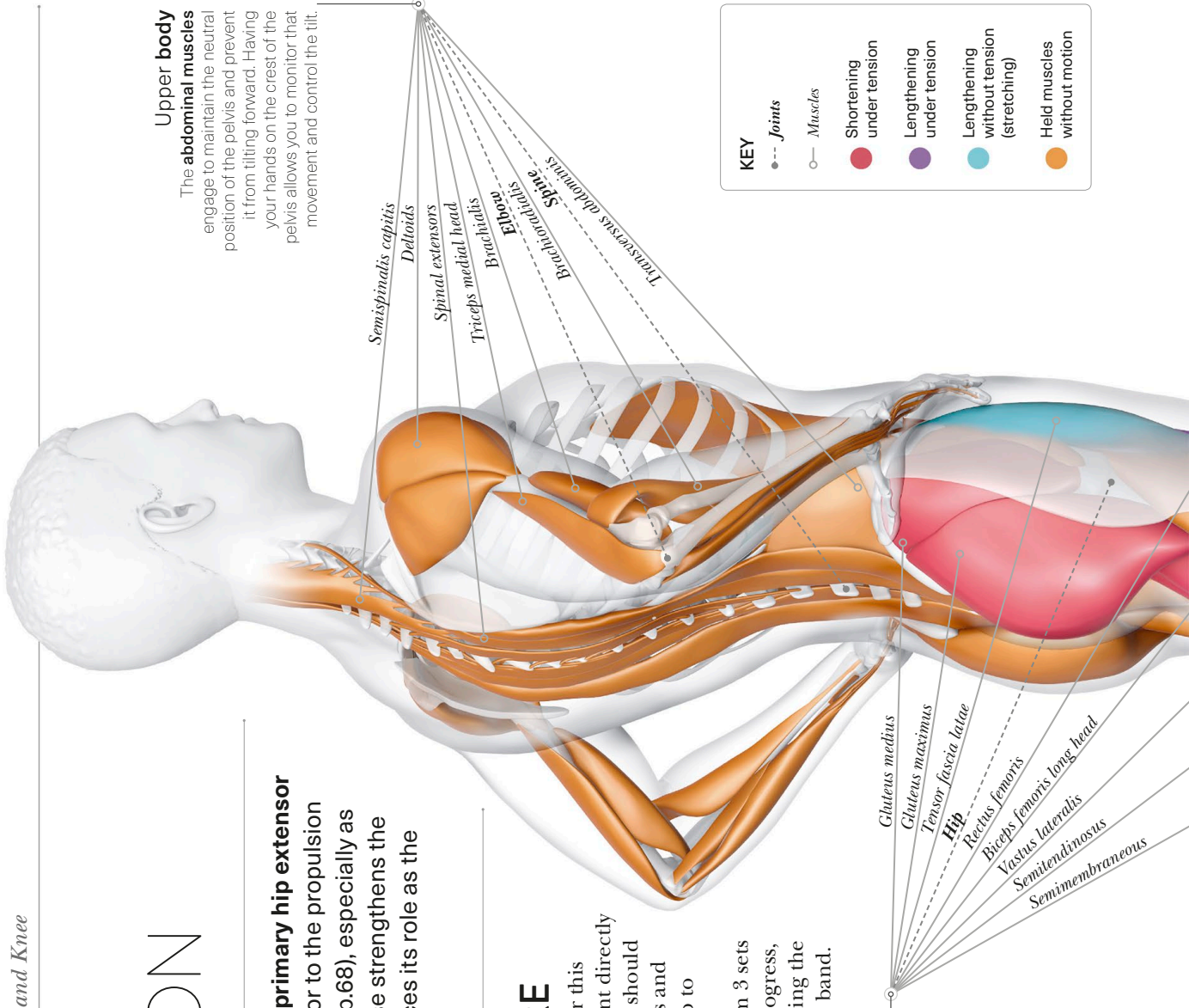
You will need a resistance band for this exercise. Attach it to a secure point directly in front of you at ankle height. It should be taut enough to work the glutes and hamstrings as they extend the hip to draw the focus leg backwards.

If new to the exercise, perform 3 sets of 15–20 reps on each side. To progress, increase the resistance by tightening the band or using a higher resistance band.

### Hip and upper leg

As long as the movement during this stage is isolated to the hip, the **hip extensors**, including the **glutes** and the **proximal hamstrings** work concentrically to draw the leg back. Avoid arching and stretching through the lower back, so the work done to enable the movement remains at the hip. This can be a narrow range of movement, as hip extension is limited in many people.

**Upper body**  
The **abdominal muscles** engage to maintain the neutral position of the pelvis and prevent it from tilting forward. Having your hands on the crest of the pelvis allows you to monitor that movement and control the tilt.



#### KEY

--- Joints

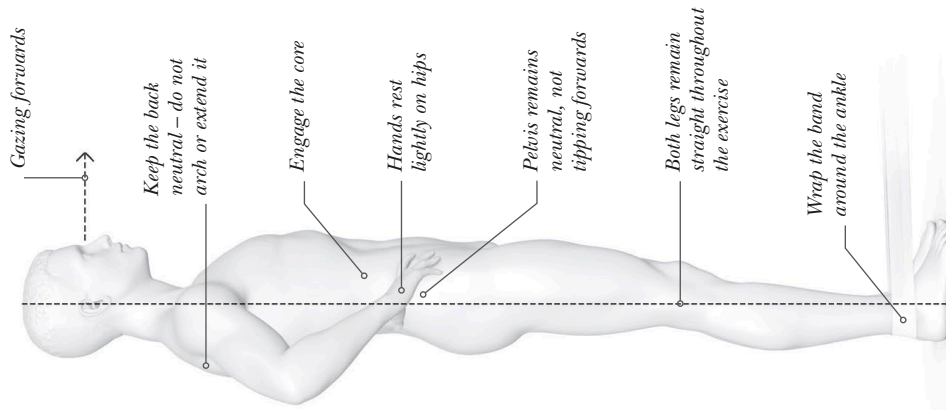
○ Muscles

● Shortening under tension

● Lengthening under tension

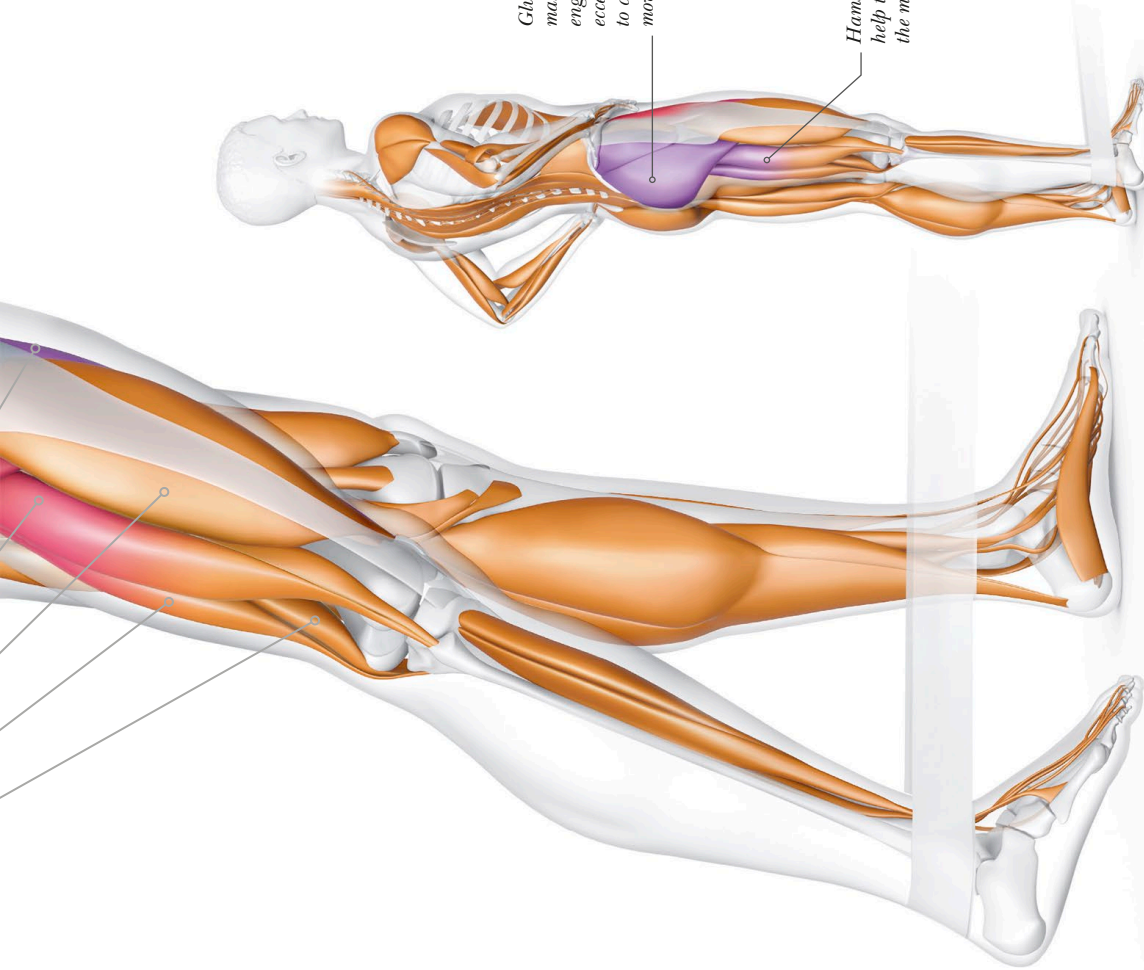
● Lengthening without tension (stretching)

● Held muscles without motion



### PREPARATORY STAGE

Reach down to wrap the resistance band around the ankle of the focus leg, then stand tall with hands on hips and feet hip-distance apart.



### STAGE TWO

As soon as the hip reaches the end of its range at the end of stage one, immediately return it to the starting position in a slow, controlled movement. Repeat stages 1 and 2.

### STAGE ONE

Maintaining a neutral pelvis, use the gluteal muscles to slowly extend the hip, moving the focus heel backward. Take the leg only as far as the hip's range of motion allows – do not arch your lower back or allow your pelvis to tilt forwards.

# TRADITIONAL DEADLIFT

**Building strength in the legs improves** their capacity to absorb impact forces during the loading phase of the running cycle (see p.66), and also enhances performance in the propulsion phase (see p.19). This exercise strengthens the quadriceps, hamstrings, and glutes, and can help to protect against running-related injury.

## THE BIG PICTURE

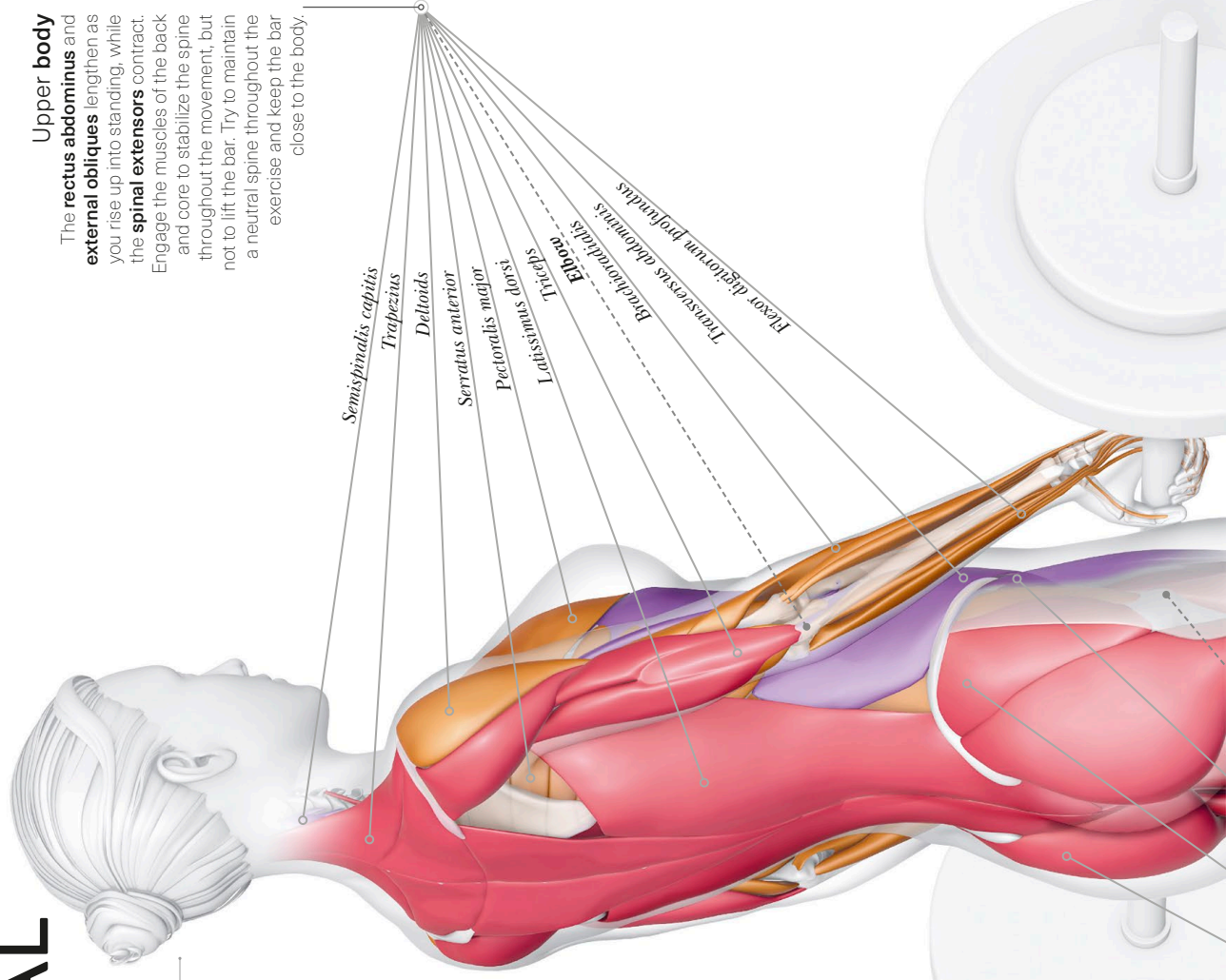
You will need a barbell for this exercise. The movement here is enabled by the hip and knee joints simultaneously extending, and then flexing. Focus on the quads, hamstrings, and glutes to drive the upward movement.

If new to this exercise, perform 3 sets of 10–12 reps with light weight. To progress, increase the weight and reduce to 3 sets of 6–8 reps.

### ! Caution

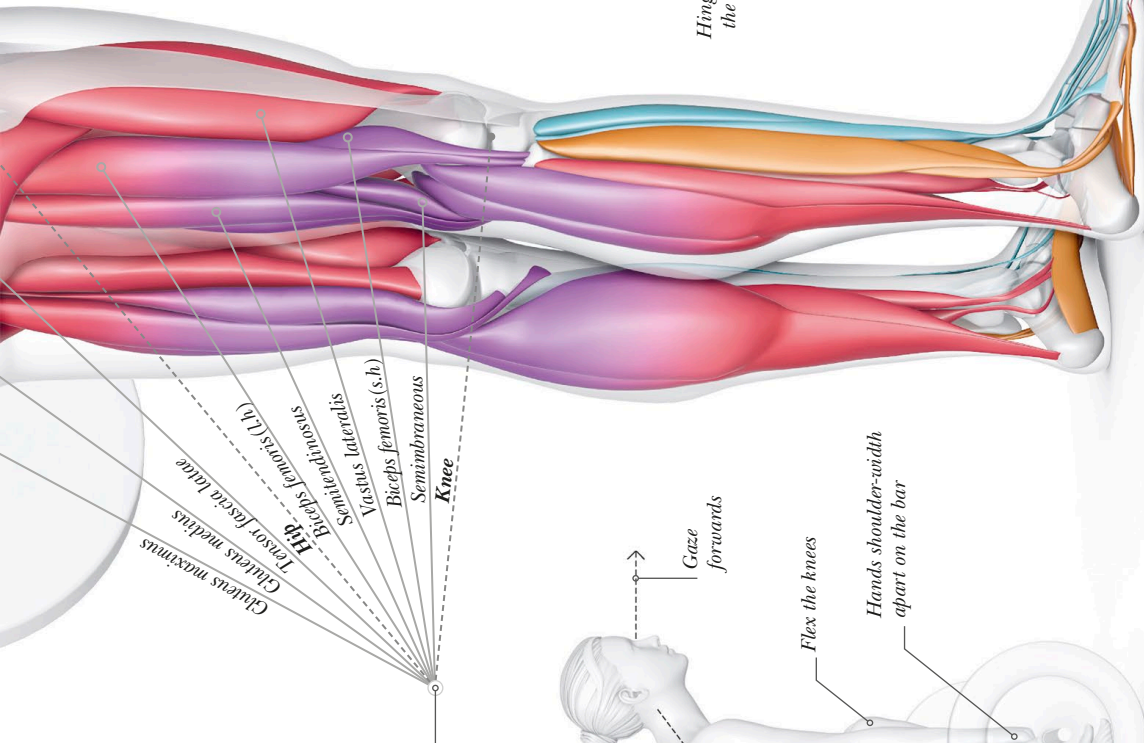
This exercise should be performed under the guidance of a physiotherapist or certified strength trainer if you do not have experience with it.

**Upper body**  
The **rectus abdominus** and **external obliques** lengthen as you rise up into standing, while the **spinal extensors** contract. Engage the muscles of the back and core to stabilize the spine throughout the movement, but not to lift the bar. Try to maintain a neutral spine throughout the exercise and keep the bar close to the body.

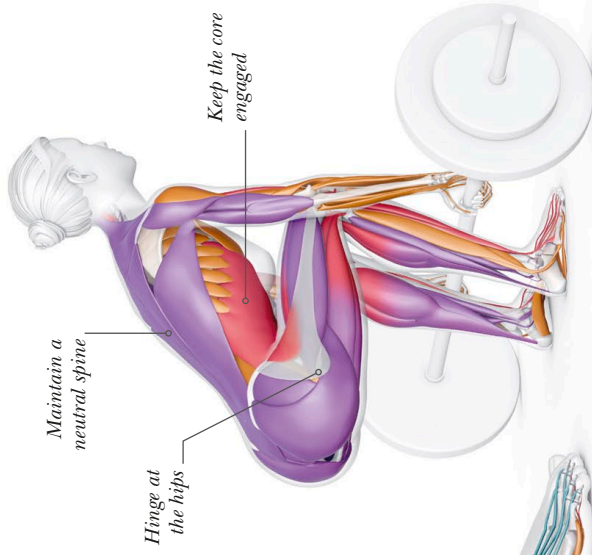
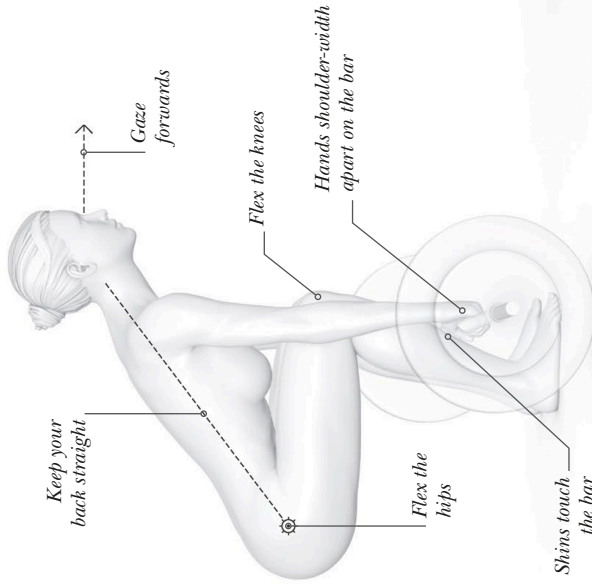


## Upper legs

The **quads**, **glutes**, and the **proximal hamstrings** work concentrically to extend the hip, while the **distal hamstrings** lengthen to enable knee extension. The hip and knee extensors provide the force required to lift the weight off the ground. Think about pushing the ground away from you, as opposed to lifting the bar – you want the legs to do this work, not the upper body.



KEY	
•••	Joints
○	Muscles
●	Lengthening without tension (stretching)
○	Shortening under tension
●	Held muscles without motion
○	Lengthening under tension



## PREPARATORY STAGE

Stand with your feet hip-width apart and the bar over the centre of your feet. Bend at the hips and knees to grip the bar. As you descend, your shins move towards the bar. When they touch it, stop descending. Squeeze your chest up to flatten the back and adopt a neutral spine position.

## STAGE ONE

Take a deep breath in and, keeping your entire back and core engaged and the chest up, push through your heels and lift the barbell straight up, driving your hips forwards as you lift. Hold at the top for 2 seconds.

## STAGE TWO

Flexing your hips and knees, slowly (over 3 seconds) return the bar straight down to the floor. Repeat stages 1 and 2.

## » CLOSER LOOK

Traditional Deadlift is a simple exercise that delivers strength gains to the main lower-limb muscle groups. However, care should be taken to reduce strain on the lumbar spine (see p.30), especially for those who have recurrent lower back pain.

Stand tall and engage your spinal extensors

Squeeze your glutes and push your hips forwards

STAGE ONE  
POSTERIOR VIEW



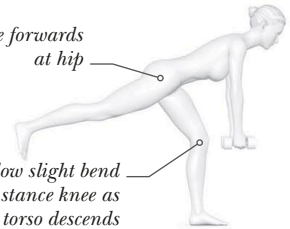
### TRADITIONAL DEADLIFT VARIATION

#### Single Leg Deadlift

Stand tall holding dumbbells. Slide the non-stance leg backwards, allowing your torso to drop forwards. When you feel a stretch in your stance-leg hamstrings, engage your hamstrings and glutes to return to the starting position. Perform 3 sets of 10–12 reps on each leg.

Hinge forwards at hip

Allow slight bend in stance knee as torso descends



### TRADITIONAL DEADLIFT VARIATION

#### Romanian Deadlift

Hold the bar at hip height with palms facing downwards. Move your hips backwards to lower the bar, keeping it close to your body. Stop when the bar is level with the bottom of your knees and the hamstrings are on full stretch. Push the hips forwards to return to the starting position. Perform 3 sets of 10–12 reps.

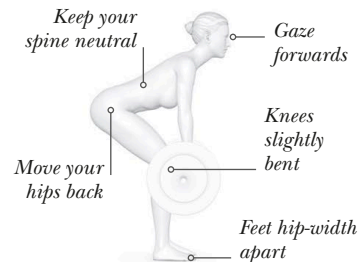
Keep your spine neutral

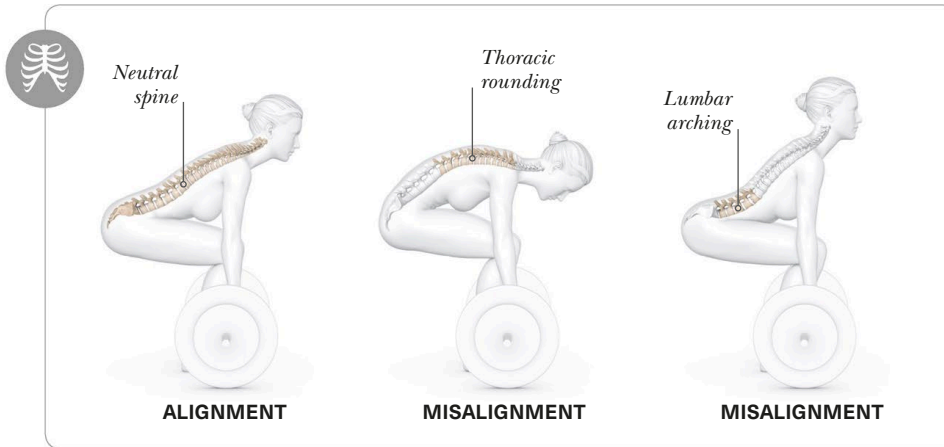
Move your hips back

Gaze forwards

Knees slightly bent

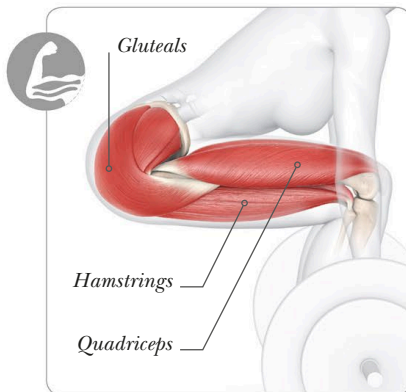
Feet hip-width apart





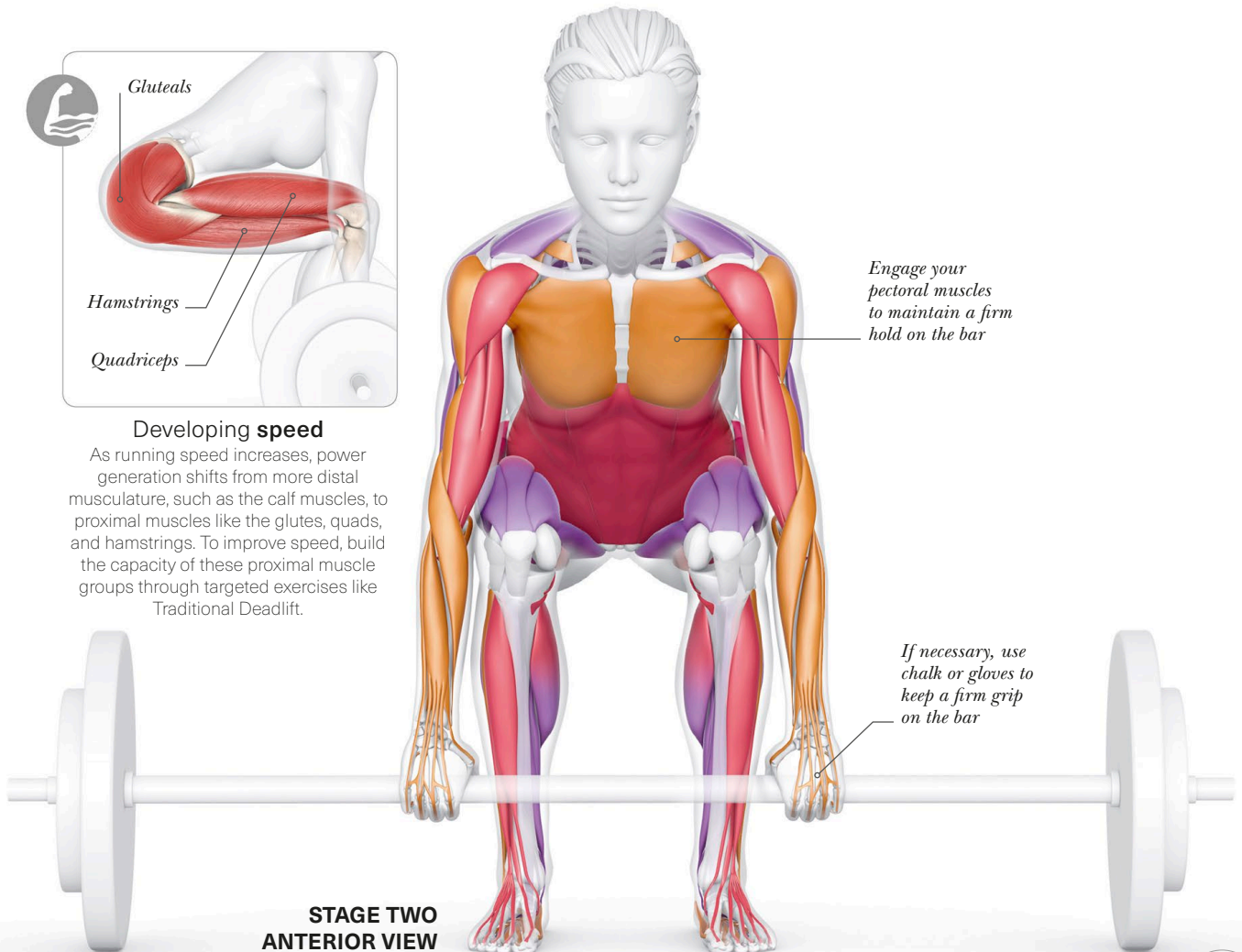
### Spinal alignment

When performing Traditional Deadlift, keep your spine in a neutral position, neither arching nor rounding it. The hip muscles should bear the load. If you arch or round your back too much, not only do you reduce the load on the hip muscles, you also increase the risk of injuring your back.



### Developing speed

As running speed increases, power generation shifts from more distal musculature, such as the calf muscles, to proximal muscles like the glutes, quads, and hamstrings. To improve speed, build the capacity of these proximal muscle groups through targeted exercises like Traditional Deadlift.



**STAGE TWO  
ANTERIOR VIEW**

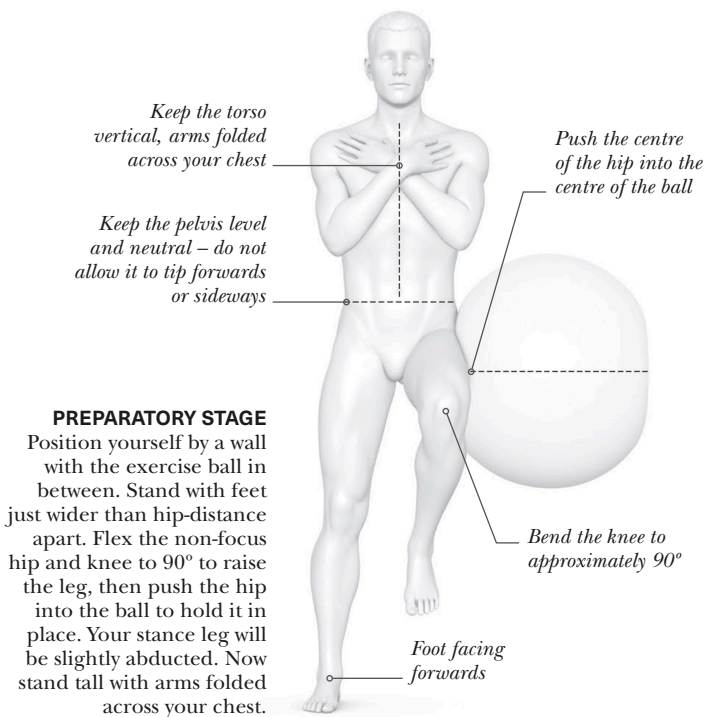
# SINGLE LEG BALL SQUAT

The entire kinetic chain (see p.49) benefits from this exercise, which strengthens the core, hip, thigh, and calf muscles, and also challenges your stability on one leg.

## THE BIG PICTURE

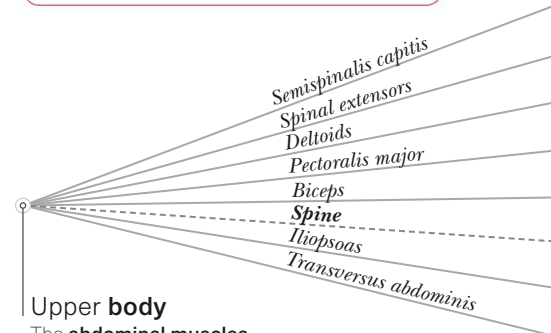
You will need an exercise ball to perform this modified squat. Note that the stance leg should be slightly abducted throughout the exercise, making the gluteus medius work harder. Ensure that the stance knee does not drop inwards by aiming to maintain its position in the sagittal plane (see p.10) as you move. Do not bend from the waist. Instead, drop straight down as you squat, keeping the torso upright. Keep the hips level throughout.

If new to this exercise, aim for 3 sets of 5–10 reps on each side. Once you are able to maintain knee alignment, increase the weight (see p.99) and complete 3–4 sets of 6–8 reps.



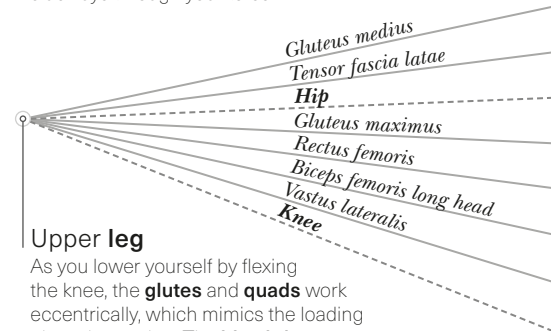
### ! Caution

If you experience anterior knee pain during this exercise, consult a physiotherapist to ensure you are not aggravating your condition (see p.98).



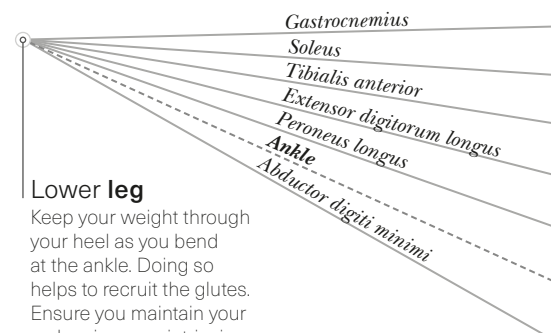
### Upper body

The **abdominal muscles** engage to keep the body upright. Keep your hips level and your spine neutral, as if standing. Avoid rotating or bending sideways through your torso.



### Upper leg

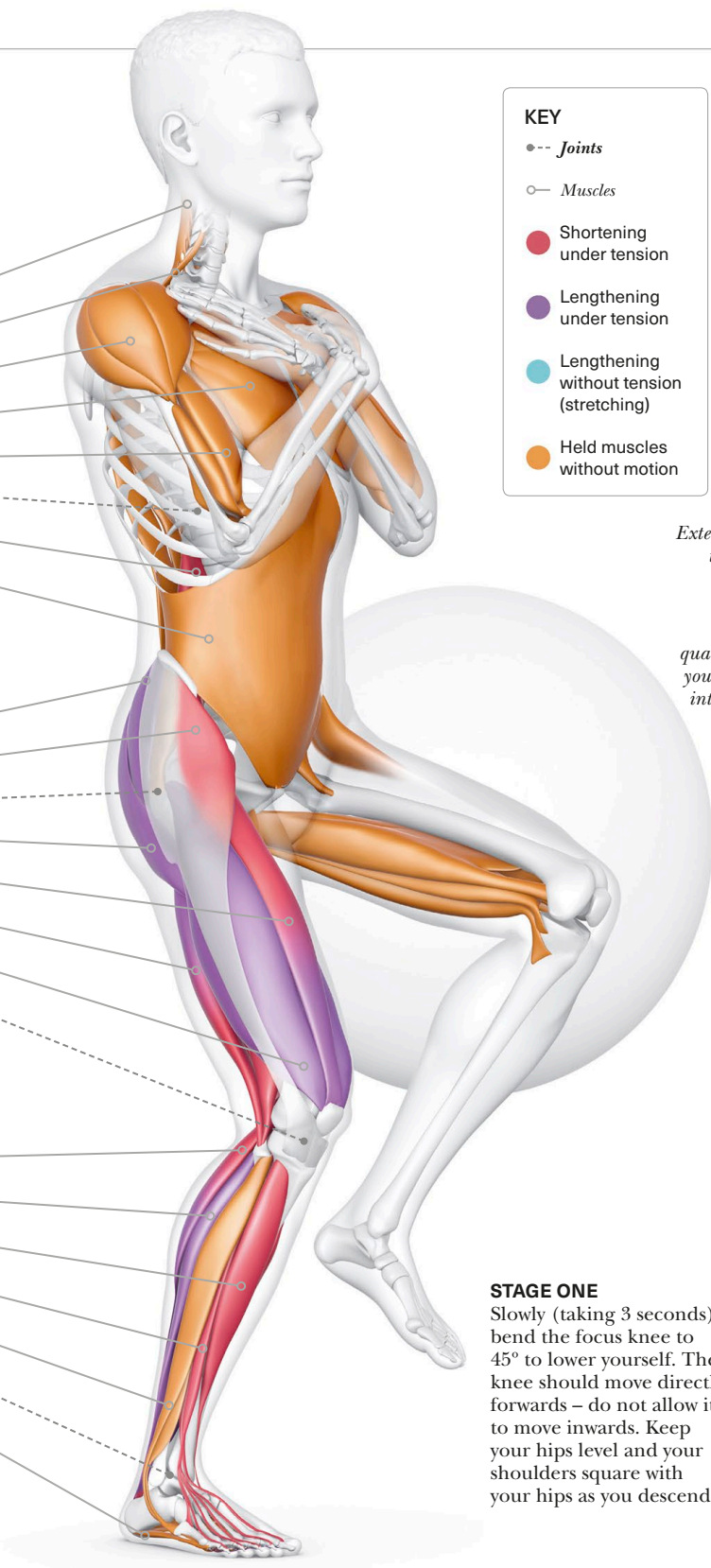
As you lower yourself by flexing the knee, the **glutes** and **quads** work eccentrically, which mimics the loading phase in running. The **hip abductors**, primarily the **gluteus medius**, have to work hard to maintain a level pelvis. Focus on the quads and glutes doing the main work.



### Lower leg

Keep your weight through your heel as you bend at the ankle. Doing so helps to recruit the glutes. Ensure you maintain your arch using your intrinsic foot muscles (see p.102) to provide a stable base.



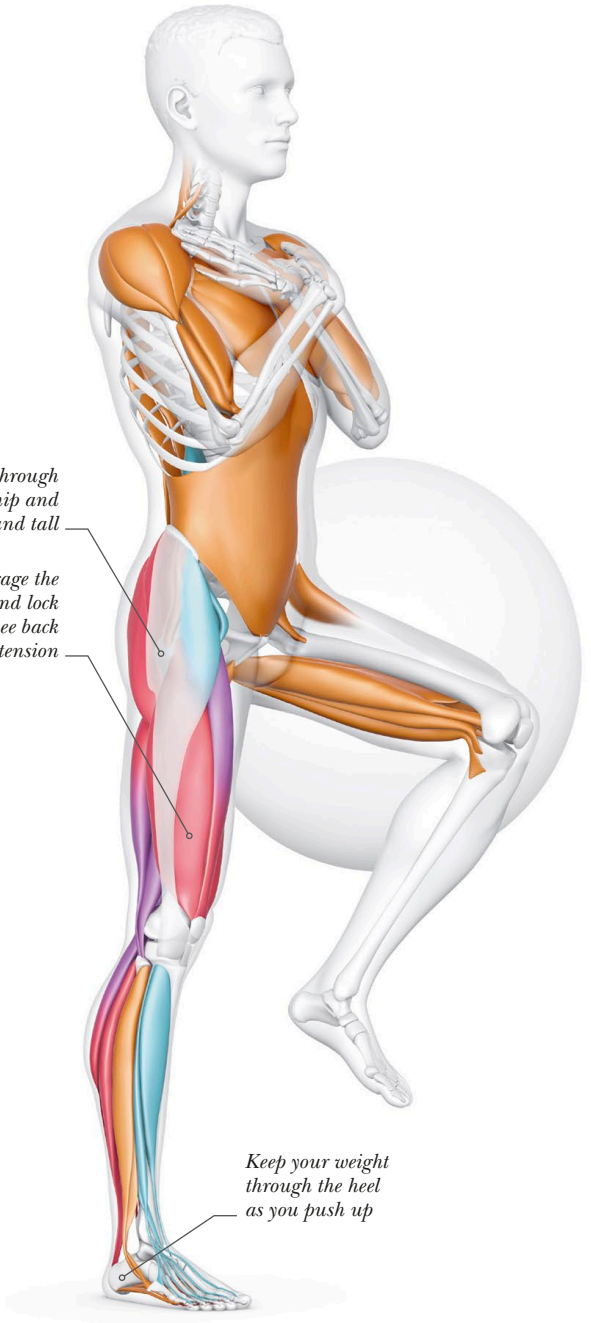


**KEY**

- Joints
- Muscles
- Shortening under tension
- Lengthening under tension
- Lengthening without tension (stretching)
- Held muscles without motion

*Extend through the hip and stand tall*

*Engage the quads and lock your knee back into extension*



*Keep your weight through the heel as you push up*

**STAGE ONE**  
 Slowly (taking 3 seconds) bend the focus knee to 45° to lower yourself. The knee should move directly forwards – do not allow it to move inwards. Keep your hips level and your shoulders square with your hips as you descend.

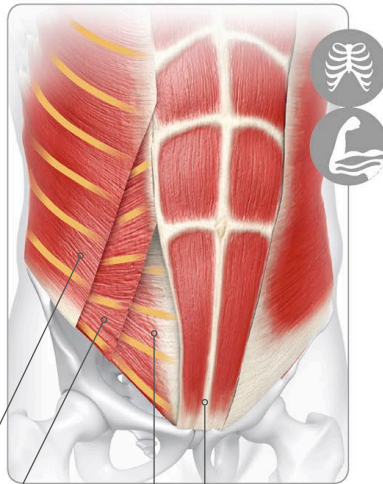
**STAGE TWO**  
 Once at the bottom, slowly (taking 2 seconds) push down through the heel, extending through the knee and hip, to return to the starting position. Keep the hips square as you rise and avoid rotating the trunk.

## » CLOSER LOOK

This dynamic exercise challenges the core and hips. By adding a rotation at the pelvis or chest (see opposite), the movements of the exercise mimic how the body engages the diagonal elastic support mechanism (see p.49) during the running motion.

### Core strength

The core needs strength to control the upper body as it passes over the supporting leg during the stance phase of running (see pp.66–68), and also to stabilize the pelvis, which provides the upper leg muscles a sturdy base from which to generate propulsive power. The core also negotiates substantial forces being transferred through it from both above and below. Single Leg Ball Squat develops the muscles of the core as well as the upper leg.



External obliques

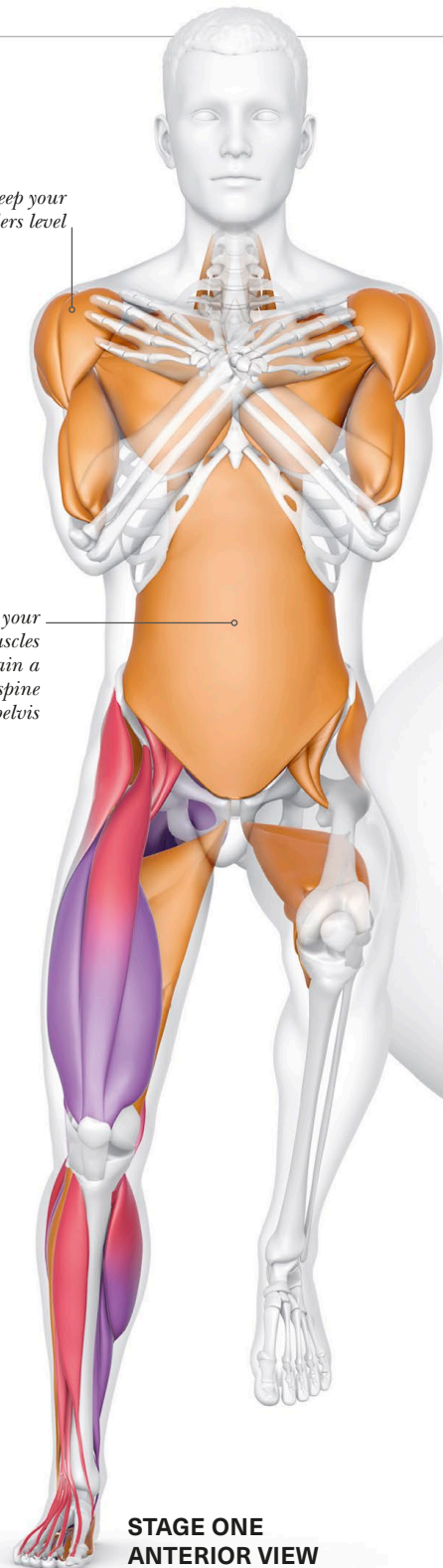
Internal obliques

Transversus abdominus

Rectus abdominus

Keep your shoulders level

Engage your core muscles to maintain a neutral spine and pelvis



STAGE ONE  
ANTERIOR VIEW

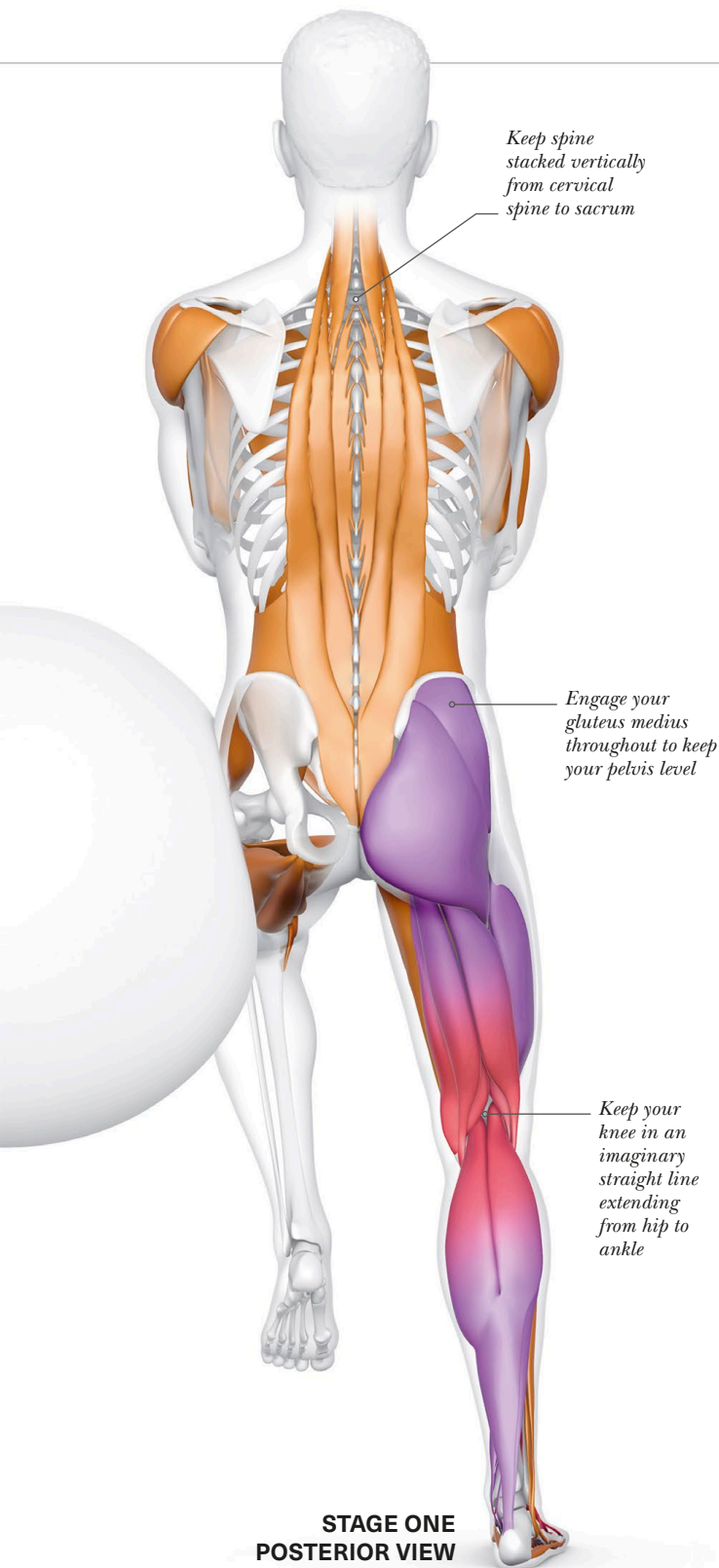
### SINGLE LEG SQUAT VARIATION

#### Targeting the quads

If you want to increase the demand on the quads and reduce that on the glutes while performing Single Leg Ball Squat, place a heel wedge under your heel to shift your weight onto your forefoot. This variation may be of help if rehabilitating from patellar tendinopathy.



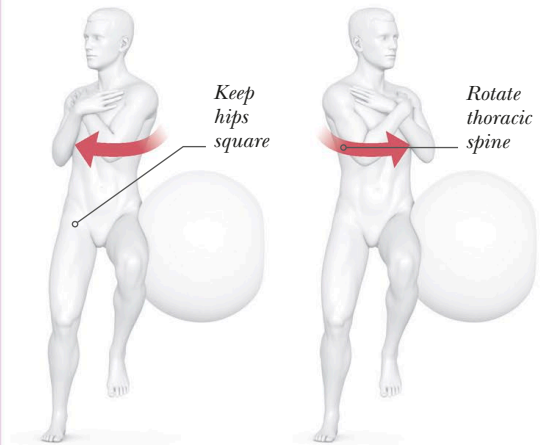
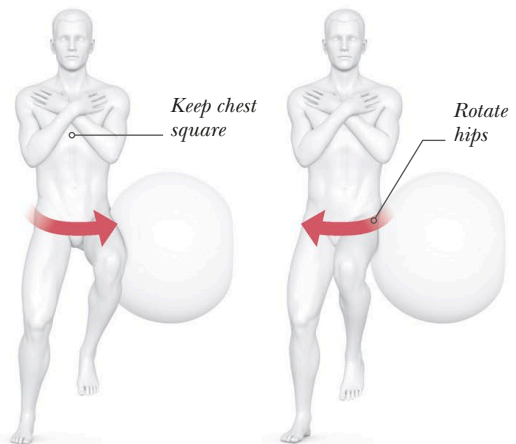
Place wedge under heel



## SINGLE LEG SQUAT PROGRESSIONS

**Adding chest or pelvic rotation**

When performing the Single Leg Ball Squat, add rotation of either the pelvis or chest each time you are in the squat – rotate to one side, then the other, in a smooth, flowing movement before pushing back up. If rotating the chest, keep the hips square so that you rotate only the thoracic spine (see p.30). If rotating the pelvis, keep the chest square and facing forwards so that you move only the hips.

**CHEST ROTATION****PELVIC ROTATION**

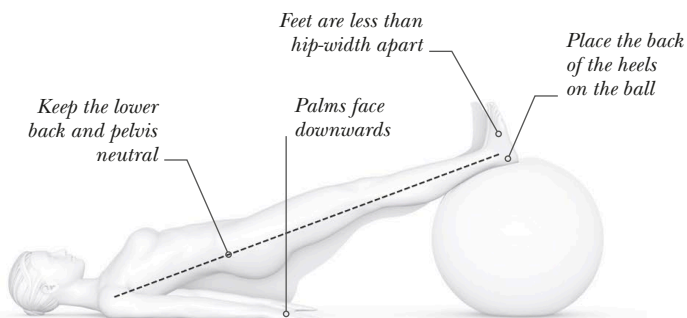
# HAMSTRING BALL ROLL-IN

**This exercise strengthens the hamstrings and core,** and can be used to aid in recovery from hamstring strains and other running-related injuries (see pp.54–63). The hamstrings play an important role in running performance, especially speed.

## THE BIG PICTURE

You will need an exercise ball with a diameter of 55–65cm (21½–26in) for this exercise. This is a challenging manoeuvre. Once you have raised your body and positioned it in a straight line at the start of the exercise, focus on maintaining the position of the trunk and hips throughout the movement. Much of the work here is in preventing the hips from descending as you roll the ball in and out.

If new to this exercise, perform 3 sets of 10–12 reps. Once you can hold the position of the hips and torso throughout the exercise, remove the support of your forearms (cross them over your chest). To progress, perform as a single-leg exercise – flex the knee of the non-focus leg and bring it towards your chest to keep the leg out of the way when the focus leg rolls the ball in.

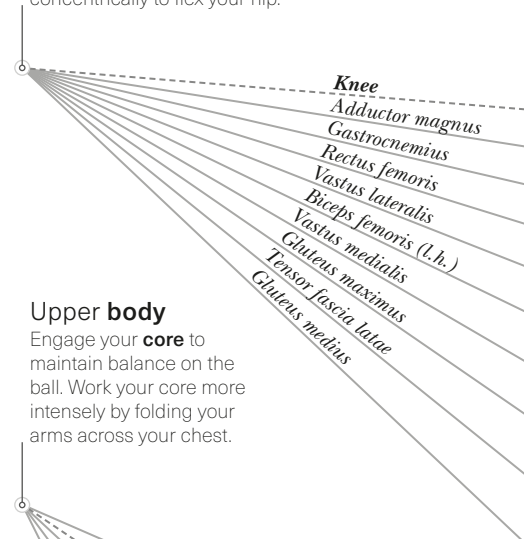


### PREPARATORY STAGE

Lie on your back with your arms by your sides. Rest your heels close together on the exercise ball. Now raise your hips so that your body forms a straight line from the shoulder through the hip and knee to the ankle. Keep your spine in a neutral position.

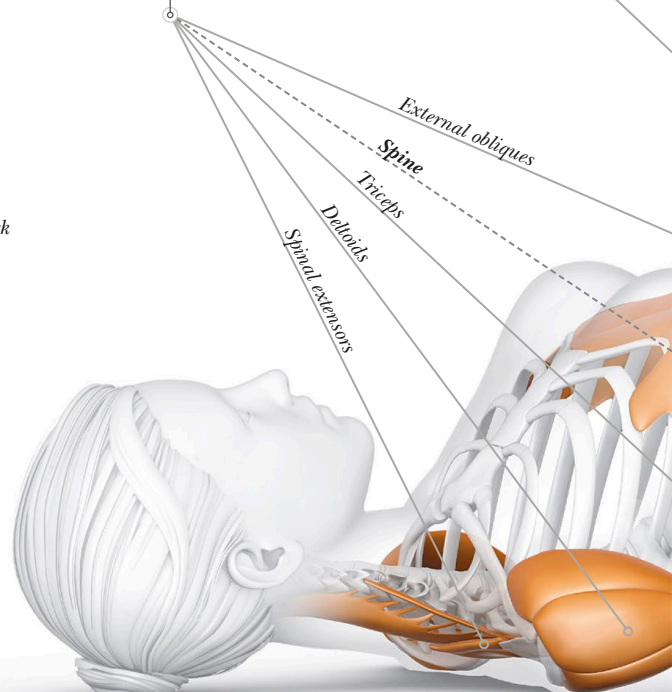
### Upper leg

The **hamstrings** produce the knee flexion in this stage. Dig your heels into the ball and focus on pulling it in towards you, rather than raising the knees. The **glutes** engage to maintain the bridging action that keeps your hips raised, and lengthen as your hip flexes. The **hip flexors** in the front of the hip engage concentrically to flex your hip.



### Upper body

Engage your **core** to maintain balance on the ball. Work your core more intensely by folding your arms across your chest.



**KEY**

•-- Joints

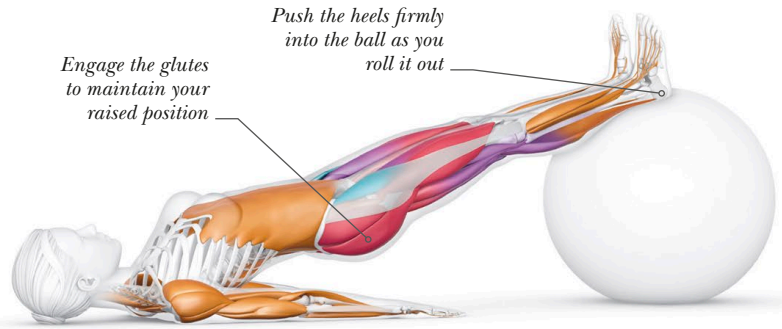
○ Muscles

● Shortening under tension

● Lengthening under tension

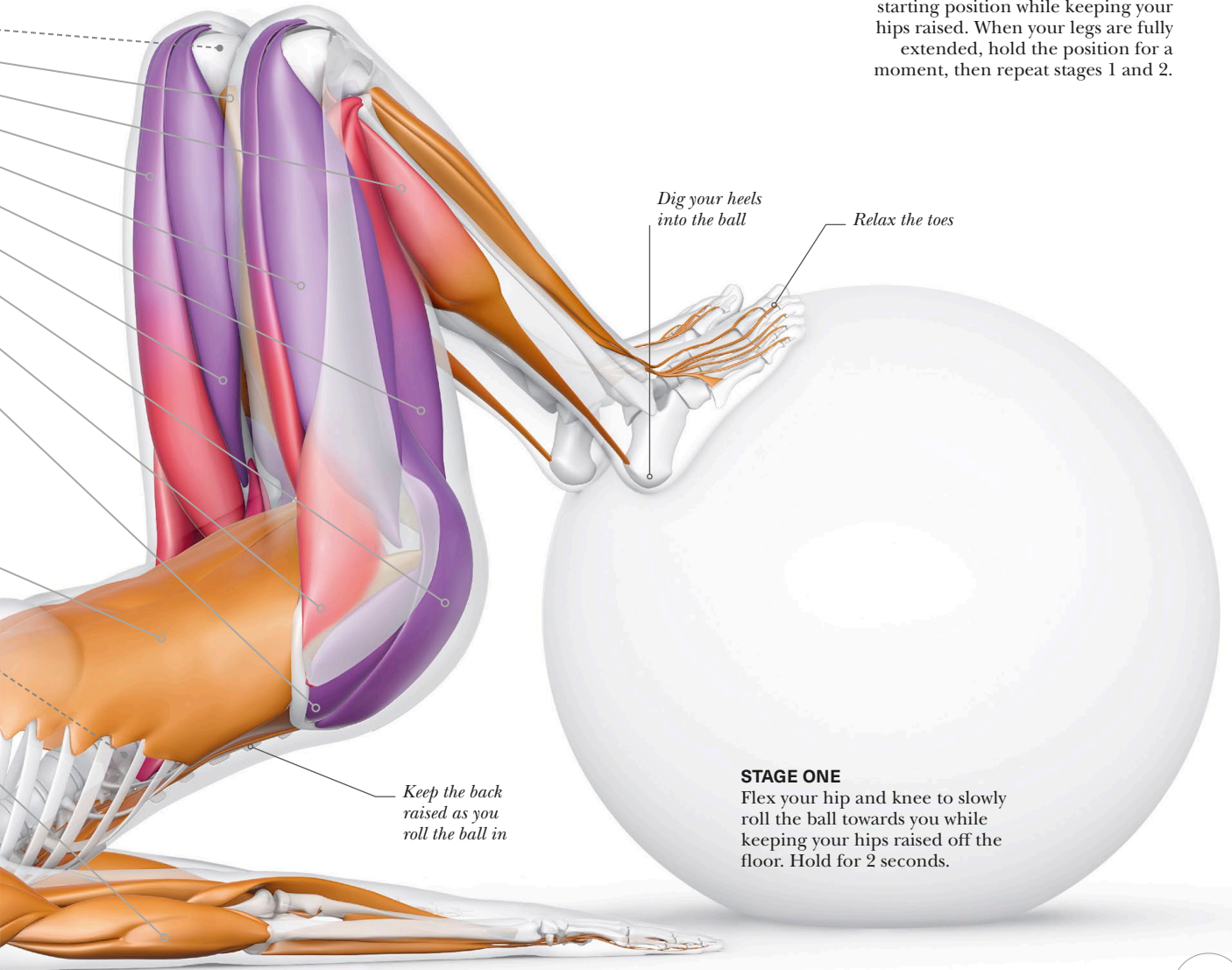
● Lengthening without tension (stretching)

● Held muscles without motion



**STAGE TWO**

Now slowly roll the ball back to the starting position while keeping your hips raised. When your legs are fully extended, hold the position for a moment, then repeat stages 1 and 2.



**STAGE ONE**

Flex your hip and knee to slowly roll the ball towards you while keeping your hips raised off the floor. Hold for 2 seconds.

# LUNGE

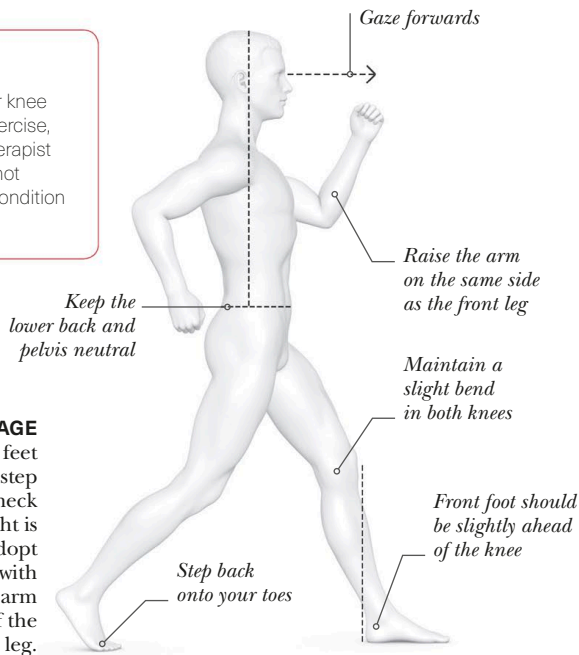
The Lunge is a great exercise to target strength in both lower limbs in a running-specific pose. It works the muscles both eccentrically and concentrically.

## THE BIG PICTURE

Although both legs are working hard in this exercise, it is the glutes and quads of the front leg that are targeted. As you lunge, move downwards, not forwards. When in the lunge, your shoulder, hip, and (lowered) back knee should be aligned vertically. Throughout the exercise, ensure your weight is evenly distributed through your flat front foot and the dorsiflexed toes of your back foot. Your arms move in running motion in coordination with your leg movements. As you lunge, raise the arm on the opposite side of your body to the front leg. Reverse the arm movement as you rise out of the lunge.

If new to this exercise, perform 3 sets of 8–12 reps on each side. To increase the load on the glutes of the front leg, hold a dumbbell on the opposite side of the body to the front leg.

**Caution**  
 If you have anterior knee pain during this exercise, consult a physiotherapist to ensure you are not aggravating your condition (see p.98).



### PREPARATORY STAGE

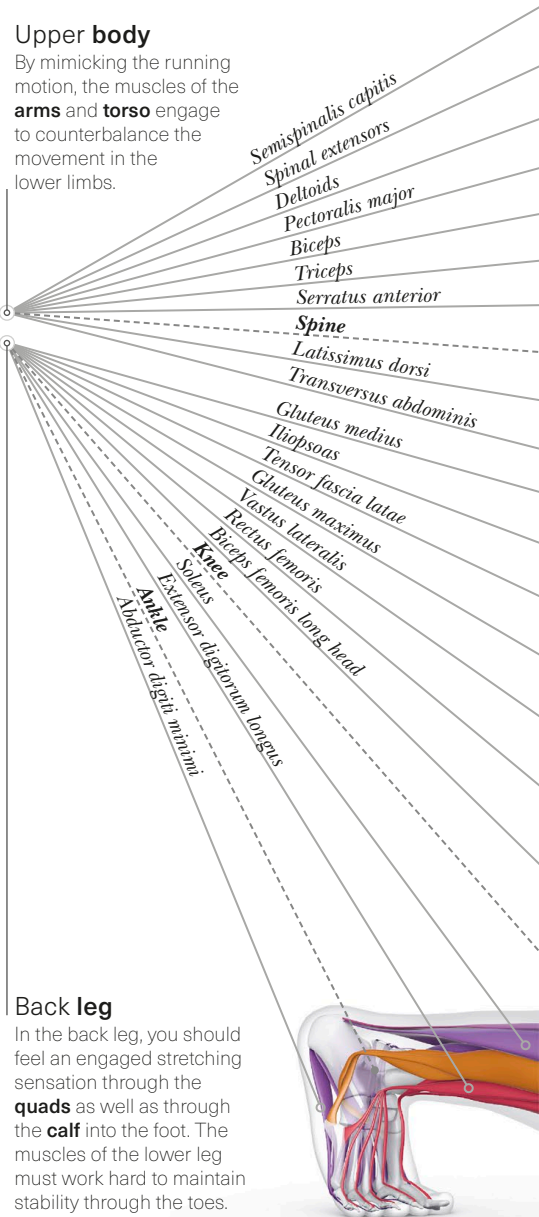
Stand with your feet hip-width apart, then step back with one leg. Check that your weight is evenly distributed. Adopt a running position with the arms, raising the arm on the same side of the body as the forward leg.

### KEY

- Joints
- Muscles
- Shortening under tension
- Lengthening under tension
- Lengthening without tension (stretching)
- Held muscles without motion

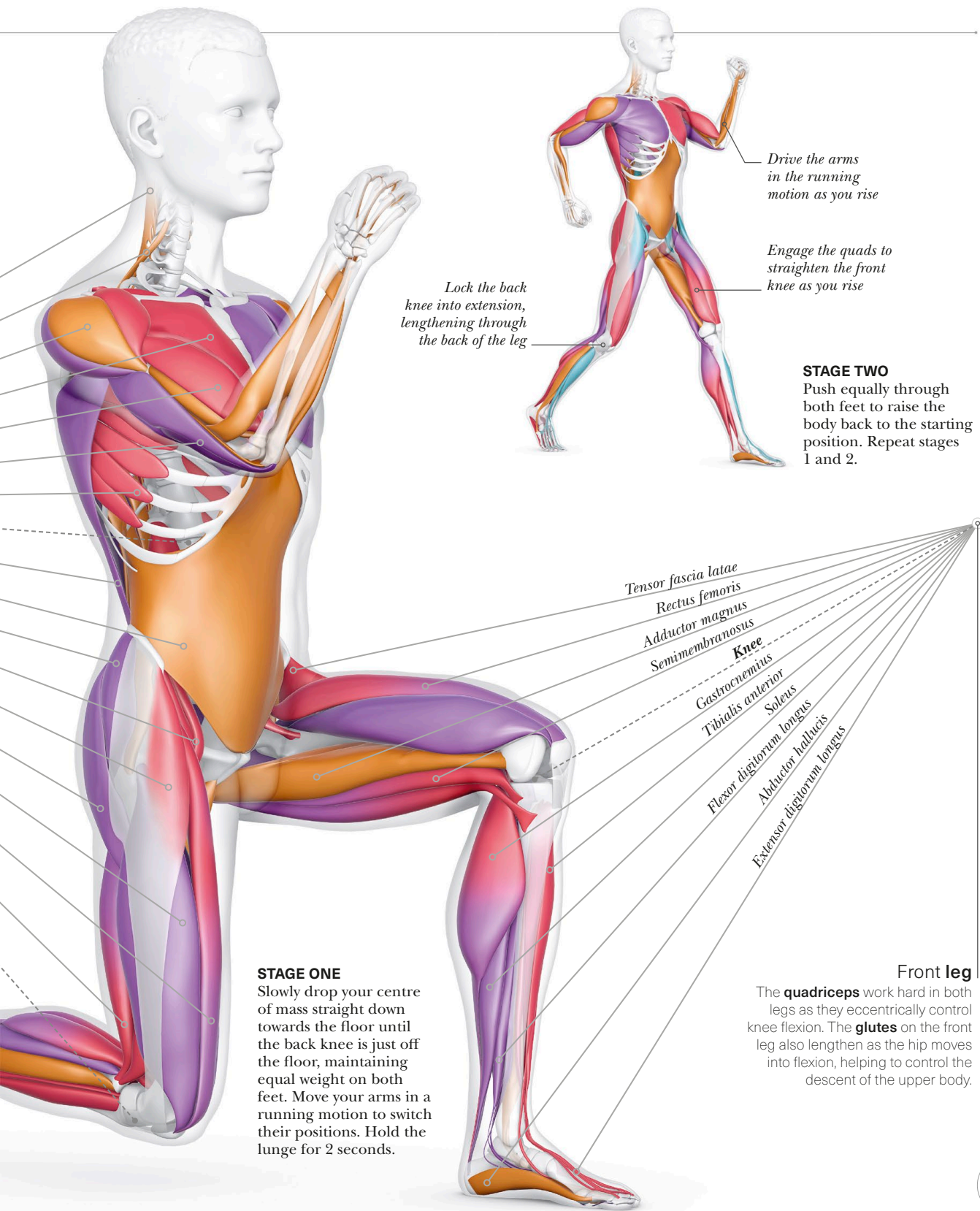
### Upper body

By mimicking the running motion, the muscles of the **arms** and **torso** engage to counterbalance the movement in the lower limbs.



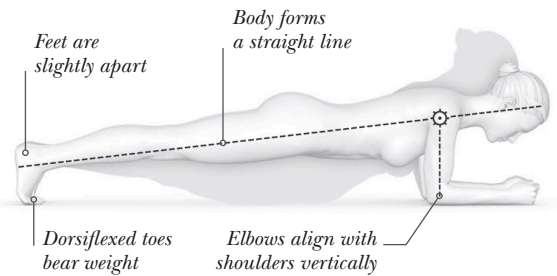
### Back leg

In the back leg, you should feel an engaged stretching sensation through the **quads** as well as through the **calf** into the foot. The muscles of the lower leg must work hard to maintain stability through the toes.



# FRONT PLANK WITH ROTATION

**Also known as “mountain climber”,** this exercise strengthens the muscles of the core, especially the oblique muscles. It also improves the efficiency of the diagonal elastic support mechanism (see p.49), which enables the transfer of forces between the lower body and upper body while running.



## PREPARATORY STAGE

Lie on your front with your upper body propped up on your forearms. To get into starting position, lift your hips off the floor so that your body forms a straight line from head, though the navel to the ankle.

## THE BIG PICTURE

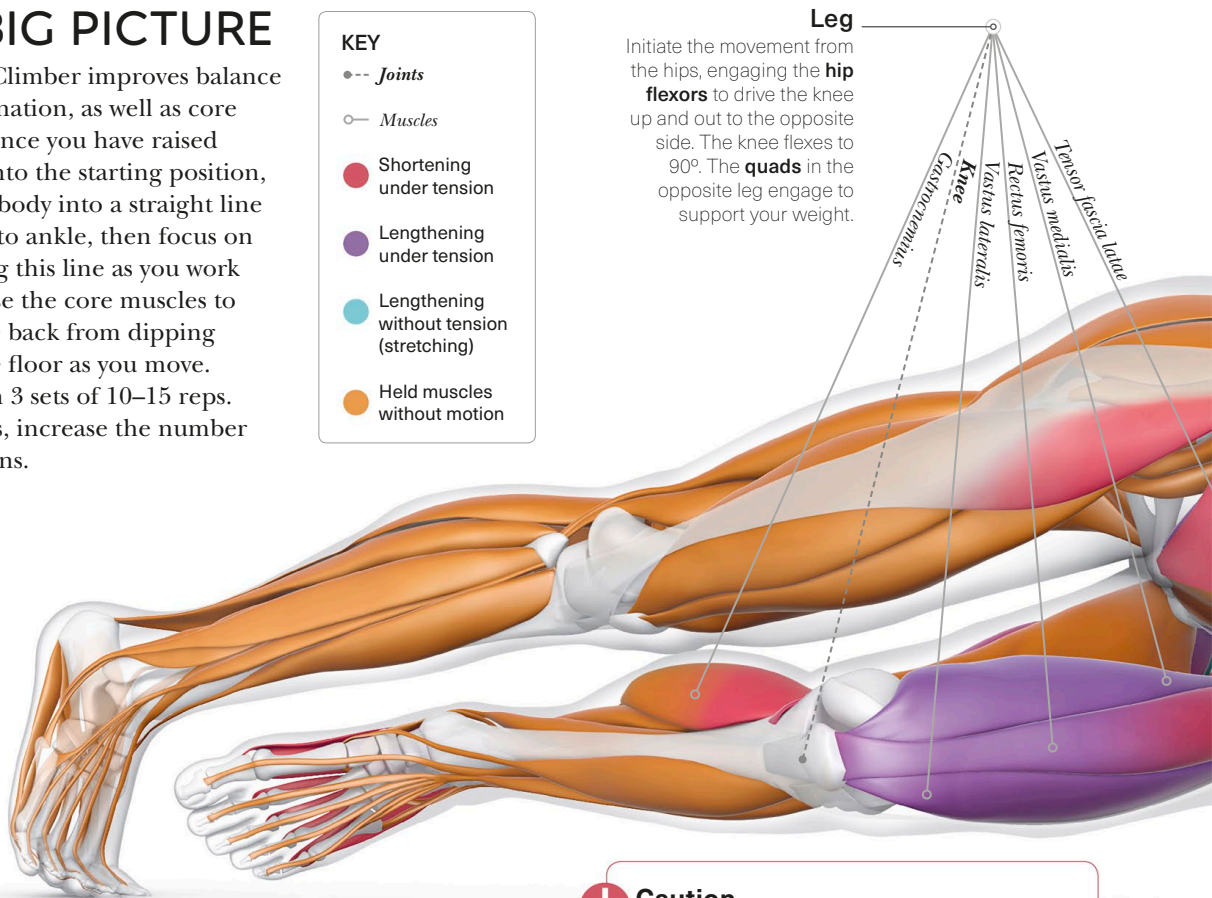
Mountain Climber improves balance and coordination, as well as core strength. Once you have raised your hips into the starting position, bring your body into a straight line from head to ankle, then focus on maintaining this line as you work the legs. Use the core muscles to prevent the back from dipping towards the floor as you move.

Perform 3 sets of 10–15 reps. To progress, increase the number of repetitions.

### KEY

- Joints
- Muscles
- Shortening under tension
- Lengthening under tension
- Lengthening without tension (stretching)
- Held muscles without motion

**Leg**  
Initiate the movement from the hips, engaging the **hip flexors** to drive the knee up and out to the opposite side. The knee flexes to 90°. The **quads** in the opposite leg engage to support your weight.



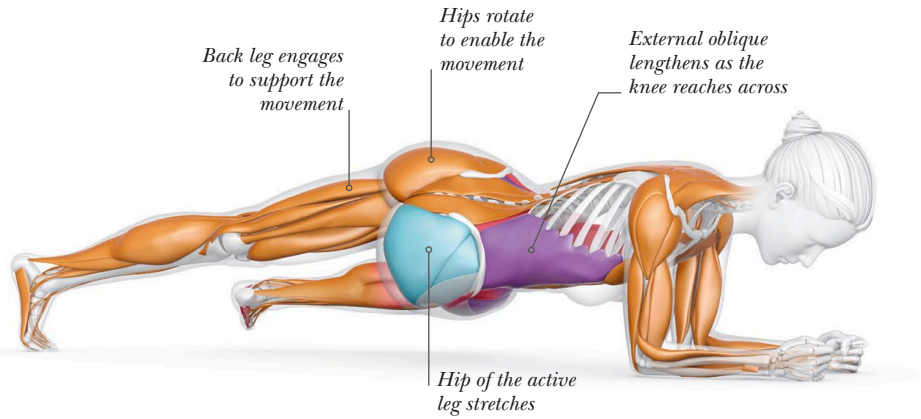
## Caution

If you have lower back pain while performing this exercise, consult a physiotherapist to ensure you are not aggravating your condition (see p.98).



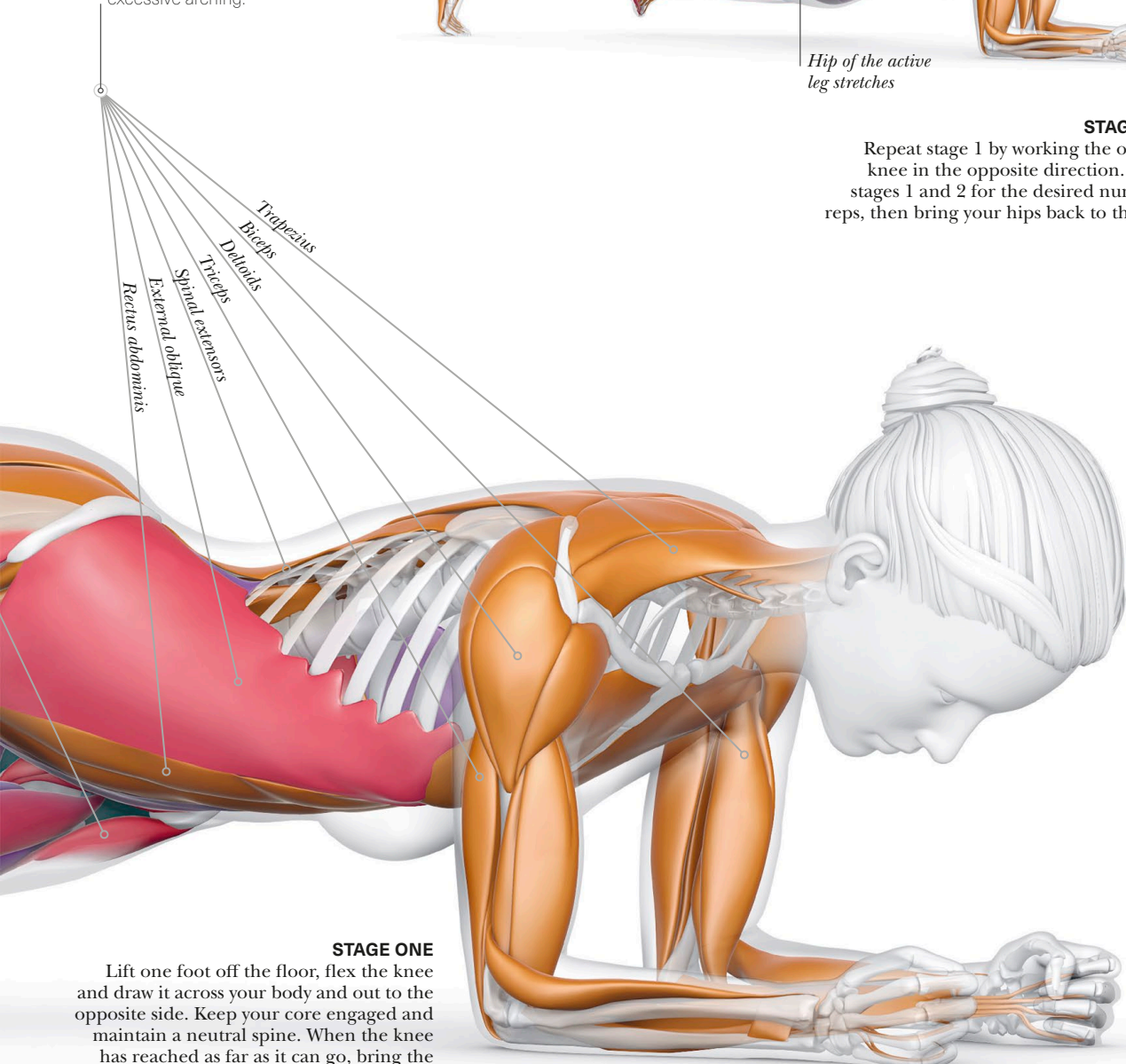
## Core and arms

The obliques drive the movement of the leg across the body, producing a rotation in the pelvis. The **external obliques** work concentrically on the side of the supporting leg, eccentrically on the other side. The arms engage to hold and stabilize the position. The **spinal extensors** in the lower back hold the spine in a neutral position to avoid excessive arching.



## STAGE TWO

Repeat stage 1 by working the opposite knee in the opposite direction. Repeat stages 1 and 2 for the desired number of reps, then bring your hips back to the floor.



## STAGE ONE

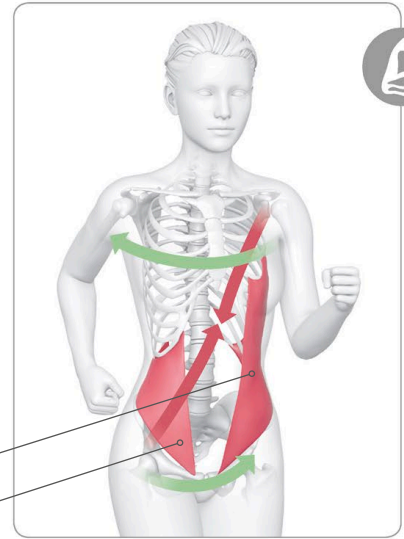
Lift one foot off the floor, flex the knee and draw it across your body and out to the opposite side. Keep your core engaged and maintain a neutral spine. When the knee has reached as far as it can go, bring the raised leg back to the starting position.

## » CLOSER LOOK

Front Plank with Rotation is an alternative to the static plank exercise and requires controlled rotation through the core while maintaining spinal stability. Ensure you focus the movement to the areas of the spine that produce rotation and not through the lumbar spine (see p.30).

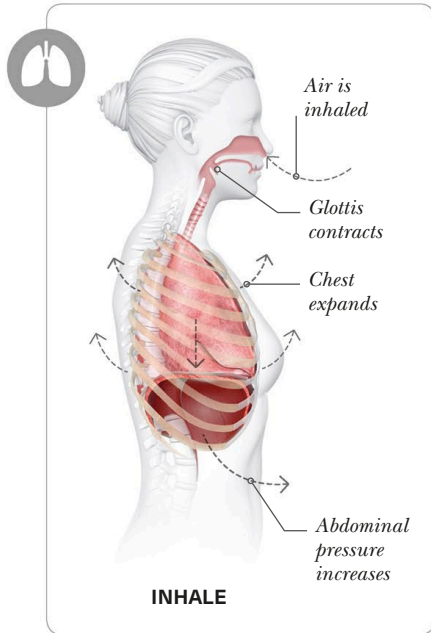
### Generating power in the upper body

It is important for runners to include in their drills exercises that target their upper body. As you run, you generate power with both your upper and lower and lower body, especially at greater speeds. Rotation of the torso can help to drive the lower limbs in the sagittal plane (see p.10) via the diagonal elastic support mechanism (see p.49). Alternating paired contractions of the external obliques and their opposite internal obliques helps to drive this rotation.



External obliques

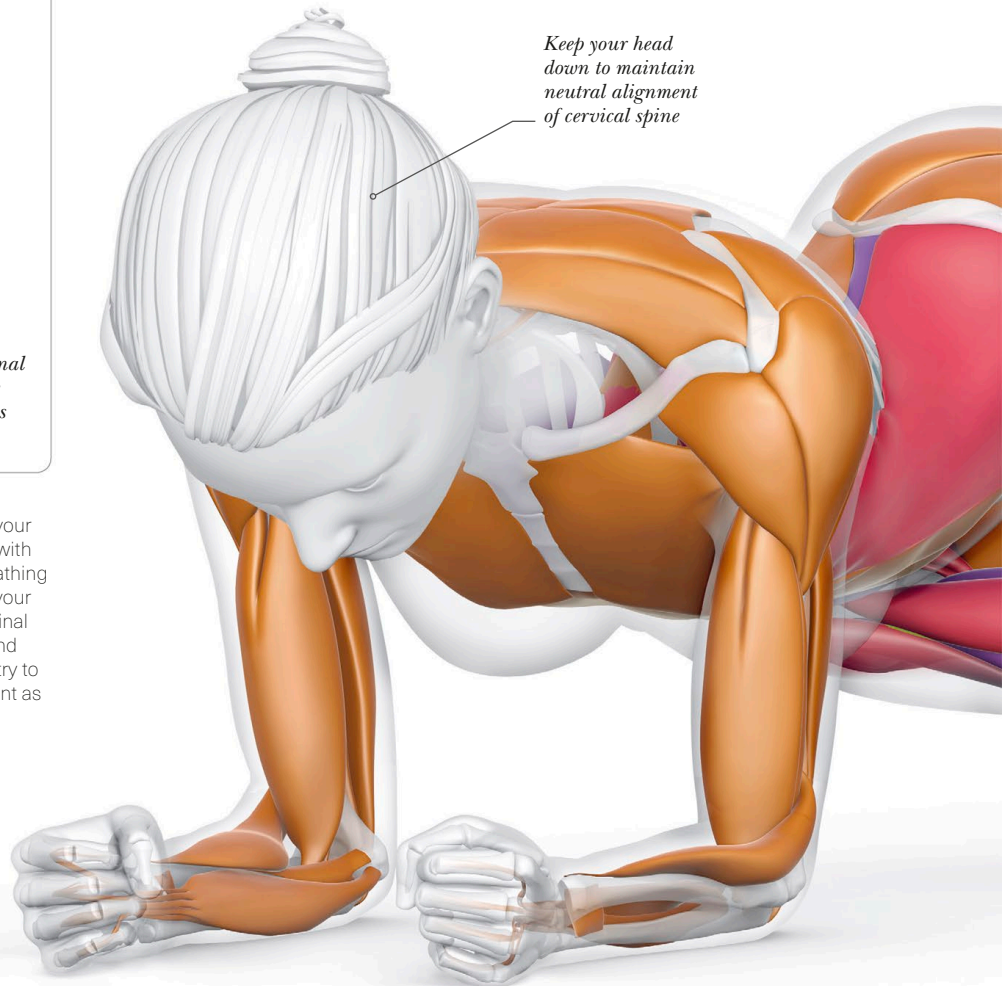
Internal obliques



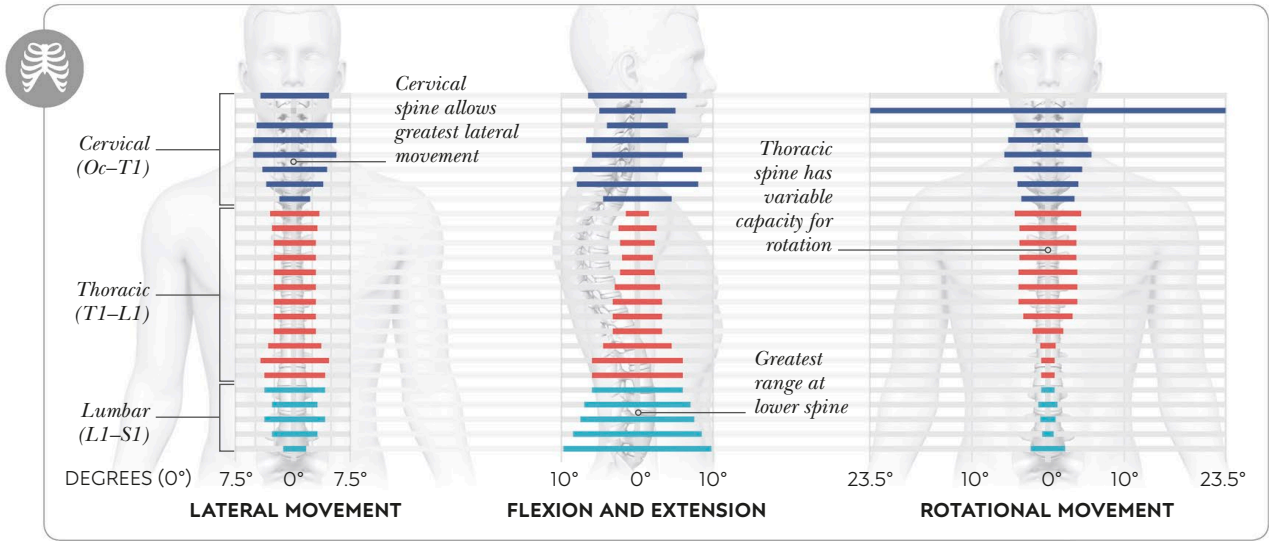
**INHALE**

### Keep breathing!

It is easy to stiffen your abs and hold your breath when performing Front Plank with Rotation, but it is important to keep breathing evenly and regularly. When you hold your breath, you increase the intra-abdominal pressure, which stiffens the spine and reduces your ability to rotate. Instead, try to breathe freely throughout the movement as you would if you were running.



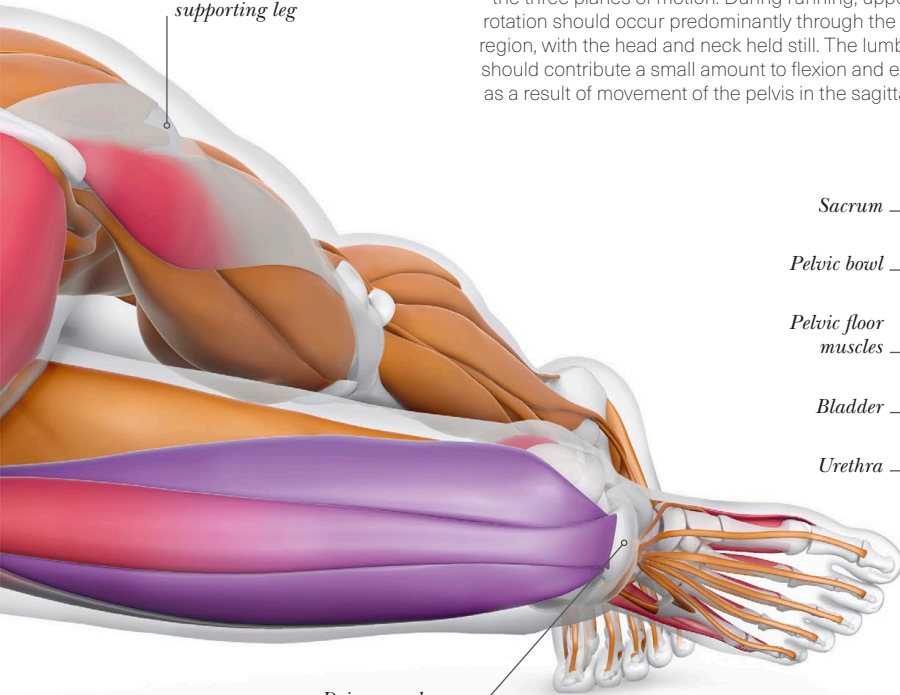
Keep your head down to maintain neutral alignment of cervical spine



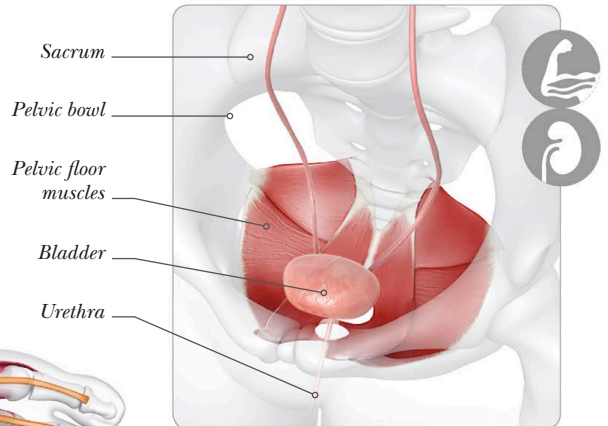
**Spinal motion**

In Front Plank with Rotation, the rotation is through the thorax, not the lower back. Different segments of your spine allow for specific movements (see p.30) through the three planes of motion. During running, upper body rotation should occur predominantly through the thoracic region, with the head and neck held still. The lumbar spine should contribute a small amount to flexion and extension as a result of movement of the pelvis in the sagittal plane.

*Pivot at hip joint of your supporting leg*



*Drive your knee up as you thread it through*



**Strengthening the pelvic floor**

Front Plank with Rotation strengthens the pelvic floor muscles. The physical demands of pregnancy and childbirth and the changes caused over time by hormonal shifts and gravity can affect the strength of the pelvic floor muscles in women, so that the impact from running results in bladder leakage. Recruiting pelvic floor and core muscles to strengthen this region can reduce the risk of incontinence.

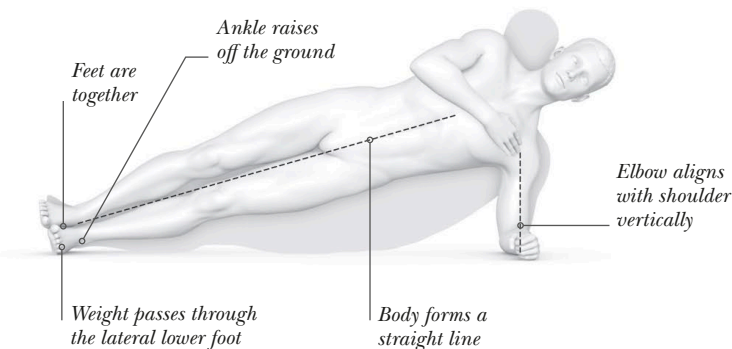
# SIDE PLANK WITH ROTATION

This exercise strengthens the core and can improve the efficiency of the diagonal elastic support mechanism (see p.49). The alternating rotational movements teach you to dissociate the chest and pelvis, which helps when running.

## THE BIG PICTURE

In this exercise, all the action takes place between the thoracic spine (see p.30) and the thighs. The knees and chest stay facing forwards throughout, and everything between them rotates. As your hips turn, do not turn at the chest and rotate the torso.

Perform 3 sets of 10–15 reps on each side, moving between the stages in a smooth, continuous movement.



### PREPARATORY STAGE

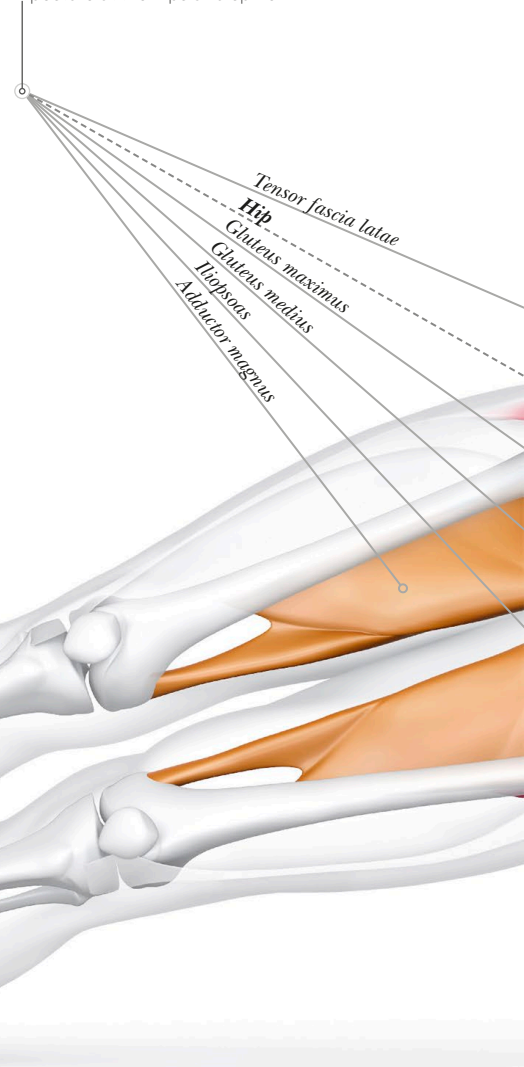
Lie down on one side with feet together and upper body propped up on your forearm. Fold the other arm across your chest. Raise your hips off the floor so your body forms a straight line.

### Caution

If you feel lower back pain during this exercise, consult a physiotherapist to ensure you are not aggravating your condition (see p.98).

### Hips

The **hip adductors** in the top leg, along with the **hip abductors** on the bottom leg, engage to keep the body off the ground and maintain a neutral posture at the hips and spine.



The obliques drive the rotational movement

Push forwards with the top hip to rotate the pelvis

Push the lower hip back

**STAGE TWO**

Rotate your hips down towards the floor. Again, keep the chest square and facing forwards. Repeat stages 1 and 2 for the desired number of reps, then bring your hips down to rest on the floor.

**Upper body**

As you rotate, imagine there is an axis passing from your crown through the centre of your body, and that the pelvis and hips rotate around that axis while your shoulders and chest remain square. The obliques drive the rotation here. The **external obliques** on the upper side work concentrically to rotate upwards, as do the **internal obliques** on the lower side. The external obliques on the lower side works eccentrically to enable the rotation. These muscles all contribute to the diagonal elastic support mechanism.

Spine  
Sternocleidomastoid  
Spinal extensors  
Rectus abdominis  
External obliques (upper side)  
External obliques (lower side)

**KEY**

- Joints
- Muscles
- Shortening under tension
- Lengthening under tension
- Lengthening without tension (stretching)
- Held muscles without motion

**STAGE ONE**

Turn your hips up towards the ceiling. Keep your chest square and facing forwards so that you move only the hips. Turn them only as far as they will go without rotating the chest and knees.

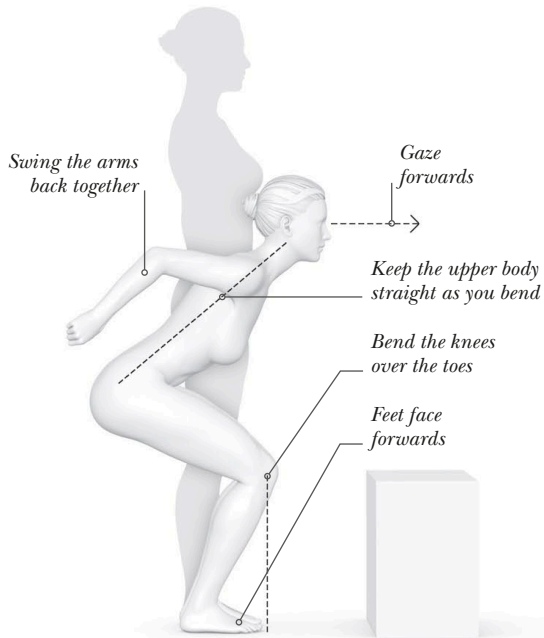
# BOX JUMP

**Box Jump improves the stiffness** of the leg springs (see p.98) and aids in the energy storage and release capacity of the glutes, quads, calves, and hip abductors. This improves control of knee and hip alignment during the loading phase of running (see p.66), aiding in performance as well as injury prevention.

## THE BIG PICTURE

You will need a box for this exercise. Select a 30-cm (12-in) high box if new to jumping drills. Bend the knees to roughly 45° for take off and landing.

Perform 3 sets of 10–12 reps. To progress, increase the height of the box and reduce to 3–4 sets of 6–8 reps.

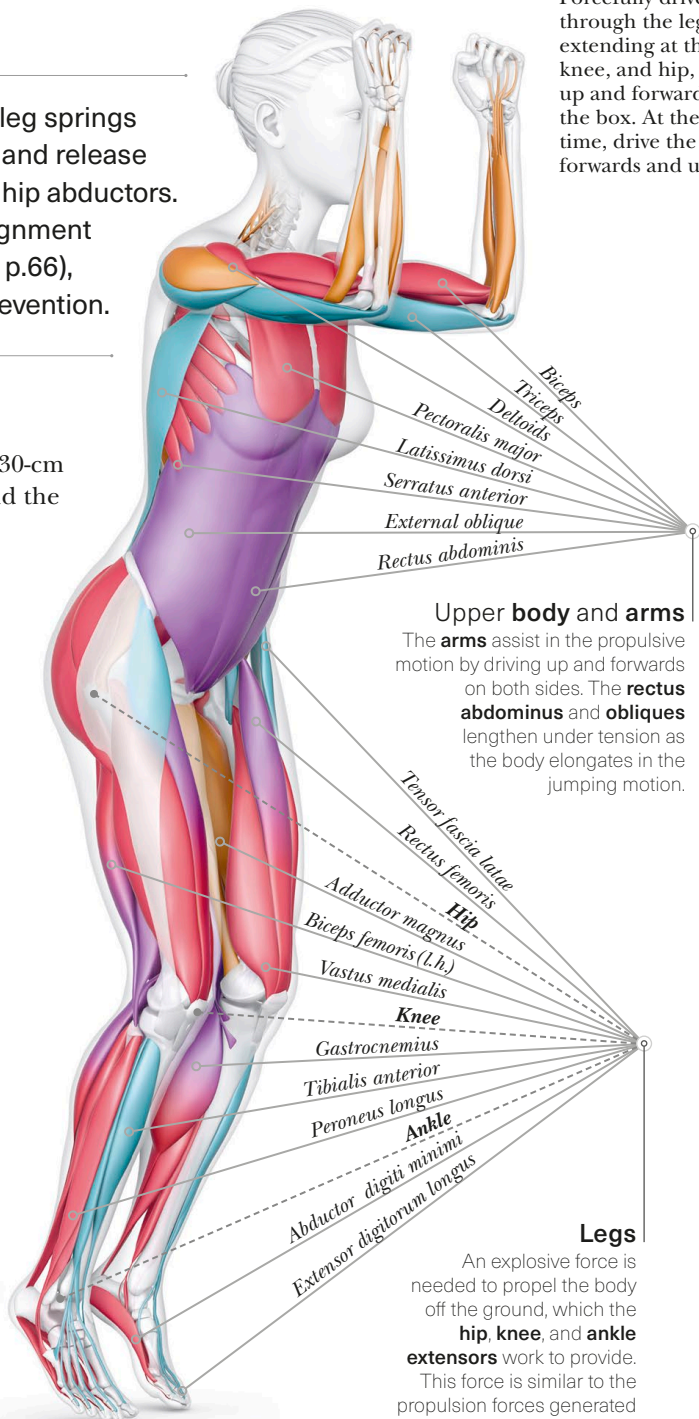


### STAGE ONE

Stand tall with the box in front of you, with feet hip-width apart and arms by your sides. Now bend the knees, ready to spring. Raise your elbows behind you, preparing to swing the arms forwards.

### STAGE TWO

Forcefully drive up through the legs, extending at the ankle, knee, and hip, to jump up and forwards onto the box. At the same time, drive the arms forwards and up.

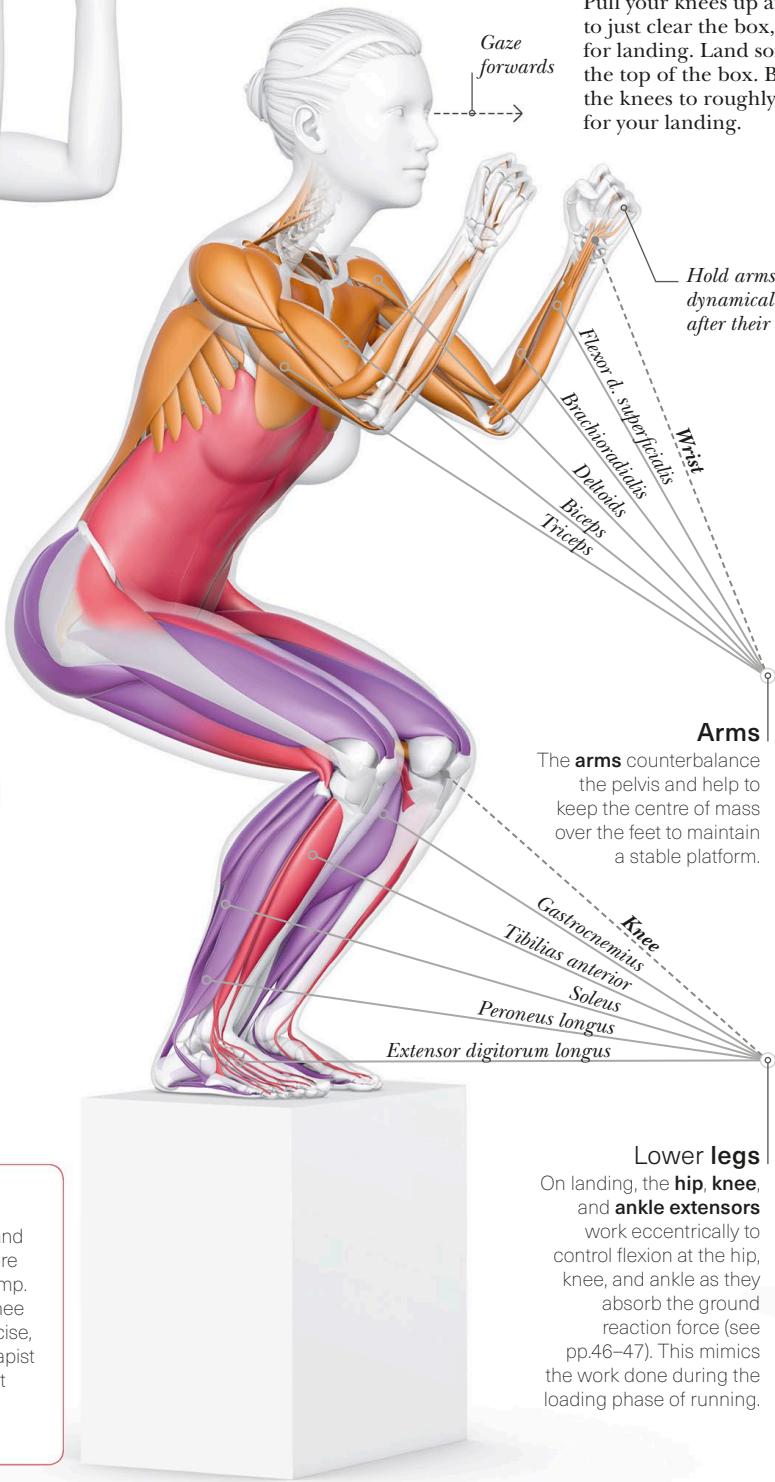
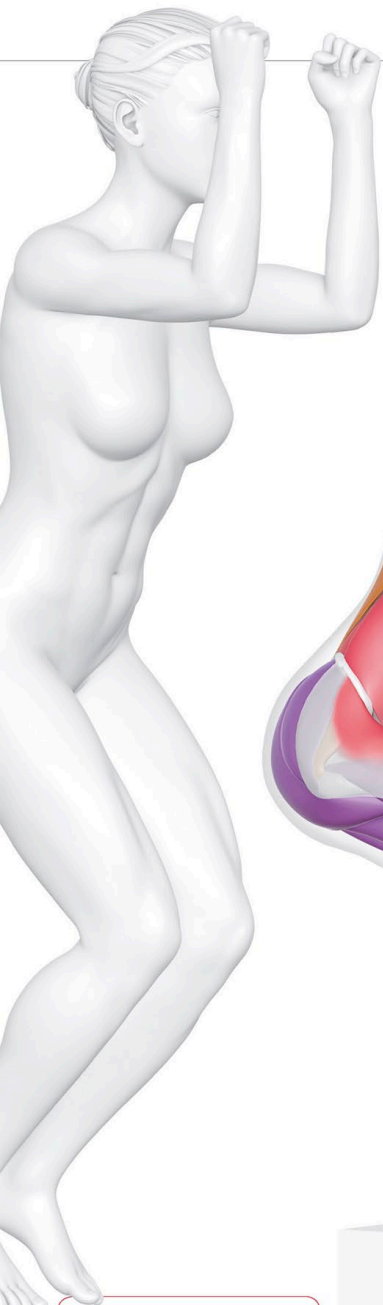


### Upper body and arms

The **arms** assist in the propulsive motion by driving up and forwards on both sides. The **rectus abdominus** and **obliques** lengthen under tension as the body elongates in the jumping motion.

### Legs

An explosive force is needed to propel the body off the ground, which the **hip, knee, and ankle extensors** work to provide. This force is similar to the propulsion forces generated during terminal stance in running (see p.68).



**STAGE THREE**

Pull your knees up and aim to just clear the box, ready for landing. Land softly on the top of the box. Bend the knees to roughly 45° for your landing.

**KEY**

- Joints
- Muscles
- Shortening under tension
- Lengthening under tension
- Lengthening without tension (stretching)
- Held muscles without motion

Gaze forwards

Hold arms up dynamically after their swing

Flexor d. superficialis  
Brachioradialis  
Deltoids  
Biceps  
Triceps

Wrist

**Arms**

The arms counterbalance the pelvis and help to keep the centre of mass over the feet to maintain a stable platform.

Hold arms in position

Stand tall

Weight distributed evenly across feet

**Lower legs**

On landing, the hip, knee, and ankle extensors work eccentrically to control flexion at the hip, knee, and ankle as they absorb the ground reaction force (see pp.46–47). This mimics the work done during the loading phase of running.

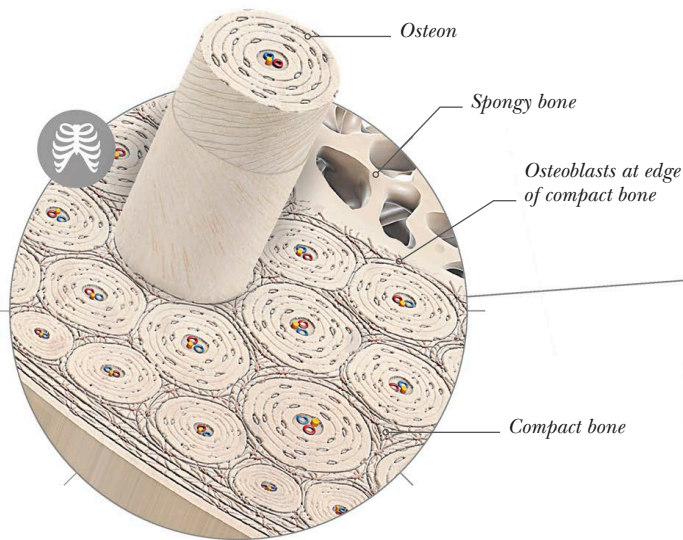
**STAGE FOUR**

Push up through the ankle, knee, and hip to stand tall on the box. Step down off the box and prepare to begin the next rep.

**! Caution**  
Master Step Down and Single Leg Hop before moving on to Box Jump. If you feel anterior knee pain during the exercise, consult a physiotherapist to ensure you are not aggravating your condition (see p.98).

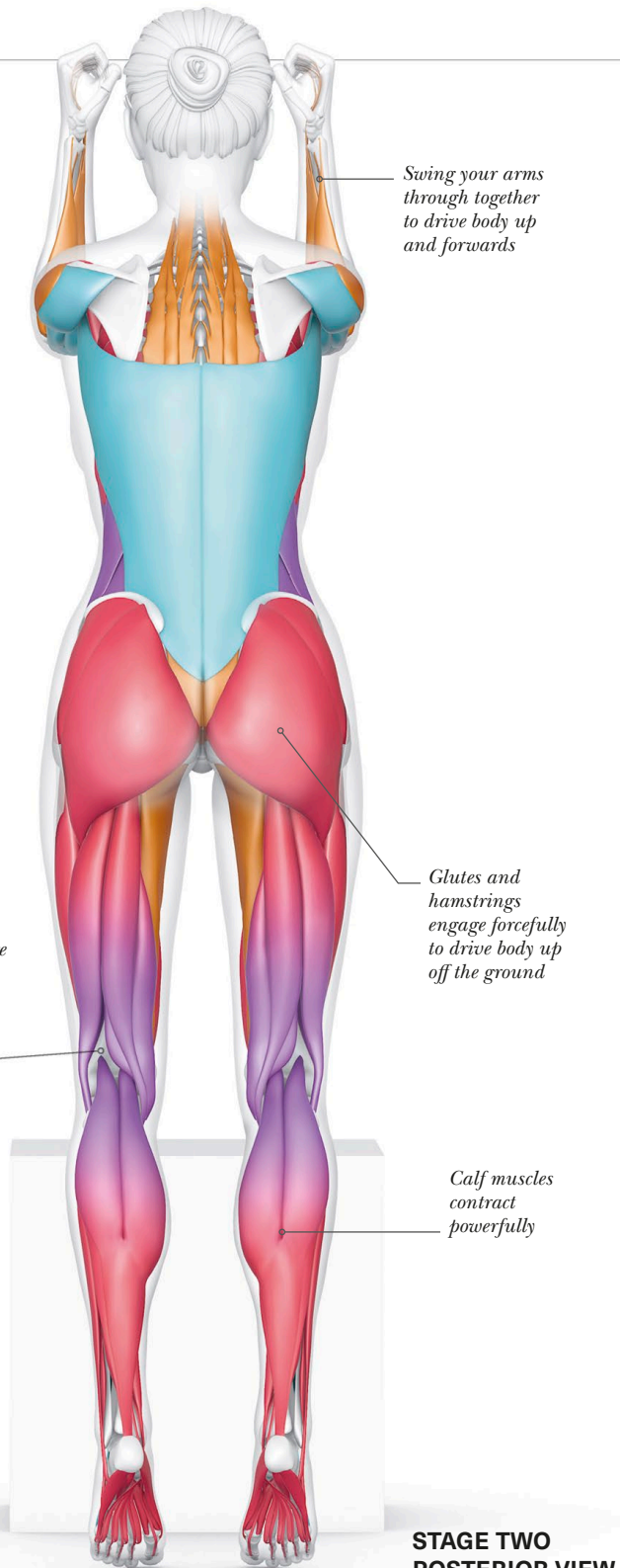
## » CLOSER LOOK

Box Jump is an advanced exercise that develops power through the lower-limb extensor muscles, while also demanding control when landing to avoid high impacts. The high loads developed help to make the bones stronger and prevent bone stress injuries from the repetitive loading in running. They also expose the lower limb muscles to greater forces, which can build capacity in these muscles beyond what can be achieved with running alone. As with the main exercise, the variations shown here are advanced exercises, so the same cautions apply (see p.151).



### Strengthening the bones

Bones, like other tissues in the body, increase in strength in response to loading. However, studies have shown that long-distance running does not decrease the risk for stress fracture, because the cyclical low-strain nature of running is not sufficient to induce bone strengthening. Exercises that rapidly subject the body to high loads, such as hopping or jumping off a box (see opposite) are recommended to stiffen bone and reduce stress fracture risk.



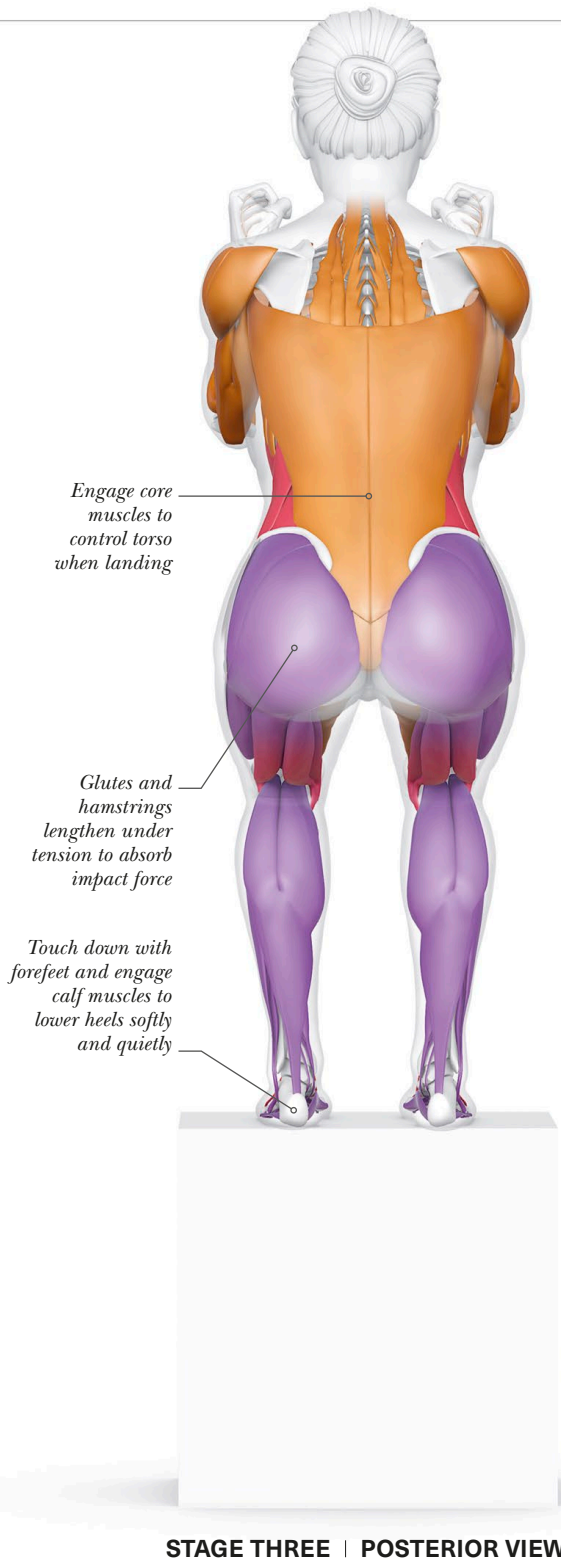
*Swing your arms through together to drive body up and forwards*

*Glutes and hamstrings engage forcefully to drive body up off the ground*

*Calf muscles contract powerfully*

**STAGE TWO POSTERIOR VIEW**



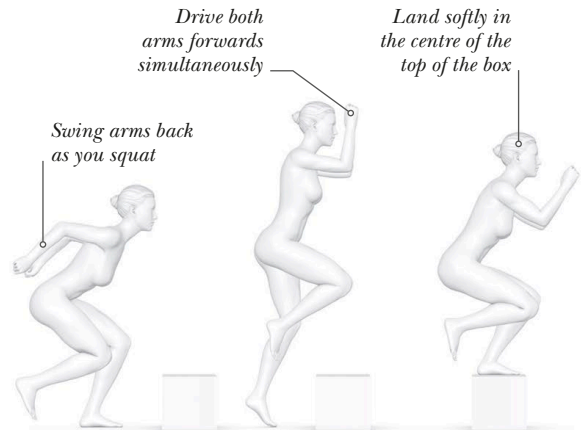


STAGE THREE | POSTERIOR VIEW

## BOX JUMP PROGRESSION

**Single Leg Box Jump**

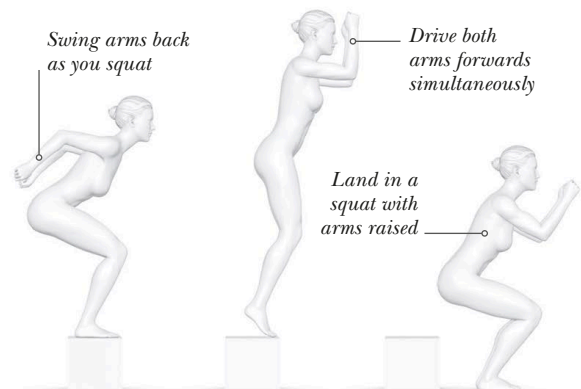
Stand tall behind the box. Shift your weight onto the focus leg and bend your other knee to 90°. Maintaining a level pelvis, slowly bend the focus knee to approximately 45°, then forcefully drive up, extending at the ankle, knee, and hip, hopping up and forwards onto the box. Land on the box and push up through the ankle, knee, and hip to stand tall. Step down off the box. Use a 30-cm (12-in) high box and perform 3 sets of 10–12 reps. To progress, use a higher box and reduce to 3–4 sets of 6–8 reps.



## BOX JUMP VARIATION

**Jumping off the box**

Box Jump focusses on the propulsive phase of running (see p.68). Reverse it to mimic the demands of the loading phase (see p.66). Stand tall on the box. Bend your knees and hips, then jump up off the box, and land softly and quietly, bending into a squat to absorb the impact. Perform 3 sets of 10–12 reps. To progress the exercise, add weight (see p.99) and reduce to 3 sets of 6–8 reps, then move on to performing on one leg.



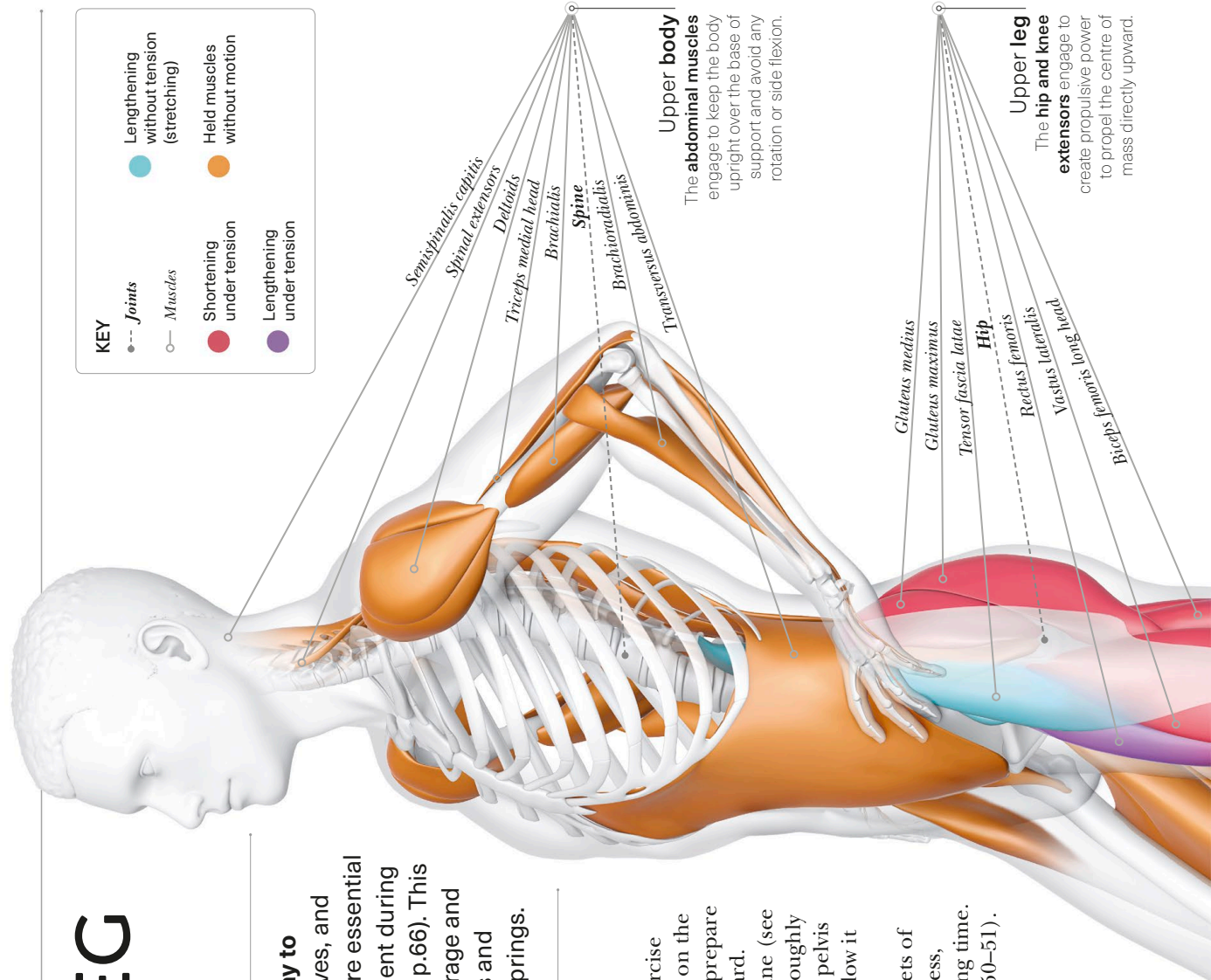
# SINGLE LEG HOP

**Hopping on one leg is a great way to strengthen** the glutes, quads, calves, and Achilles tendon. These muscles are essential in controlling knee and hip alignment during the loading phase of running (see p.66). This exercise increases the energy storage and release capacity of these muscles and improves the stiffness of the leg springs.

## THE BIG PICTURE

Place a target on the floor for this exercise (try taping a cross to the floor). Focus on the position of the stance-leg knee as you prepare to hop – do not allow it to buckle inward. Maintain its position in the frontal plane (see p.10) as you squat. Bend the knee to roughly 45° for take off and landing. Keep the pelvis level throughout the jump – do not allow it to tilt forwards.

If new to this exercise, perform 3 sets of 30-second reps on each side. To progress, increase the weight and/or the hopping time. Then progress to Box Jump (see pp.150–51).

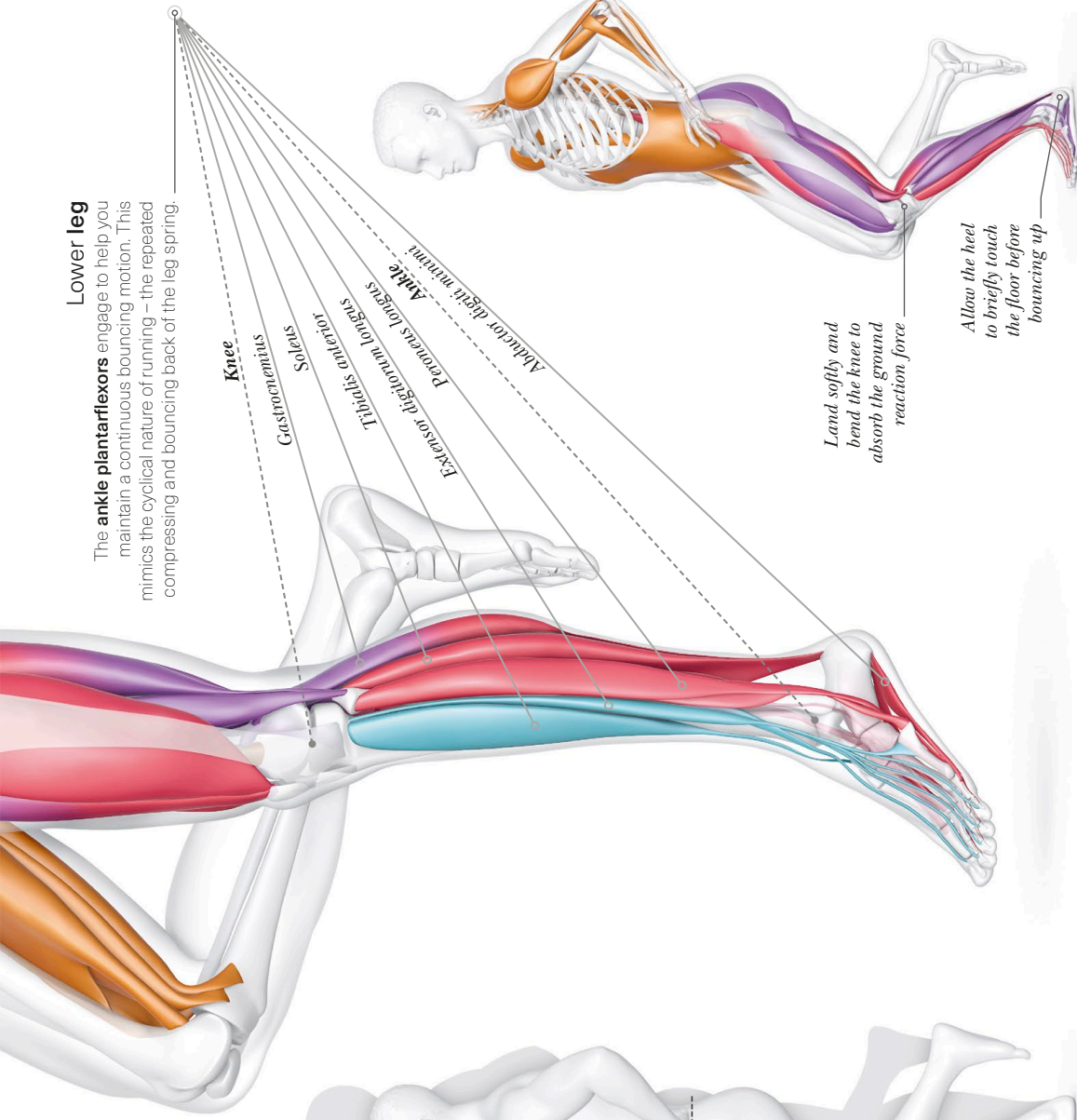


## Caution

If you have anterior knee pain during this exercise, consult a physiotherapist to ensure you are not aggravating your condition (see p.98).

## Lower leg

The **ankle plantarflexors** engage to help you maintain a continuous bouncing motion. This mimics the cyclical nature of running – the repeated compressing and bouncing back of the leg spring.



Land softly and bend the knee to absorb the ground reaction force

Allow the heel to briefly touch the floor before bouncing up

## PREPARATORY STAGE

Stand tall with the foot of the focus leg on the target and hands on hips. Shift your weight into the focus leg, then bend the other knee to 90° and raise the foot off the floor. Maintaining a level pelvis, slowly bend the focus-leg knee to roughly 45°.

## STAGE ONE

Forcefully push up through the focus leg, extending at the ankle, knee, and hip to hop straight up into the air.

## STAGE TWO

Aim to land on the middle of the target and bend your knee to roughly 45° as you absorb the impact forces through your ankle, knee, and hip. Push straight up into the next hop. Aim to minimize the time spent on the ground.



# HOW TO TRAIN

---

**Training smarter by targeting individual strengths and needs** can take you to new levels of performance. In this chapter, we provide all the information you need to make your training show – and keep showing – solid results. We share tools to help you draw up bespoke training plans, and also provide a range of programmes that can guide you, session by session, from couch all the way to advanced marathoning.



# WHY TRAIN?

**The simplicity of running** is one its greatest pleasures. You can pull on a pair of trainers, head out the door, and just go. However, using a structured, goal-orientated training plan can improve performance, reduce injury risk, and make running even more enjoyable. It is worth considering the benefits.



## AVOID INJURY

Since most running-related injuries result from overtraining, planning your workouts is a key factor in preventing injury. A training plan not only allows you to schedule the intensity of your workouts, it also helps you build in adequate time for recovery after long or hard runs. Incorporating easy days or weeks into your schedule will help your body to adapt to the stresses of training, and reduce the likelihood of getting injured. The drills, warm-ups, and stretches that are part of a structured workout also help to prevent injury.



## PERSONALIZE

Structuring and planning your training allows you to discover what works for you as an individual. When you follow a training programme, you will have a record of the workouts you have done, which makes it easier to look back at what worked well for you and what did not. You can use this knowledge to make suitable adjustments to your training programmes in the future.



## IMPROVE YOUR FORM

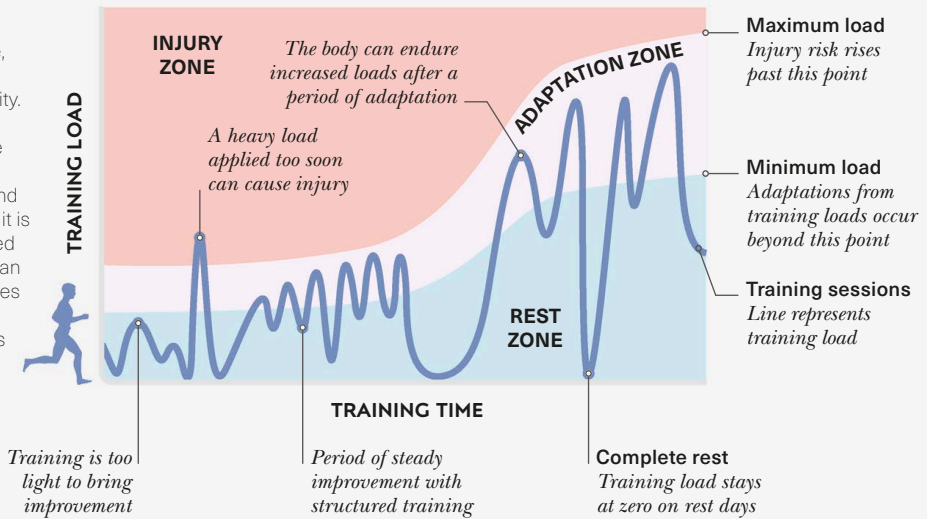
Consciously practising your running form (see pp.74–75) will bring improvements and help you maintain good form even when running at a fast pace or if fatigued. When practised with drills (see pp.84–89), your form becomes more natural and relaxed, which leads to better running economy (see p.165). Additionally, as you become fitter through structured training, your body makes beneficial adaptations that increase your lactate threshold, your  $VO_2$  max, and endurance.

## BENEFITS OF TRAINING



## Training to adapt

To improve your performance, a training plan introduces workouts of increasing intensity. This places your body under the stress it needs to promote physical adaptations such as increased lactate threshold and VO<sub>2</sub> max (see p.37). However, it is important to balance increased load with rest and repair, and an efficient training plan schedules in recovery time. This chart illustrates the broad principles of applying training load.



## COMPETE

If you want to race and improve your times, you will have a much better chance of success if you follow a structured programme to target a specific race. Targeted workouts can help develop your speed and teach you to pace yourself, while planning your training in phases will prepare you to perform at your peak on the day.



## STAY MOTIVATED

It can be difficult to stay motivated to run without a reason to keep striving. Following a training programme provides you with a purpose for every workout, whether easy or hard. It gives you a reason to run at a specific pace, to run a specific distance, and to enjoy your easy runs as well. Many of us fall into a rut or reach a plateau if we do not have a way to monitor our progress; a training programme helps you to notice improvement, which is motivating in itself.



## ADD VARIETY

A good training plan will include workouts that vary in pace and distance, so there are fast, slow, short, and long runs. When you engage in varied, purposeful training and progressively higher training loads over time, your running form, speed, and fitness improves while keeping training varied and engaging.

# YOUR TRAINING GOALS

**Before you begin a training programme,** first consider what you want to achieve through training. Whether you are a complete beginner, keen to train for your first race, or an experienced runner who wants to take their training to the next level, it is useful to define some goals.

## NEW TO RUNNING

If you are new to running or returning to it, setting a goal time or distance will give you something to work toward and measure your progress against. To achieve your goal, you will also need to attain a minimum level of fitness.

### ACHIEVABLE GOALS

It is important to keep your first goals realistic, for example running continuously for 5 km, or for 30

minutes. If your eventual goals are ambitious, such as completing your first marathon, break them down into a series of targets, or into A, B, and C goals to organize your priorities.

### DEVELOPING FITNESS

Even if your ultimate goal is to run a marathon, your first objective should be to build up to a minimum base of aerobic and anaerobic

fitness (see below). Before starting a structured training programme for the first time, you should be capable of doing short, hard sprints and easy continuous running over longer distances. When you can do both of these workout types, you can progress towards race-specific training. If you have not run before, the Beginner 5 km walk-run programme (see pp.190–191) is a good place to start.

#### BUILDING A BASE

Before progressing to workout types that are more race-specific, establish a base level of aerobic and anaerobic fitness with easy continuous running (see p.180) and sprints (see p.188). The examples here show the workouts you should be able to complete before starting the Beginner 10 km programme (see pp.192–193).

#### Aerobic base

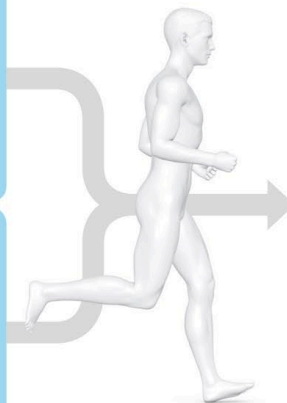
Practise continuous running until you can complete these three workouts per week:

- two 3-km runs
- one 5-km run

#### Anaerobic base

Practise strides (see p.87) until you can comfortably perform this workout 2–3 times per week:

- 4 repetitions of 30-second strides alternated with 1 minute walk



#### Race-specific training

After you have established a base of fitness, you can start using a structured training programme, which will include workouts such as:

- Longer easy continuous runs (see p.180)
- Fast continuous runs (see pp.181–183)
- Interval training (see pp.184–184)
- Hill training (see p.186)

**FOUNDATION  
FITNESS**

**TRAINING  
FORM**



# TRAINING FOR A RACE

Once you have chosen a goal race distance, set a realistic time frame for reaching it, taking your current level of fitness into account.

## INCREASING LOAD

When training for a race, your goals are to build volume by increasing the overall distance you run, and to improve speed by increasing the intensity of your workouts.

Aim to increase your training load by 10–15 per cent per week. The exact amount will depend on factors such as your training history and resilience, so it is important to keep monitoring your training load (see pp.168–169). Your highest loads should be undertaken 3–4 weeks prior to race day, or

2–3 weeks prior for shorter races. After this point, you should “taper”, or decrease training enough to ensure your body is fresh and ready to perform on race day.

## PLANNING FOR RECOVERY

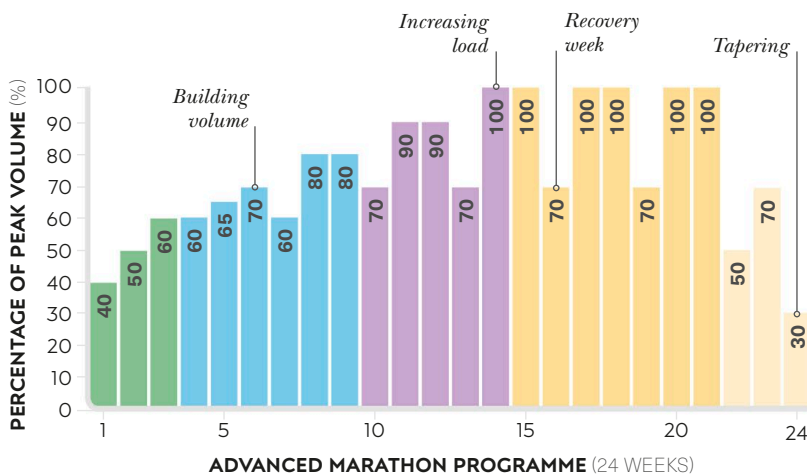
Following a race, give your body a period of active recovery by doing low-impact cross training (see p.187) before preparing for another race. If you intend to run several races throughout the year, design a seasonal plan so that you peak for the important races and do not overreach. For complete recovery, it is also vital to have down periods during the year, or times when you focus on different types of running or alternative activities altogether.

## TRAINING VOLUME

This graph shows the training volume per week in the Advanced Marathon training programme (see pp.206–209). As this example shows, there should be periods of building and periods of recovery in every training plan.

### PHASE OF PROGRAMME (SEE P.177)

- Introduction
- Base-building
- Support
- Race-specific
- Taper



# ADVANCING YOUR TRAINING

You can advance your training by increasing the distance or the intensity of your workouts, or both.

As you progress, you will find that you can do the same training but with less effort, which is a sign of improved running economy (see p.165) and should result in improved race performance. Keep track of your training (see pp.168–169) and adjust your targets as you see improvements, or if your workouts feel less challenging.

## KEEPING UP MOMENTUM

Training usually follows a step-like progression. Increasing your training load will take effort at first, but as you become accustomed to it, your body will make physical adaptations (see p.159). Maintain your training level at a plateau until your body has absorbed the training load, then increase it once again.

## ADDRESSING WEAKNESSES

Make sure to include all workout types (see pp.180–186) in your training plan. We tend to avoid workouts that address our weaknesses and are drawn to those that reveal our strengths. This becomes a self-fulfilling prophecy. It is a good idea to work on your weaknesses early in a training plan, so that you are not scrambling to address a limitation in the weeks before a race.

# ASSESSING YOUR FITNESS

**It is important to assess** your fitness at the beginning of a training regimen and then monitor its improvement as you continue. Fitness is measured by the level of intensity at which you can exercise, and determines the appropriate level of workout for you. There are several methods you can use to measure intensity.

## ! Health check

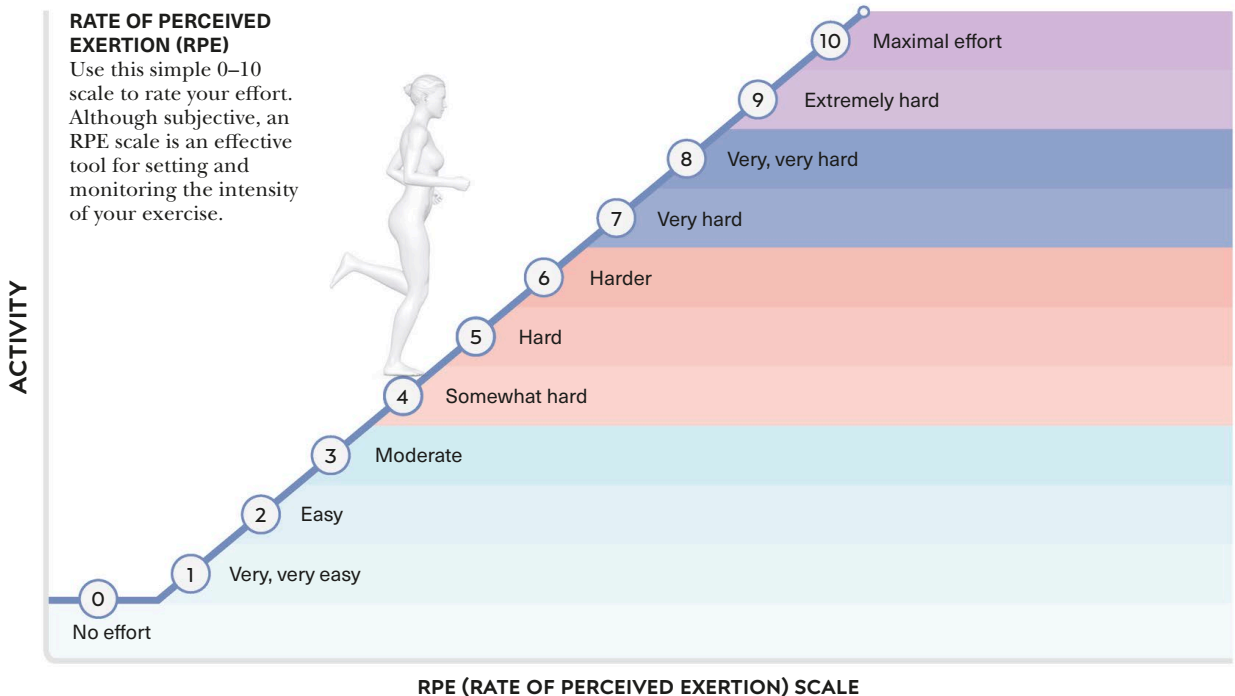
Get a health check-up if you are new to running or returning to it, especially if you have high blood pressure, diabetes, or heart or kidney disease. Also consult your physician if you have symptoms such as pain in the neck, chest, jaw, or arms; shortness of breath; dizziness or faintness; ankle swelling; or pain not relieved by rest.

## MONITORING EXERTION

**While high-tech equipment can measure intensity, simply rating exertion based on how you feel is proven to be highly effective.**

The subjective effort you perceive as you exercise is directly related to how hard your heart and aerobic

respiratory system are working. The fitter you are, the more intensely you can exercise at a low rate of perceived exertion (RPE). You should plan and monitor intensity on every run to ensure you train at the correct level and allow for adequate recovery.



# MONITORING YOUR HEART RATE

Heart rate increases in a linear relationship with increasing effort, making it a good measure of exercise intensity.

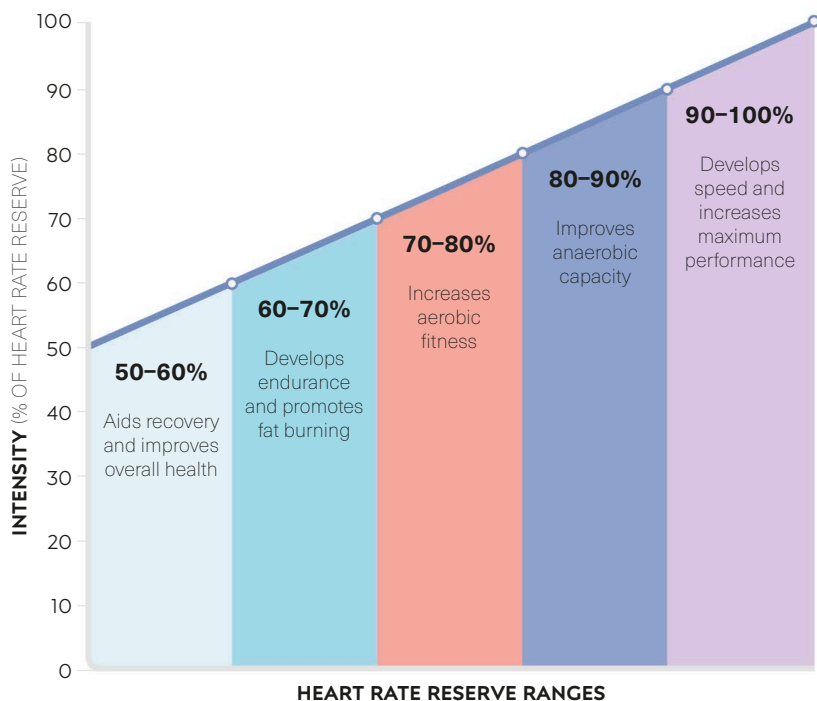
Heart rate can indicate fitness if you track it over time. For example, if your pace at a given heart rate increases, it indicates that the pace is no longer as stressful as it once was. However, heart rate can be affected by fatigue, heat, terrain, and other variables, so use RPE alongside it during workouts.

## HEART RATE IN TRAINING

During workouts, you can use a wrist-worn or chest strap heart rate monitor to measure "heart rate reserve" (HRR) – this is the range available to you for exercise, and is the difference between your

resting heart rate (RHR) and your maximum heart rate (see right). A higher resting heart rate can alert you to overtraining. The chart below shows the benefits of running at different percentages of heart rate reserve. Use the chart and formula below to calculate a target heart rate for a workout: for example, if your heart rate reserve is 110, resting heart rate is 70, and your desired workout intensity is 85 per cent of heart rate reserve,  $(110 \times 0.85) + 70$  gives you a target heart rate of 163.5.

$$\left( \text{HRR} \times \text{PERCENTAGE OF INTENSITY} \right) + \text{RHR} = \text{TARGET HEART RATE}$$



## Heart rate calculations

The heart is a muscle that becomes stronger with training. The lower your resting heart rate, the more efficient your heart is, and the fitter you are. Maximum heart rate can help you to monitor exertion.

### CALCULATING YOUR RESTING HEART RATE

Before you get out of bed in the morning, take your pulse. Record this for several days to get a reliable average reading.

$$\text{RESTING BEATS IN 10 SECONDS} \times 6$$

$$= \text{RESTING HEART RATE (RHR)}$$

### CALCULATING YOUR MAXIMUM HEART RATE

The formula below provides an easy way to calculate your maximum heart rate. However, to account for your genetics and fitness level, a treadmill test (see p.167) is more accurate.

$$220 - \text{YOUR AGE}$$

$$= \text{MAXIMUM HEART RATE (MHR)}$$

### CALCULATING YOUR HEART RATE RESERVE

To find out your heart rate reserve, use this simple subtraction below. Your heart rate reserve may increase as your fitness improves.

$$\text{MHR} - \text{RHR}$$

$$= \text{HEART RATE RESERVE (HRR)}$$



### Running power

You can buy wearable technology that estimates “running power” as a metric of intensity, but these have limitations. “Power” is used in cycling to calculate effort by measuring the mechanical power output of the legs. However, unlike in cycling, the relationship between mechanical power and metabolic energy consumption changes with conditions in running. For example, as you run uphill, the contribution of elastic energy from tendons decreases; on downhill runs, your muscles do less push-off and perform a braking action as you descend. Running power meters are not able to measure these changes reliably, because they use estimates instead of true power readings.

## MONITORING PACE

**The pace of your workout is another measure of intensity, since increasing your speed involves increasing your effort.**

A training programme prescribes workouts at different goal paces, to improve body systems such as aerobic efficiency and lactate clearance. A goal pace is the estimated speed in minutes per km or mile you must run to achieve a goal race time. Paces for longer distances are relatively slower than for short ones, because you must sustain them for longer. Doing workouts at different paces reveals your strengths and weaknesses. For example, if you can achieve a 5-km pace workout but struggle

with a half marathon-pace workout, this suggests you need to improve your endurance.

### CALCULATING PACES

Online calculators can help you work out your goal paces over a range of distances (and are fairly accurate). They work by extrapolating from a recent race time or goal time you are training to achieve, or your average time over a certain distance. During a workout, using a GPS device is the easiest way to measure your pace, but you can also feel your pace through effort (see opposite).

The chart below shows paces based on sample marathon goal times for different runners.

#### Pace calculator

	BEGINNER	IMPROVING RUNNER	ADVANCED RUNNER	ELITE RUNNER
<b>MARATHON GOAL TIME</b>	<b>04:30:00</b>	<b>03:45:00</b>	<b>03:00:00</b>	<b>WORLD RECORD 02:01:39</b>
Marathon pace	6:24/km	5:20/km	4:16/km	2:53/km
Half marathon pace	6:05/km	5:04/km	4:03/km	2:44/km
Lactate threshold pace	5:46/km	4:53/km	3:58/km	2:45/km
10-km pace	5:45/km	4:47/km	3:49/km	2:35/km
5-km pace	5:32/km	4:37/km	3:41/km	2:29/km
3-km pace	5:15/km	4:22/km	3:30/km	2:22/km
1500-m pace	4:55/km	4:06/km	3:16/km	2:12/km
800-m pace	4:28/km	3:43/km	2:59/km	2:01/km

# COMPARING RPE, HEART RATE, AND PACE

Since they all measure effort, you can compare rate of perceived exertion (RPE), heart rate, and pace to assess your day-to-day and long-term fitness.

The relationship between RPE, heart rate, and pace is relative, since one runner's pace at RPE 4 will be different from another's. By keeping a record of your RPE, average heart rate, and average pace for each workout, you can learn what effort corresponds to a specific pace, for example what 4:00 min/km or your 10-km pace feels like, and what heart rate range these paces fall into. However,

expect regular fluctuations in pace; if you are ill, fatigued, or stressed, your workout will feel harder.

Fitness will improve your pace at a particular heart rate or RPE score, or the pace will feel easier and result in a lower heart rate. If a pace feels harder and your heart rate increases, this can be a sign of fatigue or overtraining.

### RPE AND PACE

The table shows approximate RPE scores for a range of paces. Since elite runners can run half marathon and 10 km paces harder and faster than recreational runners, this is reflected in the equivalent RPE.

RPE-pace equivalents		
RPE	DESCRIPTOR	PACE/EFFORT
0	No effort	Sedentary
1	Very, very easy	Walking
2	Easy	Easy pace
3	Moderate	Marathon pace/half marathon pace (recreational)
4	Somewhat hard	Half marathon pace (elite)/lactate threshold pace/10-km pace (recreational)
5	Hard	10-km pace (elite)
6	Harder	5-km pace
7	Very hard	3-km pace
8	Very, very hard	1500-m pace
9	Extremely hard	800-m pace
10	Maximal effort	Sprinting/final exertion at the end of a race



### Running economy

The more economically a runner moves, the less oxygen they use at a given speed. A number of variables affect running economy, including genetics, environmental conditions, weight of clothing and shoes, fitness levels, and biomechanics. You can modify these last two factors through training, which is why improving your fitness and your running form (see pp.74–75) helps you to run more efficiently at your goal pace.



#### Vertical oscillation (see p.71)

*Limiting your upward “bounce” improves running economy*

#### Step frequency (see p.70)

*Increasing step frequency (cadence) reduces vertical oscillation*

#### Footstrike (see p.72)

*Efficient footstrikes absorb and transfer energy to push off*

### BIOMECHANICAL VARIABLES

# FITNESS TESTS

Conducting fitness tests allows you to establish goals at the beginning of your training programme, and monitor improvements. To track your progress, you can repeat these tests, but the best way to measure your gains is to compete in a race. Lactate threshold (see pp.34–35) and  $VO_2$  max (see p.37) are both good measures of fitness, which you can establish using one of the following field tests.



## Calculating a benchmark LT pace

Although actual lactate threshold can vary from day to day, it is useful to use a benchmark LT pace for workouts where you need to run relative to LT pace, for example 15 sec/km slower than LT pace. You can generate an estimated LT pace by entering a recent race result into an online pace calculator (see p.164), or perform the following 30-minute time trial.

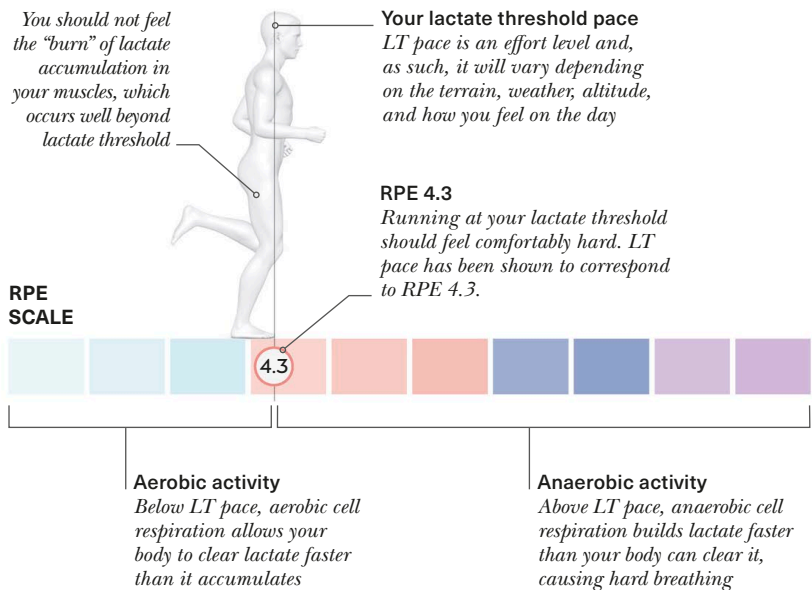
After a proper warm-up, gradually increase your pace to a level that is the fastest you can maintain for the full 30 minutes, then start the stopwatch. Measure your pace with a GPS device, or run on a treadmill or a measured track and calculate how far you run during the 30 minutes. Your current LT pace is 30 minutes divided by your total distance run. For example, if you run 8 km in 30 minutes, your average LT pace is 3:45 min/km.

## Determining lactate threshold pace

Your lactate threshold (LT) pace is the highest possible speed you can run without causing an accumulation of blood lactate in your muscles. Training at LT pace raises this threshold, and your body adapts to perform aerobic cell respiration (see pp.34–35), which clears lactate, at faster paces.

Lactate threshold pace should stay just within the aerobic range of activity, which should feel like a

“comfortably hard” pace that you could sustain for around 1 hour in race conditions (LT pace is also called 1-hour race pace). In order to train at your LT pace, you need to be able to recognize and monitor it so you can track improvements over time. Lactate threshold can be measured in a laboratory, but another simple way is to use the RPE scale (see p.162).



### RPE AND LACTATE THRESHOLD

Learn to feel when you are running at LT pace. It is a specific effort level reached by running as fast as you can without having to breathe hard. If you are breathing too hard, slow down.

# 6699

*The 0–10 RPE scale has a **direct and reliable relationship** with the lactate threshold and can be used to judge LT pace on any run*

## VO<sub>2</sub> max: treadmill test

This method to test VO<sub>2</sub> max requires you to run on a treadmill at a constant speed while the slope increases at 1-minute intervals, until you can no longer keep the pace. You will be pushing your body to its limits, so have an assistant adjust the treadmill slope for you. Use the total time you run to calculate your VO<sub>2</sub> max.



TIME MINUTES	SLOPE DEGREES
0	0°
1	2°
2	4°
3	6°
4	8°
5	10°
6	11°
7	12°
8	13°
9	14°
10	15°
11	16°
12	17°
13	18°
14	19°
15	20°

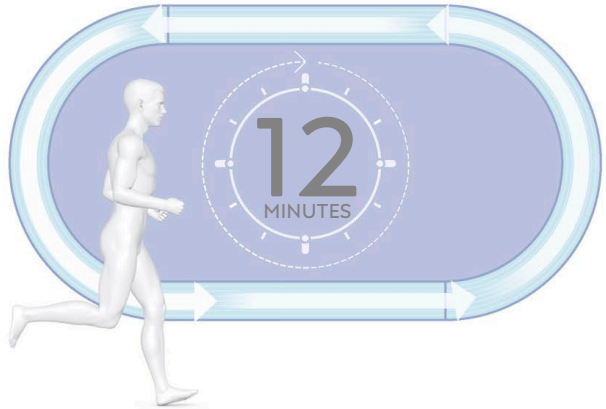
$$(42 + \frac{\text{TOTAL TIME RUN}}{2}) \times 2 = \text{VO}_2 \text{ MAX}$$

### PERFORMING THE TEST

Set the treadmill to 11.3 km/h (7.02 mph) and a slope of 0°. Every minute, the assistant increases the gradient according to the chart above. End the test when you cannot continue.

## VO<sub>2</sub> max: Cooper test

This test, developed by Dr. Ken Cooper in 1968, offers a simple way to measure aerobic fitness. To complete it, simply run as far as you can in 12 minutes and use the total distance you have run to calculate your VO<sub>2</sub> max score using the formula below (using either the km or miles formula, as appropriate).



$$(22.35 \times \frac{\text{TOTAL DISTANCE IN KM}}{1000}) - 11.29$$

OR

$$(35.96 \times \frac{\text{TOTAL DISTANCE IN MILES}}{1000}) - 11.29$$

$$= \text{VO}_2 \text{ MAX}$$

### PERFORMING THE TEST

This test should be performed on a flat surface; a 400-m (440-yard) athletic track is ideal. Set your timer to count down from 12 minutes, run as far as possible, and record the total distance.



# TRACKING YOUR TRAINING

**Most runners are good at tracking** certain elements of their training, either by keeping a log or recording their progress using a social media platform. Similarly, tools such as GPS watches, heart rate monitors, and other wearable devices can provide a wealth of information. There are various ways to benefit from this data.

## WHY GATHER DATA?

Data can give you objective information about how your body is responding to training. If you collect the right data, it can both show areas of improvement and reveal which areas of training need more focus.

Collecting data is important for monitoring your health as well. It can provide information about how

your body is handling the training load, and can alert you when you are at risk of overtraining or injury.

### DATA TO RECORD

With the use of wearable devices (see box, opposite), you are able to gather a huge amount of data from your training. However, more is not always better – the key is to record the types of data that will help you

monitor your training load (see opposite), such as volume and intensity, and to observe your body's response to training through pain and fatigue scores. In addition, record which workout types (see pp.180–186) you do each week. Each has different benefits, so this will ensure you are including the right ingredients in your training.

### Types of data



#### RPE, HEART RATE, AND PACE

Recording these factors (see pp.162–165) allows you to gauge the intensity, or effort level, of individual workouts. Over time, this data provides information about your fitness level, especially if you observe whether your heart rate or rate of perceived exertion (RPE) increases or decreases in relation to a given pace.



#### DISTANCE OR TIME

Monitoring these factors allows you to measure your volume. Not all miles are equal. Some runs are long and slow, while others are short and fast. A hill run may be shorter in distance than a flat run, but take more time. In terms of gauging the physical toll of training, recording time is useful, but if training for a race, recording distance is also important.



#### PAIN SCORE

Being attuned to any pain will allow you to pick up on patterns, which may help to identify an injury early and aid in diagnosis and treatment. If you have any pain, record its location, its nature (using descriptors such as sharp, achy, tight), and its intensity. A simple scoring system of 0–10 will give you a very clear idea.



#### FATIGUE SCORE

Fatigue is one of the first warning signs of overtraining syndrome. Rating how tired you feel after each workout (using a simple 0–10 scoring system) allows you to recognize rising fatigue levels and helps to assess if you should include more recovery time in your training schedule.



# MONITORING YOUR TRAINING LOAD

Training load refers to the sum total measure of stress applied to the body over time, which depends on the frequency, intensity, duration, and type of activity you do. Monitor your training load by giving each workout a score using the formula below. For example, if you perform hill runs at an effort rating of RPE 8 for 20 minutes, your training load score for the workout is 160. Record one internal and one external load (see below) consistently in order to aggregate the scores and track load over time.

## Internal and external loads

Training load can be divided into two types: internal and external. External training load is an objective measure of volume, such as running 10 km in distance or 60 minutes in duration. Internal training load represents the effort you put in to complete the workout, such as an average heart rate of 165 or an RPE of 4.

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{INTERNAL} \\ \text{LOAD} \\ \times \text{EXTERNAL} \\ \text{LOAD} \\ \hline \text{TRAINING LOAD} \end{array}$$



## Using tech to monitor progress

A body-worn sensor such as a GPS-enabled wristwatch can be very convenient for collecting and logging multiple metrics. These wearable devices can collect data about external training loads (such as distance, time, and elevation gain) and internal loads (such as heart rate and breathing rate). Some devices give real-time feedback, and many are paired with an online platform that can be used to track data longitudinally over time.

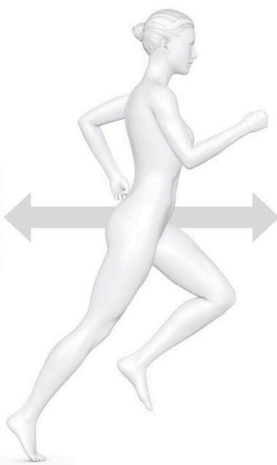
Other wearable devices can measure biomechanical variables such as cadence, impact, and vertical oscillation, which can be useful if you know how to interpret the data. However, be cautious about becoming too reliant on data at the cost of learning to run by feel.

## Observing the changes

Two athletes may respond differently to the same training load, so it is important to regularly monitor yours. You can use pain and fatigue scores to observe whether your training load is improving your running or causing strain on your body. The body responds to the stress of the training load either by getting stronger or by breaking down, so any increases in load must be appropriate. Doing too much too soon may cause injury, but doing too little will not bring improvements.

### SIGNS OF OVERTRAINING

Overtraining syndrome causes a sudden decline in performance, coordination, or strength, and fatigue that is not relieved by short rest. Signs include raised heart rate or RPE during workouts, elevated resting heart rate, appetite changes, weight loss, insomnia, irritability, lack of concentration, and depression. It is treated by reducing training load significantly, or complete rest for weeks or months. Prevent it by spreading your training throughout the year and monitoring your overall training load.



### SIGNS OF IMPROVEMENT

The foremost sign of improvement, and often the most important for many runners, is faster race times. Additionally, if your average heart rate decreases at a given pace, or if your RPE score becomes lower because the pace feels easier to you, it is a sign of improved fitness. Similarly, your pace at a given heart rate or RPE rating becomes faster as you become fitter. Other signs include a lower resting heart rate, and the ability to manage higher weekly training loads.

# TRAINING TIPS

**At some point, either in your training or in a race, you will experience the urge to give up. Whether it is due to the pain in your legs, the doubt in your mind, or the overwhelming sense of fatigue, overcoming this sensation can be a defining moment for a runner and one that can make you stronger.**

## DEALING WITH PAIN

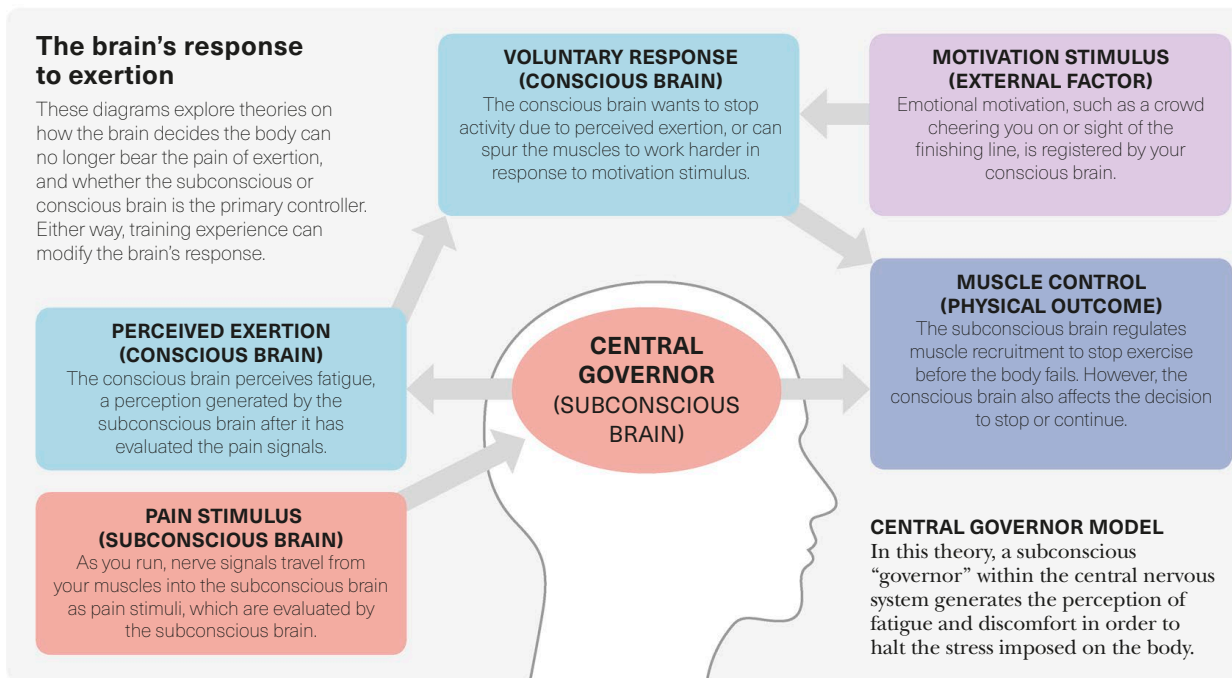
The pain of exertion is part of the running experience. It can take many forms: aching muscles deprived of glycogen, joints tested by repeated impacts, and running-related ailments ranging from blisters to tummy trouble.

In a race between two runners of seemingly equal physical talent, one runner's ability to overcome

pain can give them an edge. Training is the best way to achieve this. Both trained and untrained runners have similar pain thresholds and will experience pain at the same point, but trained runners tend to have a higher pain tolerance and can withstand this pain for longer. How you feel pain does not alter, but training improves your ability to cope with

it because your subconscious brain learns that your body can withstand the stress being placed on it (see below).

You can also affect pain consciously by directing attention away from it. Studies have shown that distraction techniques, such as listening to fast-paced music, can help push your body further while your brain is occupied.



# STAYING MOTIVATED

The motivation to train can come from a number of different sources. Learning to identify what motivates you to run, and to race, and reinforcing those motivations helps to keep you on track to reach your goals.

A number of factors affect our motivation. In a race, the cheering of your family in the crowd or the anticipation of running a personal best can push you to dig a bit deeper into your energy reserves. In training, noticing the objective signs of improvement and completing challenging workouts in preparation for your race can motivate you to maintain your training load.

Visualizing yourself crossing the line and reaching your goal

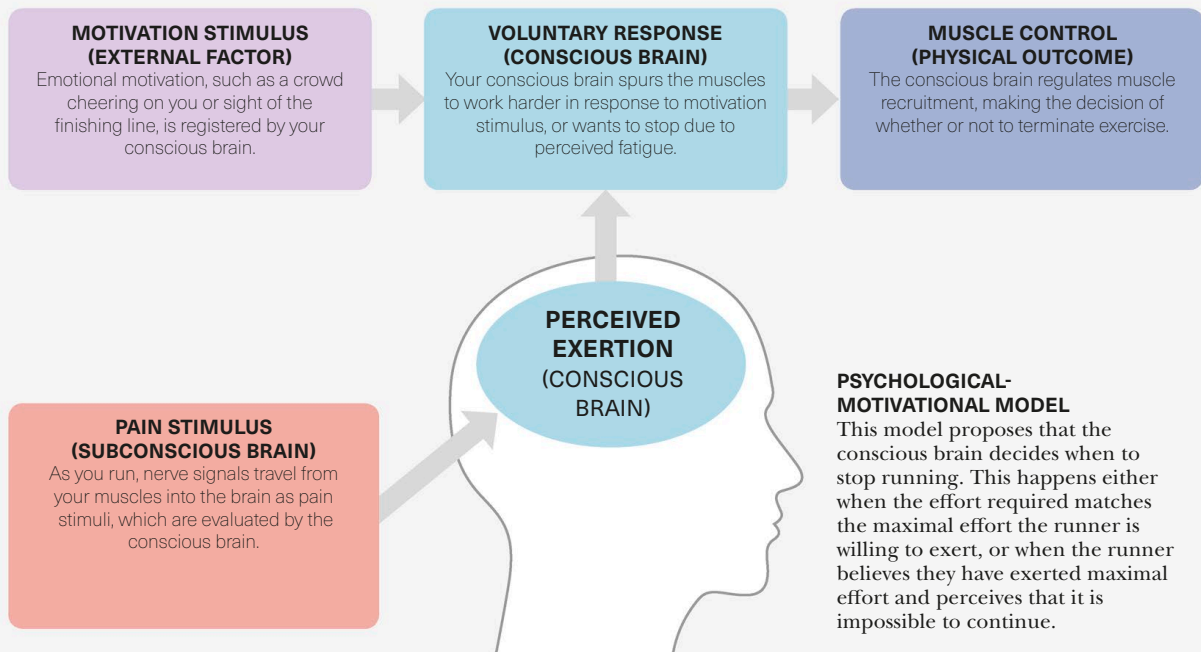
can help motivate you to train on a cold, wet day. One way to motivate yourself is to expect the pain and fatigue before it arrives and then embrace it when it does, knowing that pushing through it will only make you stronger for future workouts and races. Another more immediate and practical tool might be positive self-talk. Studies have shown that when things get tough, telling yourself, “You can do this” or “You can work through the pain” can improve your race performance.

Recognizing when you have dug deep enough and given your maximum effort is also important, so that you can give yourself adequate recovery time and avoid burnout (see right).



## Recovery and burnout

No athlete can sustain intense training indefinitely, regardless of ability, experience, or mental toughness. You need to build recovery periods into your training schedule (see pp.174–175) or you risk burning out – the effects can include injury, poor training (leading to poor performance), low mood and sleep disorders, and illness. Proper recovery is important for allowing your body time to adapt to the training stimulus and get stronger, faster, and more efficient. Recovery does not necessarily mean complete rest. Active recovery, such as light cycling, pool running, or swimming is best as it keeps your muscles and joints moving, but in a way that does not stress your body. That being said, sleep is the most powerful, evidence-based recovery tool.



# NUTRITION

Good nutrition is fundamental to your training. The primary nutrients to plan around are carbohydrates, essential for building up sufficient energy stores, and proteins, which help regenerate and repair muscle tissue after training.

Glycogen, which your body creates from carbohydrates, provides your primary fuel source during running. Your carbohydrate intake should therefore calibrate with your training load (see below).

It is best to maximize protein absorption and use by distributing your consumption of it through the day; aim to eat 15–20g (½–¾ oz) of

protein 4–6 times a day. Lean animal protein is best, but plant sources (such as soya, legumes, and nuts) are also good.

## POST-WORKOUT REFUELLING

Following hard training sessions, it is important to eat foods that will help your body recover and refuel. Within 2 hours of a workout, aim to consume 1.5g carbohydrate, 0.3g protein, and 0.3g fat per kilogram of your body weight. During the taper phase of training (see p.177), when energy expenditure is lower and you are trying to optimize body weight before a race, reduce the carbohydrate quantity to 1g per kilogram of body weight.

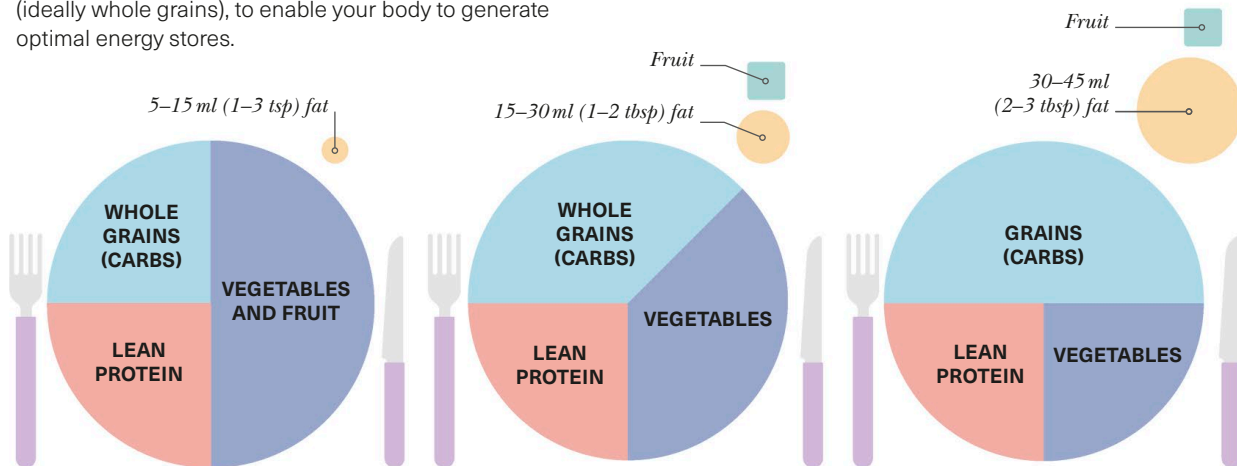


## Fuelling before a run

Pre-run meals should be high in carbohydrates to provide adequate fuel; pasta, rice, and other starches are ideal. After eating, you should allow 2–3 hours before working out to stop you feeling bloated or getting a stitch. For runs longer than 90 minutes, or when muscle glycogen stores are low, you should take on approximately 30–60g (1–2oz) of carbohydrate per hour, to maintain circulating glucose levels. This can be achieved through a combination of easily absorbed sports drinks, energy gels, or light, easily digestible, carbohydrate-rich foods, such as energy bars. It is important to experiment in training to find the optimal intake for race day.

## Changing nutrient needs

The harder you train, the more calories you will need to fuel your runs. Depending on the training phase (see p.177), your daily food intake should be 25–50 per cent carbohydrates (ideally whole grains), to enable your body to generate optimal energy stores.



### EASY TRAINING

For light training, for example in an introduction or taper phase, your total daily intake of carbohydrates need only be 25 per cent, with fruit and vegetables making up the difference.

### MODERATE TRAINING

As training increases, for example in the base-building or support phases of training, increase carbohydrate and fat intake. Additionally, fruit is recommended as a good source of carbohydrates.

### HARD TRAINING OR RACE DAY

In a hard training phase, such as the race-specific phase, carbohydrates should make up half of your daily food intake to allow your muscles to store more glycogen. This is known as “carb loading”.

## HYDRATION

There is no doubt that hydration is important when it comes to endurance running. It regulates body temperature through sweating, is essential to the transport of nutrients, and aids in releasing energy and removing the waste products that are created by energy conversion.

Traditional wisdom had it that you should drink as much as possible prior to exercise. We now know that you do not need to drink copious amounts of water before a workout in order to stave off dehydration. Also untrue is the old belief that thirst cues indicate that you are already dehydrated. While

drinking to thirst may not replace all of the fluid lost during exercise (it is normal to lose up to 2–3 per cent of your body weight during training sessions, or more during races), it is safer than the danger of overhydration (see box, right).

### HYDRATION STRATEGIES

During a workout, responding to internal cues to drink when you are thirsty should be sufficient to keep you hydrated. If you sweat heavily during a run, or if it is a hot day, you may need to take in more fluids before a workout, but this should be weighed against the discomfort of having too much fluid in your stomach while running.

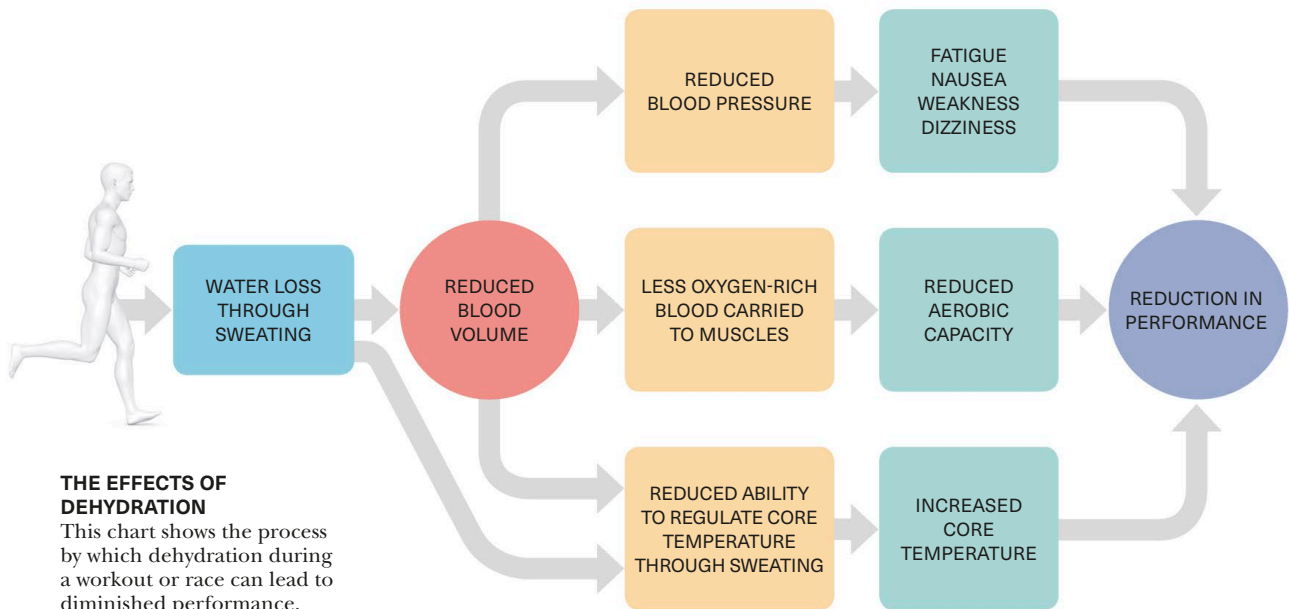
### Sodium levels

Overhydration can be as dangerous as dehydration. During exercise, we lose sodium through sweating (known as electrolyte depletion). Drinking excessively during exercise dilutes the already depleted sodium levels in your blood. This can lead to sleep disruption, and the potentially life-threatening condition Exercise Associated Hyponatraemia (EAH). Symptoms include headaches, fatigue, nausea or vomiting, muscle spasms, and seizures.

Sports drinks contain electrolytes and therefore do not deplete the sodium levels in your blood in the same way that drinking water does. However, even drinking sports drinks to excess can dilute sodium levels.

## Dehydration

Sweating during exercise will cause a certain amount of water loss from the body. If too much water is lost, however, it can affect your core temperature and energy supply to the muscles.



### THE EFFECTS OF DEHYDRATION

This chart shows the process by which dehydration during a workout or race can lead to diminished performance.

# RECOVERY AND REGENERATION

Scheduling recovery time is a vital part of training. It allows your body to renew energy reserves and cements the physiological adaptations that your body makes in response to training load.

“Active” recovery with low-impact, low-intensity activities between your main workouts keeps your muscles and joints mobile (see below). Massage, practising mental resilience, and ensuring good sleep quality are other key ways to help the body recover.

A few other tools and therapies have shown positive effects on perceived post-exercise muscle soreness: compression garments; cold-water immersion (immersing legs in icy water for 10–15 minutes post-exercise); contrast baths (immersing the legs alternately in tubs of warm and cold water for 20–30 minutes); and cryotherapy (applying cold, such as an ice pack, to muscles). Hyperbaric therapy, electrostimulation, and other trends, however, have little evidence to support their usefulness.

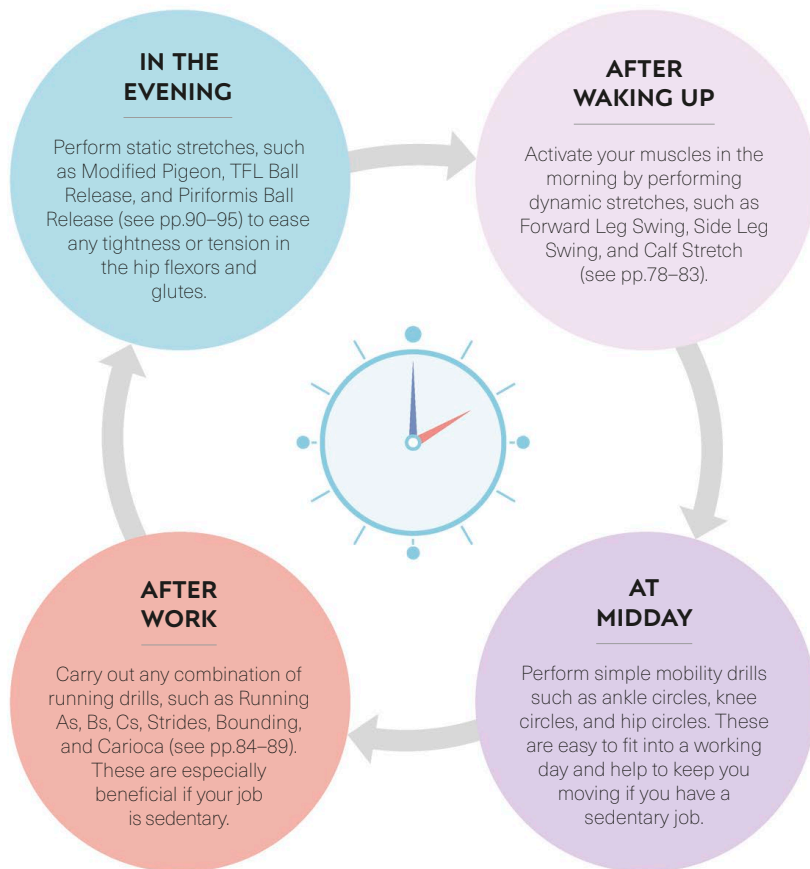
“ ”

*Proper recovery is as important as, if not even more important than, training itself*

## Mobility

After a hard training session, it can be tempting to stay fairly sedentary until the next workout. However, keeping your body mobile while still allowing it to recover – known as active recovery – can provide benefits, including an increase in your body’s ability to clear metabolites such as blood lactate, improved muscle function, and reduced post-exercise soreness. On days that are not scheduled for your key workouts (see p.179), keep your recovery time active with cross training (see p.187), “recovery” runs at an easy pace (see p.180), or an exercise routine to keep your joints, muscles, and tendons moving (see right). All of these activities should be low in impact and intensity compared with your key workouts.

**MOBILITY ROUTINE**  
You can build exercises into your daily routine at different times of day to keep your body mobile.



## Massage

As your training load increases, you are likely to feel muscle tightness and stiffness in a number of areas of your body. One way to deal with this is to schedule regular massage therapy during your training.

Massage may help to relax muscle tissue and reduce post-exercise soreness. Although evidence suggests that it does not increase blood flow or help with removal of metabolic waste products (both often said to be benefits of massage), the positive psychological effects of massage are consistently reported in scientific studies. These include improvements in perceived recovery and perceived muscle soreness.

Massage also has an effect on the nervous system by helping to activate the parasympathetic nervous system (see p.42), which is responsible for subduing the stress responses generated by working out and racing.

If you are unable to see a massage therapist regularly, consider self-massage. There are a number of tools available, such as foam rollers and lacrosse-style therapy balls, which can be used to target specific areas where you feel muscle tension. See also the TFL and Piriformis Ball Release stretches on pages 92–95.

## Meditation

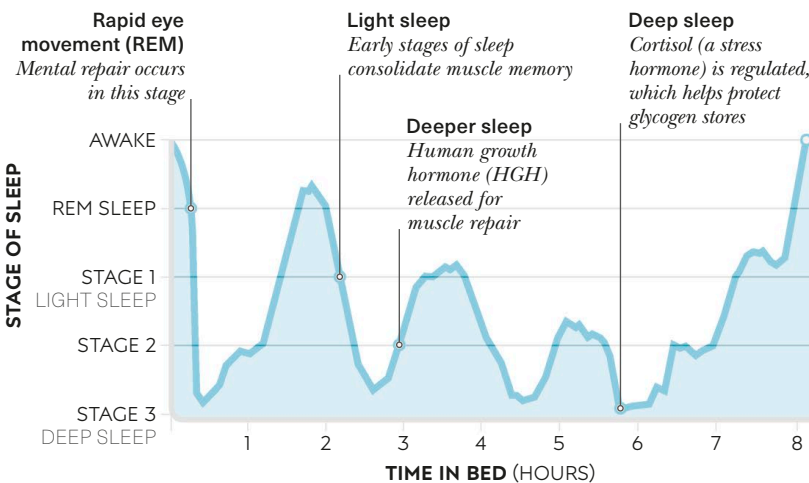
Practising meditation can primarily benefit runners by aiding relaxation and stress relief. This in turn helps to ensure good-quality sleep, so your body can repair efficiently.

In addition, meditation encourages you to practise mental focus, which can boost willpower and self-discipline when you must motivate yourself to keep up your training regimen. It may also help increase your mental resilience to frustration, pain, stress, and tough training days, and bolster you during racing challenges.

## Sleep

The quality and quantity of sleep is the most important recovery factor for any runner – sleep deprivation can impact the performance of distance runners more than some other athletes. Suboptimal sleep affects the immune and endocrine systems – impacting recovery and training adaptation – and can also result in impaired cognitive function, increased pain

perception, changes in mood, and altered metabolism. Endurance training has been shown to suppress immunity, so good sleep hygiene (see right) is vital to allow the immune system to recover. If sleep is cut short, the body does not have time to repair and consolidate memory. This can result in increased injury risk due to slower reaction times.



### Sleep hygiene

Proper sleep hygiene can enhance sleep quality and quantity. Try the following habits and practices:

- Keep the bedroom dark, quiet, and cool at 19–21°C (66–70°F)
- Ensure your bed and pillow are comfortable
- Avoid backlit screens in the hour before bedtime
- Avoid caffeine later in the day
- Go to bed and wake up at the same time every day
- Create a nightly routine that starts 30 minutes before bedtime to prepare your body for sleep
- Use relaxation or breathing techniques (see Meditation, above) if you are anxious or have difficulty falling asleep.

### SLEEP FOR RECOVERY

There are distinct stages of sleep, and we pass through each one several times a night. Each is essential for recovery.

# CHOOSING AND USING A TRAINING PLAN

**What makes a training programme effective** is whether it is the right stimulus for a runner at their current level of fitness and training. There are both beginner and advanced training programmes included in this book, designed to give you a structure of key workouts that you can build upon and adapt if you wish.

## TYPES OF PROGRAMME

The training programmes in this chapter include beginner programmes for 5 km, 10 km, half marathon, and marathon, as well as advanced programmes for 10 km, half marathon, and marathon.

### BEGINNER PROGRAMMES

If you have not run before, have not run for long time, or are returning to training after injury, you can start with the Beginner 5 km programme. This is designed in a walk-run format to gradually build up the length of time you can run continuously. Once you have graduated from completing your first 5 km run, you may choose to work toward longer distances.

There is no rule that you need to continue progressing in distance, however. Many runners prefer to stick to shorter distances and work on improving their finishing time. That said, if your body is able to absorb the training load for each successive distance level, it can be satisfying to continue. Over their 12-week time frames, the beginner programmes primarily focus on your ability to complete the target distance.

### ADVANCED PROGRAMMES

The advanced programmes are suitable for those who have already completed a race at the goal distance and are looking to improve their finishing time.

Compared to the beginner programmes, the advanced training programmes include more overall volume and intensity as well as more variety and complexity of workouts. In order to build up to a higher level of fitness over the course of the programmes, they progress over 24 weeks rather than just 12 weeks. This longer time period allows for an introduction phase (see opposite) within these programmes, and there is time to emphasize particular goals in each phase, with shifts in the types of workout being performed.

#### PROGRAMME PROGRESSION

Each of the 12-week beginner programmes (5 km, 10 km, half marathon, and marathon) progress from where the previous programme finished. It is possible to follow these 4 programmes through from a starting point of no running to completing a marathon within 48 weeks.

**BEGINNER  
5 KM  
PROGRAMME**  
WEEKS 1–12  
(see pp.190–191)

**BEGINNER  
10 KM  
PROGRAMME**  
WEEKS 13–24  
(see pp.192–193)

**BEGINNER HALF  
MARATHON  
PROGRAMME**  
WEEKS 25–36  
(see pp.198–199)

**BEGINNER  
MARATHON  
PROGRAMME**  
WEEKS 37–48  
(see pp.204–205)



# TRAINING PHASES

The training programmes in this book are divided into phases. The phases gradually shift from a focus on developing general aerobic and anaerobic fitness toward workouts that are specific for your target event. The cycle here shows the typical number of weeks spent in each phase in a 24-week programme.

## TAPER

At the end of the race-specific phase is the taper before your race. You cannot perform at your best when your level of training fatigue is at its highest, even though your fitness may be at its peak. On the flip side, you cannot perform your best if your fitness has dropped too far. The art of the taper is therefore to perform workouts that allow you to arrive at the start line as fresh as possible while simultaneously offering enough volume and intensity to maintain your fitness.

## INTRODUCTION PHASE

Start with an introduction phase if you have just completed a hard race or training period (this phase appears in advanced programmes only). The aim of this phase is to refresh you physically and mentally, before rebuilding your general running volume to a level that allows for more focussed training to begin. The programmes allocate 3 weeks to this phase, but it can be extended by weeks, months, or even a rest from running, depending on your level of fatigue.

## BASE-BUILDING PHASE

For both beginners and advanced runners, the focussed training begins in this phase. The goal is to increase your aerobic volume, gradually introduce intensity, and improve running skills such as form, strength, power, cadence, and sprinting ability. This is the best phase to work on your individual weaknesses, whether that is speed, strength, or endurance. Regardless of the end distance being targeted, the goal of this phase is to become a fitter, faster, and stronger overall runner.



## RACE-SPECIFIC PHASE

This is the phase that focusses on the specific demands of your target race with peak workouts and long runs. Your capacity to run both fast and long should now be developed and the emphasis is on making your goal race pace feel as efficient as possible. The workouts mainly target the dominant energy system that will be utilized during your target race. In the advanced programmes, you will have reached peak volume (see p.188) in the support phase and adapted to it, leaving you with more energy to put into the workouts.

## SUPPORT PHASE

The main goal of this phase is to prepare you for the race-specific phase to come. The support phase builds upon the general fitness established in the previous phase, and begins to focus on workouts that support the race distance and pace that you are training toward. There are workouts faster than your goal race pace, designed to make your goal race pace feel more comfortable by comparison. There are also slower workouts that help build your endurance and your ability to sustain your goal race pace over the target distance.



## TRAINING PRINCIPLES

These principles should inform the structure of a successful training plan. They are proven effective for all runners, from recreational to elite, and understanding them will help you get the most from your training programme and workouts.

### WELL-ROUNDED FITNESS

Focus on improving overall general fitness with anaerobic and form-training workouts as well as aerobic running fitness, to become a more well-rounded runner.

### PROGRESSIVE ADAPTATION

Gradually introduce different training stimuli to promote physical adaptations by changing the volume, intensity, or frequency of workouts.

### INCREASE INTENSITY

Make workouts harder in one of four ways: increasing the pace; increasing the distance or duration of a run at a given pace; increasing the ratio of fast to slower running; or running recovery sections faster.

### INCREASE VOLUME

Progressively increase the volume of running to a predetermined peak over the course of a training programme, with some weeks decreasing in volume to allow your body to absorb the training load.

### OPTIMIZE TRAINING LOAD

Your training load should increase at a rate that your body can absorb and benefit from. Monitor for signs of overtraining (see pp.168–169) and adjust if needed.

## WORKOUT TYPES

Performing a variety of workout types will help make you a well-rounded runner, as well as help you become stronger and fitter.

The workouts in the programmes range from short sprints to longer aerobic-based running. Four main categories of workout are described: easy continuous running; fast continuous running; interval training; and hill training (see pp.180–186). This is one system of categorizing workouts – you may come across others. Each of these workout types provides different benefits in terms of increasing endurance, speed, and strength.

In addition, there are form-focussed interval workouts that help improve your running form (see p.188).

### INDIVIDUALIZATION

Due to the range of types, you may find some workouts more difficult than others. If a pattern emerges, you may identify that you are an endurance-based runner rather than a speed-based runner, or vice versa. The training programmes should not be seen as set in stone – if you identify a weakness early in your training cycle, you can shift the emphasis of your training by choosing workout types that address your weakness.

### Depletion training

This type of training involves running in a glycogen-depleted state in order to improve the body's ability to metabolize fat. This is useful for race events that last longer than 90 minutes (the average length of time that muscle glycogen provide you with fuel while running).

The easiest way to achieve this glycogen-depleted state is to schedule your run before breakfast (ensuring at least 10 hours fasting overnight). After a depletion run, it is important to replenish muscles with a high-carbohydrate recovery meal.

Depletion training is stressful and should be undertaken with caution. Introduce it early in the training cycle and begin with just one session per week; you can add more as your body adapts. Reduce or omit these runs completely in the taper period.








# PLANNING YOUR TRAINING

The programmes in this book show three key workouts per week: two shorter, more intense workouts, and one longer run.

These key workouts should be the most stressful training stimuli of your week. Only three are scheduled per week to allow at least one recovery day between each key workout. Depending on your level of experience, fitness, and available time, a recovery day could involve full rest, cross training (see p.187), or easy continuous running (see p.180). However, keep in mind that any recovery day activity should be easy enough that you feel ready to run the distance and effort prescribed in your next key workout.

Performing the three key workouts each week will serve you well, but if you want to train more often than three days a week and add to the key workouts in your schedule, bear in mind that it is easier to recover from multiple short runs than from a smaller number of long runs. Compared to the longest run of the week, your second-longest run should be no more than half its distance or duration, and any remaining runs should not be more than one-third.

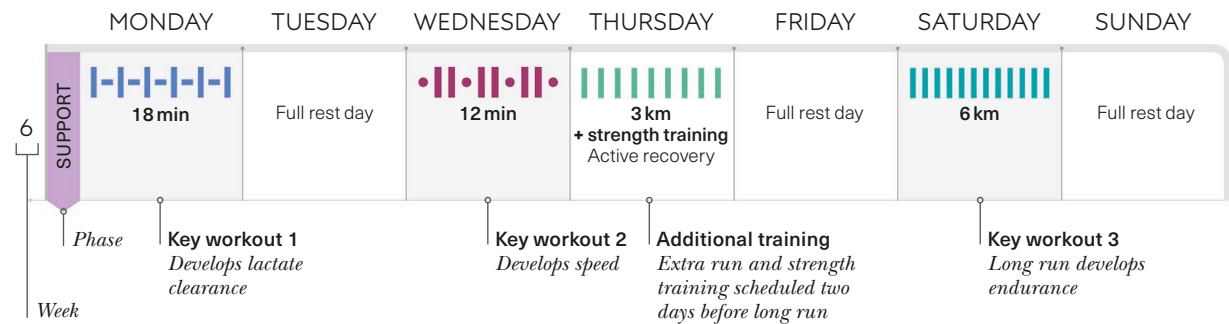
**KEY**

-  Short run
-  Medium run
-  Long run
-  Progression run
-  Pace-change run
-  Anaerobic capacity training
-  Hill run

### STRUCTURING YOUR WEEK

The examples below show how to fit extra sessions in between key workouts, if you choose. It is best to stick to easy continuous runs and cross training.

### BEGINNER RUNNER



### ADVANCED RUNNER





**What to record**

- Distance
- Duration
- Average pace
- RPE score.

The subjective effort of these runs should be the focus more than the pace. Make sure they are “easy”.

# EASY CONTINUOUS RUNNING

**This type of training is performed** at the lowest effort level of all workout types, and makes up the bulk of training volume for distance runners. Depending on distance or duration, easy continuous runs are classified in this book as “short”, “medium”, or “long”, which are definitions relative to your experience.

## ||||||| DISTANCE AND RECOVERY RUNS

The purpose of easy continuous running is to build a strong aerobic base without placing too much extra load on top of the more intense workouts in a training programme.

**BENEFITS**

The cumulative volume of easy continuous running improves endurance; increases capillaries and mitochondria (see pp.34–35);

and, in the case of long runs, gives you confidence that you can complete the distance of the target event.

**HOW TO DO IT**

These runs are done at “easy pace”, which means they should be run as slowly as needed to maintain good form and relaxation throughout the session. They should also help you achieve

adequate recovery before your next workout, so it is helpful to set a pace or effort limit (for example, no higher than 70 per cent of heart rate reserve) to ensure they remain easy.

At the start of a programme, the long run should build up to a set distance. Once this is achieved, you can increase the training load with pace variations (making them fast continuous runs) or increase the distance without intensity.

**Types and frequency**

These three types of easy continuous running workouts are described in terms of relative distance or duration – bear in mind that as you progress, what was once a “long” run may become a medium run. How frequently you do these three types of easy continuous running will depend on your level of experience, training phase, and distance target. Some elite runners perform one easy continuous run a day.



**SHORT RUNS**

Compared to the longest run in your training plan, short runs are usually one-third the distance or duration (or less).

Short runs are typically scheduled in between more challenging efforts, either to begin or finish a workout, or on a recovery day for advanced runners (which is termed a “recovery run”). Short runs may also be a workout in their own right in a light training week.



**MEDIUM RUNS**

These runs are between one-third and half the distance or duration of the longest run in your training plan.

These runs can be done once a week in addition to the weekly long run. Follow with at least one day of rest or a recovery run (see short runs). This “extra” run is particularly useful for marathoners, as it helps increase aerobic volume, especially if you run only 3–4 times a week.



**LONG RUNS**

This is the longest run of the week. It can be defined as any run that is 50 per cent of the distance or duration of the longest run in your training plan, or more.

Include one long run per week, particularly during the base-building phase. Later in the programme, long runs can evolve into fast continuous runs by including pace variations, especially for half marathoners and marathoners.

### What to record

- Distance
- Duration
- Average pace of fast sections
- Average pace of slower sections
- Average pace of overall run
- RPE score.

For each of the three types of fast continuous runs, it is useful to track your pace and overall training load.

# FAST CONTINUOUS RUNNING

**These runs are done faster than easy pace, but not so fast or sustained that you need to stop or walk to recover. Therefore, there is an element of control to this type of training. The three basic types of fast continuous runs are tempo runs, progression runs, and pace-change runs.**

## TEMPO RUNS

Tempo runs are even-paced runs, typically run at speeds from lactate threshold pace at the faster end to a little under marathon pace at the slower end (see box). Tempo runs are sometimes preceded or followed by a short, easy run for warm-up or recovery.

### BENEFITS

These workouts teach you how to run at a constant, sustainable pace or effort over a set distance or duration. Besides racing, no other workouts develop an awareness of pace as well as

tempo runs. They also increase aerobic capacity and the rate of lactate clearance.

### HOW TO DO IT

Complete these runs at an even pace or effort for the whole run. The first tempo runs in your programme may be slower than goal pace (the speed you are trying to achieve) so that you can start at a manageable effort level and pace. This is known as “date pace” – the pace you can sustain at the current date. As your fitness improves, the pace of the tempo runs can progress to goal pace.

### Effort-based and distance-based paces

On average, lactate threshold (LT) pace correlates to the pace you can maintain for 1 hour in a competition. This is why LT pace is sometimes called 1-hour race pace. Since marathons and half marathons (for most runners except elite) take much longer than an hour to complete, marathon and half marathon paces are slower than LT pace, so that they can be sustained over a longer

distance. Similarly, half marathon pace is usually faster than marathon pace, because it is a shorter event. Your training programme will contain various distance-based paces (not just the goal pace for your target event) so that you run relatively slower or faster, as appropriate for the workout. (See pp.164–167 for how to calculate paces for training purposes.)

### Example

The examples below show the typical distance or duration for tempo runs at the following efforts and paces.

#### LACTATE THRESHOLD

Run at or faster than your lactate threshold pace (see pp.166–167) for 20–40 minutes.



20–40 min @ LT

#### HALF MARATHON PACE

Run at half marathon goal pace for 8–15 km.



8–15 km @ HMP

#### MARATHON PACE

Run at marathon goal pace for 12–24 km.



12–24 km @ MP

## PROGRESSION RUNS

These runs increase in pace or effort incrementally over the course of the run. For example, a 30-minute run can increase in pace every 6 minutes.

### BENEFITS

Progression runs teach you how to feel your pace and increase it, even when you are tired. Physiologically, these workouts increase the oxygen uptake in

a higher percentage of muscle fibres, accelerating turnover by engaging first the slow-twitch muscles fibres, then the fast-twitch fibres (see p.19) in the later stages of the run.

### HOW TO DO IT

These runs are typically performed at a slower average pace compared to an equivalent tempo run, due to the demands of acceleration on

the muscles and aerobic system. The duration or distance of a progression run tends to be split into 2–5 segments; these are assigned paces that increase by 3–10 sec/km per segment. The overall average pace is as important as that of the individual segments, so the first progression runs in your programme can be relatively easy overall and become faster as your fitness improves.

### Examples

The examples below show the typical pace or effort for runs of the following durations and distances.

#### 30-MINUTE PROGRESSION

Run 5 segments of 6 minutes each, averaging 5–10 sec/km slower than your lactate threshold (LT) pace (see p.166).

This example starts at 15 sec/km slower than LT pace and ends at 5 sec/km faster than LT pace.



5 x 6-min runs  
 @ 15 sec < **LT**  
 + @ 10 sec < **LT**  
 + @ 5 sec < **LT**  
 + @ **LT**  
 + @ 5 sec > **LT**

#### 15-KM PROGRESSION

Run 5 segments of 3 km each, averaging 10 sec/km slower than your half marathon goal pace.

This example starts at 30 sec/km slower than half marathon pace and ends at 10 sec/km faster than half marathon pace.



5 x 3-km runs  
 @ 30 sec < **HMP**  
 + @ 20 sec < **HMP**  
 + @ 10 sec < **HMP**  
 + @ **HMP**  
 + @ 10 sec > **HMP**

#### 24-KM PROGRESSION

Run 4 segments of 6 km each, averaging 10 sec/km slower than your marathon goal pace.

This example starts at 25 sec/km slower than marathon pace and ends at 5 sec/km faster than marathon pace.



4 x 6-km runs  
 @ 25 sec < **MP**  
 + @ 15 sec < **MP**  
 + @ 5 sec < **MP**  
 + @ 5 sec > **MP**

### Frequency

Fast continuous runs can be performed up to three times per week, depending on your level of experience, training phase, and goal distance. During the base-building phase (see p.177), a short and a long easy continuous run can evolve into a tempo, progression, or pace-change run. In later phases, race preparation will determine the number of these workouts needed per week.

#### 5 KM GOAL DISTANCE

When your target distance is 5 km, a good guide is to include fast continuous runs up to twice a week during the base-building phase, once a week during the support phase, and once every 2 weeks during the race-specific phase.

#### 10 KM GOAL DISTANCE

For this target distance, you will benefit from including tempo, progression, or pace-change runs up to twice a week. These fast continuous runs can be done throughout the base-building, support, and race-specific phases.

## ||||| PACE-CHANGE RUNS

As the name suggests, pace-change runs involve alternating between slower and faster paces during a continuous run. They can be done over any distance or duration, and the pace variations can be structured or spontaneous.

### BENEFITS

These runs teach the body to run fast without complete recovery. If the fast sections are run faster

than lactate threshold, causing lactate to build up, the slow-twitch muscles that are activated in the slower sections clear the lactate accumulation. This improves your muscles' ability to use lactate as fuel.

### HOW TO DO IT

When you begin pace-change runs, there may be only 5–10 minutes of fast running within your continuous run. As your

fitness improves, you can increase the volume or the pace of the fast sections, the volume of the overall run, or the pace of the slower “recovery” sections. Being able to keep the pace of the recoveries close to the fast pace, or to decrease their duration, indicates that your muscles have improved their ability to clear lactate.

### Examples

The examples below show typical workouts from a range of training programmes.

LACTATE THRESHOLD (LT) PACE	HALF MARATHON-SPECIFIC	FARTLEK
<p>Run for 30 minutes, alternating 3 minutes at 10 sec/km faster than LT with 2 minutes at 15 sec/km slower than LT.</p> <p>     </p> <p>30 min            ⇨ 3 min @ 10 sec &gt; LT with            2 min @ 15 sec &lt; LT</p>	<p>Run for 16 km, alternating 3 km at half marathon pace with 1 km at 30 sec/km slower than half marathon pace.</p> <p>     </p> <p>16 km            ⇨ 3 km @ HMP with            1 km @ 30 sec &lt; HMP</p>	<p>Meaning “speed play” in Swedish, fartlek runs are less structured than other pace-change runs, with the pace variations done spontaneously as you run.</p> <p>A typical fartlek run might last for 45 minutes, alternating between hard fast sections that last 15 seconds to 3 minutes and easy recovery sections. The recoveries should last 1–2 times the duration of the fast sections.</p>
<p>10 KM GOAL-SPECIFIC</p> <p>Run for 9 km, alternating 2 km at 10-km goal pace with 1 km at 30 sec/km slower than 10-km goal pace.</p> <p>     </p> <p>9 km            ⇨ 2 km @ 10km with            1 km @ 30 sec &lt; 10km</p>	<p>MARATHON-SPECIFIC</p> <p>Run for 24 km, alternating 5 km at marathon goal pace with 1 km at 20–30 sec/km slower than marathon goal pace.</p> <p>     </p> <p>24 km            ⇨ 5 km @ MP with            1 km @ 20–30 sec &lt; MP</p>	

#### HALF MARATHON GOAL DISTANCE

When you are training for a half marathon, a good rule of thumb is to include fast continuous runs up to twice a week during the base-building and support phases. You can increase this to up to three times a week during the race-specific phase.

#### MARATHON GOAL DISTANCE

Do fast continuous runs up to twice a week during base-building, and up to three times a week in later phases. To improve speed, reduce these workouts in the support phase and focus on  $\dot{V}O_2$  max training (see p.184). If your 5 km and 10 km race times are fast, focus on fast continuous running to improve your running economy and ability to clear lactate.



# INTERVAL TRAINING

## What to record

- RPE score for each repetition
- Average time or pace of each repetition
- Individual time or pace for each repetition. Note whether the paces were consistent or whether the pace increased or slowed down throughout the workout.

The focus of interval training is the intensity of the fast sections, so keep track of the repetitions.

**Also known as repetition training,** interval training involves alternating periods of fast running with periods of recovery. The fast sections are intense, and the recoveries are light. It is performed at various intensity levels, but anaerobic capacity and VO<sub>2</sub> max are most important for distance runners.

## •■■■■■■• VO<sub>2</sub> MAX TRAINING

The intensity of these workouts is lower than anaerobic capacity interval training (see opposite) but higher than lactate threshold. Long fast sections alternate with relatively short recovery periods, which are of equal or half the duration of the fast sections.

### BENEFITS

VO<sub>2</sub> max training improves the heart's ability to pump a high blood volume, and the muscles' ability to absorb more oxygen, thereby increasing your VO<sub>2</sub> max. It improves speed over 5-km and 10-km

distances, and helps marathoners who are slower over short distances and are plateauing at their marathon pace. Marathoners with fast 5-km and 10-km race times will be better served with training that is closer to lactate threshold.

### HOW TO DO IT

The intensity of these workouts typically correlates with RPE 6–7, a heart rate reserve of 91–94 per cent, or 3-km to 5-km race pace. The hard sections last between 20–2000 m (or 30 seconds to 6 minutes in duration).

### Example

This shows repetitions for 3-km pace, but 5-km pace is also common.

#### 3-KM PACE REPETITIONS

In this example, 4800 m is divided into 6 repetitions. Each recovery is equal in duration to each fast run (shown by 1 circle). If you average 2.5 minutes per run, each recovery would be 2.5 minutes of walking.



### Frequency

As a general rule, you should not begin sustained anaerobic capacity or VO<sub>2</sub> max workouts until the support phase (see p.177), after you have laid a foundation of strength and good running mechanics in the base-building phase. Performing longer hill repeats (see p.186) of 30 seconds to 4 minutes will help in this respect. How frequently you should include interval training in your regime depends on your goal distance.

#### 5 KM GOAL DISTANCE

**Anaerobic capacity** Perform 10–30-second effort-based reps once a week during the base-building phase. During the support phase, do longer reps every second week.

**VO<sub>2</sub> max** During the support phase, perform 3-km pace reps every second week. As you prepare for your race in the race-specific phase, perform reps at 3-km pace or 5-km pace (or both) every week.

#### 10 KM GOAL DISTANCE

**Anaerobic capacity** Perform 10–30-second effort-based reps once a week during the base-building phase. During the support phase, switch to 1500-m pace reps every second week.

**VO<sub>2</sub> max** During the support phase, perform reps at 3-km pace or 5-km pace every second week. As you prepare for your race in the 10-km race-specific phase, perform reps at 5-km pace every second week.



## Intensity and recovery

Interval training and pace-change runs (see p.183) both alternate fast running with slower recoveries. However, interval training is focused on the intensity of the fast sections, while in pace-change runs, the pace of the recovery sections is equally important.

The rest periods in interval training are much slower than in pace-change runs, allowing your muscles to recover at a faster rate. This permits you to do a high volume of fast, intense running within a shorter space of time, which improves the

ability of your muscles to clear lactate. Interval training should be done on an even, level surface to allow you to maximize your pace during the workout.

The two types of interval training recommended for distance runners – anaerobic capacity training and  $\text{VO}_2$  max training – are both anaerobic workouts, during which lactate builds up in the muscles (see pp.34–35). Therefore, the recoveries need to be performed slowly enough to clear the lactate in preparation for the next high-intensity section.

## •||•||•||• ANAEROBIC CAPACITY TRAINING

This type of interval training is performed at a level of intensity that results in very high levels of lactate in the muscles. Short fast sections are interspersed with longer recovery periods, lasting 2–4 times the duration of the fast sections.

### BENEFITS

This workout helps increase the amount of energy produced by the anaerobic energy system. The high effort involved in anaerobic capacity training has a direct effect on improving speed over shorter

distances, so it benefits 5-km and 10-km goal distances most. For half marathon and marathon training, hill reps at 100 per cent intensity (see p.186) may be more beneficial.

### HOW TO DO IT

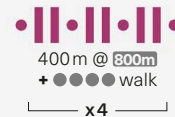
Perform the fast sections at the fastest pace you can maintain without slowing down as the workout progresses. This will result in a heart rate value close to 100 per cent by the end of the workout and an RPE of 8–9. (Only flat-out sprinting and the final burst in a race have a higher RPE score).

### Example

This shows intervals for 800-m pace, but 1500-m pace is also common.

#### 800-M PACE REPETITIONS

In this example, 1600 m is divided into 4 repetitions. Each recovery is 4 times the duration of each fast run (shown by 4 circles). If you average 1 minute per run, each recovery would be 4 minutes of walking.



#### HALF MARATHON GOAL DISTANCE

**Anaerobic capacity** Perform short 10–30-second effort-based reps once a week during base-building. You do not need longer reps unless doing a 5-km or 10-km race in the same cycle. If so, discontinue them by the marathon race-specific phase.

**$\text{VO}_2$  max** In the support phase only, perform reps at 5-km pace every second week. Add in reps at 3-km pace if you are competing in a 5-km or 10-km race during the course of the training cycle.

#### MARATHON GOAL DISTANCE

**Anaerobic capacity** Perform 10–30-second reps once a week during base-building. Do not do longer reps unless you are racing 5 km or 10 km while marathon training, but end them by marathon race-specific phase.

**$\text{VO}_2$  max** To improve speed over 5 km and 10 km, perform reps at 3-km pace and 5-km pace every second week. Those racing 5 km or 10 km while marathon training, perform  $\text{VO}_2$  max intervals in the support phase, but end them by marathon race-specific phase.



# HILL TRAINING

## What to record

- Average pace of repetitions
- Heart rate for each uphill run
- RPE score for each uphill run
- Pace for each uphill run. Note whether they were consistent or if they increased or decreased throughout the session.

As long as you use the same hill, monitoring pace helps to track improvement. Record your heart rate and RPE to gauge effort.

**You can perform hill training** either by running up and down a gradient or over rolling terrain. It can be done at any effort and duration. You can perform intervals, fast continuous runs, and even long runs on hills. Unless you only race on the flat, hill training is a must to prepare you fully for your target event.

## HILL RUNS

The increased effort required by hill training improves aerobic and muscular conditioning, race preparation, and running form.

### BENEFITS

Hill training engages a high percentage of muscle fibres, leading

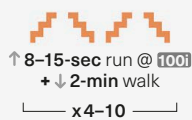
to increased muscular power. It strengthens muscles around the knee, as uphill running works the calves, hamstrings, and glutes, while downhill running puts more emphasis on the quadriceps. Hill training is a great way to improve the elements of good running

form (see pp.74–75). Emphasizing tall posture, a slight forward lean, a high cadence, and striking the ground beneath your centre of mass helps you overcome ground resistance as you run uphill while also decreasing impact forces as you run downhill. Performing

### Examples

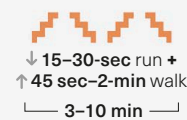
These examples show the typical duration of repetitions and recoveries for hill workouts of different intensities. Use these examples as a guide if you wish to convert a workout from level to hilly terrain.

#### UPHILL SPRINTS



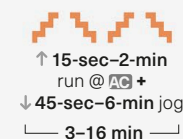
Sprint uphill at 100 per cent intensity (RPE 10) for 4–10 repetitions lasting 8–15 seconds each, with full recovery (typically 2 minutes or more walking).  
Ideal incline: 10–20%

#### DOWNHILL SPRINTS



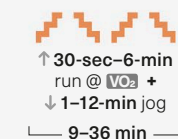
This workout is good for improving running form. Perform 15–30-second runs downhill for a total of 3–10 minutes. Uphill recoveries should last 3–4 times the duration of the downhill run.  
Ideal incline: 3–8%

#### HILLS AT ANAEROBIC CAPACITY



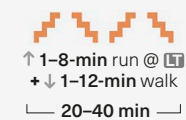
Perform 15-second to 2-minute runs uphill for a total of 3–16 minutes. Downhill recoveries should last 3 times the duration of the uphill run.  
Ideal incline: 5–10%

#### HILLS AT VO<sub>2</sub> MAX



Perform 30-second to 6-minute runs uphill for a total of 9–36 minutes. Downhill recoveries should last twice the duration of the uphill run.  
Ideal incline: 5–10%

#### HILLS AT LACTATE THRESHOLD



Perform 1–8-minute runs uphill for a total of 20–40 minutes. Downhill recoveries should ideally be of equal duration, which is very challenging, but helps improve lactate clearance.  
Ideal incline: 3–6%

## Frequency

For most runners, the extra intensity and workload of hill runs will mean replacing another key workout.

### HILL RUNS

As hard workouts, hill runs should count among your three key weekly workouts (see p.179), so you would not generally perform them more than three times a week. However, if you do run between key workout days, keep any extra hill runs very easy. If you are training for a hilly event, consider converting more of your workouts to hill training.

vigorous, short hill sprints can also increase heart stroke volume (the amount of blood pumped by the heart in a single contraction).

## HOW TO DO IT

Find a hill of the right incline and distance for your workout. If the hill is not long enough, decrease the duration of the uphill sections and increase the number of reps. If you do not have access to a hill or an inclined treadmill, you can increase the resistance of the workout by running on a soft surface, such as sand or grass. Paces are difficult to translate from flat to hilly terrain, so these workouts are best done by effort (perhaps assisted by a heart rate monitor) rather than pace. For any given workout, run at the best effort you can maintain without having to slow down as the session progresses. At the end you should feel as though you could give 10 per cent more if you had to.

# CROSS TRAINING

**Any sport or exercise that you do in addition to running is known as cross training. Engaging in other forms of exercise is an effective way to perform “active recovery”, which gives your body a break from the toll of running while still maintaining fitness and adding variety to your training programme.**

**Cross training enables you to maintain aerobic fitness while reducing the stress of impact on your joints, muscles, and tendons. This is useful for recovery days, and for rehabilitation if you are returning to training after injury.**

## VARIETY AND RECOVERY

In older athletes, or those with musculoskeletal conditions, cross training helps to reduce the impact on the body while maintaining training load. In younger runners, maintaining variety is important to reduce injury risk and burnout.

Multidirectional activities, such as football and basketball, build strength and flexibility in multiple planes, and help prevent overuse injuries by adding variation to the repetitive motion of running. However, take care not to incur injuries through cross training. Strength training (see pp.96–155) also helps prevent injury while improving performance.

## RETURNING FROM INJURY

Choose types of cross training that address your needs without aggravating your injury. For

example, pool running is great when impact is the main concern; cycling or using a cross-trainer machine are other good options.

Try to mirror what you would be doing in running. For example, replace long, slow runs with long, slow pool runs or bike rides. For interval sessions, take a distance-based session (e.g. 6 x 800m) and convert it to time (e.g. 6 x 3 minutes) then aim for the same intensity as the distance-based session in the pool or on the bike or the cross-trainer. This will afford you many of the same cardiovascular benefits as running.

## HOW OFTEN SHOULD I CROSS TRAIN?

Some runners need a break from the impact of running, while others enjoy a change in routine, so the frequency of cross training should be specific to your individual needs. In general, is it best to perform cross training on recovery days when you do not have a key workout scheduled.

# THE TRAINING PROGRAMMES

The programmes in this book each recommend three key workouts per week. Symbols are used to denote each workout type, as well as details of distance or duration, pace or effort, duration of recovery sections, and number of repetitions. Each programme also includes a graph showing training volume.

## THE WORKOUTS

All the programmes (except for the Beginner 5 km walk-run programme) include workouts from each of the four broad categories described on pp.180–186. In this way, all the key areas of fitness are targeted.

Longer workouts are usually easy continuous runs to develop your endurance, or fast continuous runs, which improve aerobic capacity, lactate clearance, and

spacing. Shorter, more intense workouts are often comprised of speedwork in the form of interval training, and hill training, which helps improve muscular and aerobic conditioning.

### DYNAMIC WARM-UPS

Some programmes prescribe a dynamic warm-up, which is a full sequence of fluid motions that is beneficial for muscle activation and injury prevention. A complete

dynamic warm-up routine should consist of dynamic stretches (see pp.78–83), form drills (see pp.84–86 and p.89), and relaxed sprinting or “strides” (see p.87).

### STRIDES, SPRINTS, AND ACCELERATIONS

While these are all types of short interval training, their purpose is neurological and mechanical, like form drills. Strides are short, fast runs that should be relaxed and performed with good form. Sprints should be high cadence, focussing on a high stride rate rather than a long stride length. Perform accelerations on the flat; each run should gradually increase in speed to reach 100 per cent intensity.

### ACTIVATION SESSIONS

These sessions are designed to activate your muscles 1–2 days before a long run, hard workout, or race. The exercises used stimulate a large percentage of muscle fibres, which helps dispel sluggishness, but are short enough not to induce significant fatigue.



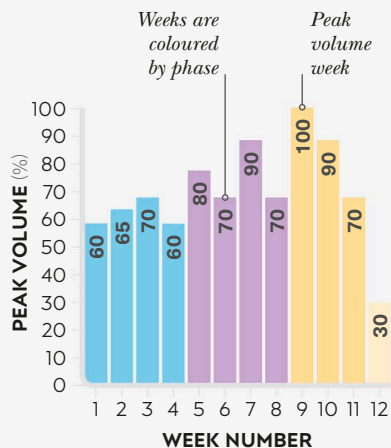
### Training volume

These graphs show each programme's training volume, which is measured in kilometres per week. Some programmes suggest that your exercise level should be at 60 per cent of the peak week before you begin. For example, if the peak volume is 100 km per week, you should be able to run 60 km per week.

If you are doing more training than the three key workouts listed, use the graph's volume percentages to scale your training, and progress gradually.

#### GRADUAL INCREASES

Each programme increases in volume and intensity gradually to help you avoid overtraining.



# EFFORT AND PACES

For each of the workouts in the programmes, there are effort or pace suggestions. Training at a range of paces broadens your running skills, and improves fitness at the same time.

The suggested paces are often based on a goal distance, so to use the programmes, you will need to work out your goal paces for various distances. An online pace calculator can be used to generate relatively accurate paces based on a personal best time in a race, or on a realistic target time based on

your current running ability. It is easiest to follow the workouts with the aid of a GPS monitor that can measure your pace during a run.

However, bear in mind that the suggested paces are targets only – maintaining good form and relaxation should be the priority. If you overreach to achieve a goal pace, you will not absorb the training load as effectively as you would have if you had run at a controlled effort. Make it your aim to finish each workout feeling like you could run 10 per cent further at the same pace if you had to.

## Non-distance paces

As well as distance-based paces, the following effort-based paces are used regularly in the programmes.

**Easy pace** should be easy enough to achieve recovery. A good guide is to set a limit of 70 per cent heart rate reserve (see p.163) or to run at least 20 per cent slower than your lactate threshold (LT) pace (see p.166). To calculate this, convert your LT pace to seconds and then multiply by 1.2.

**Steady pace** is an instruction for the recovery sections of pace-change runs. A steady pace recovery section is performed as close as possible to the pace of the fast section (ideally less than 30 sec/km slower than the preceding fast section).

### KEY TO WORKOUT SYMBOLS

#### Walk-run programme (pp.190–191)

 Walk

 Run

#### Easy continuous runs (p.180)

 Short run

 Medium run

 Long run

#### Fast continuous runs (pp.181–183)

 Tempo run

 Progression run

 Pace-change run

#### Interval training (pp.184–185)

 Strides

 Sprints

 Accelerations


 Anaerobic capacity training

 VO<sub>2</sub> max training

#### Hill training (p.186)

 Hill run

#### Other

 Dynamic warm-up

#### Shorthand symbols

↔ Alternate between paces

↑ Uphill run/walk/jog

↓ Downhill run/walk/jog

↳ x 4 ↳ Number of repetitions

> Run faster than given pace

< Run slower than given pace

@ Run at a given pace

#### Pace and effort notations

**E** Easy pace (RPE 2)

**S** Steady pace

**LT** Lactate threshold pace (RPE 4.3)

**MP** Marathon pace

**HMP** Half marathon pace

**10km** 10-km pace

**5km** 5-km pace

**3km** 3-km pace

**1500m** 1500-m pace

**800m** 800-m pace

**VO<sub>2</sub>** VO<sub>2</sub> max effort (RPE 6–7)

**AC** Anaerobic capacity effort (RPE 8–9)

**100i** 100 per cent intensity (RPE 10)

○ Recovery walk/jog half the duration of the run

● Recovery walk/jog equal to the duration of the run

●● Recovery walk/jog twice the duration of the run

●●●● Recovery walk/jog four times the duration of the run

# BEGINNER 5 KM PROGRAMME

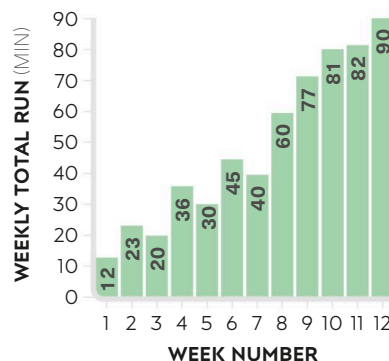
If you are completely new to running, this walk-run programme will build your capacity to run from 1 minute at a time to 30 minutes continuously within 12 weeks. Those returning to training after injury can also use this programme, but may be able to progress more quickly, or start at a later week – plan your return to running with a physiotherapist so your progress can be monitored.

## PROGRAMME GOALS

This programme aims to help you achieve a target distance of 5 km. Running continuously for 30 minutes will cover 5 km if your

pace is 6:00 min/km or faster. If it is slower than this, you can achieve 5 km by extending the programme – for example, aim for a run of 35 minutes if your pace is 7:00 min/km. In addition, extend the workout duration, for example performing from 30–40 minutes.

Begin each workout with 5 minutes of walking to warm up. Do the run sections at an “easy” pace – easy enough to carry a conversation while you are running. Do not hesitate to repeat a workout or a week if you do not feel ready for the next level. Take at least one day of rest, or do cross training, between each walk-run workout.



## TOTAL RUN TIME PER WEEK

This graph shows how the total time you will be running (versus walking) builds up over the 12-week programme.

FOR KEY TO WORKOUT SYMBOLS  
SEE PP.188-89





# BEGINNER 10 KM PROGRAMME

This programme prepares you to complete 10 km in your first race. Before starting, you should be capable of a continuous 5-km run, be running 3 times a week, and have built up an exercise volume equivalent to 60 per cent of the programme's peak volume.

In this programme, any workout beginning with a pace other than easy should be preceded by a 10-minute easy run and a dynamic warm-up.

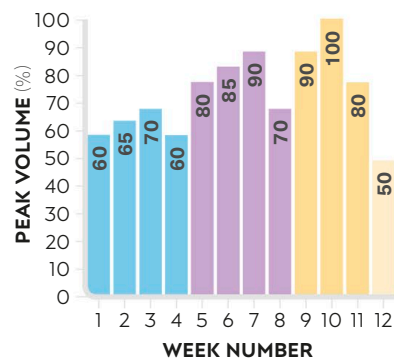
## PROGRAMME GOALS

Weeks 1–4 focus on base-building by increasing the distance of the

long run. Perform the 30-second stride workouts in a form-focused but relaxed way, to create an easy, efficient stride. Recover in week 4.

In the support phase, the programme intensifies with pace-change runs, interval training, and hill training. Like the strides, the hill reps should be done with form and relaxation as the main goals. Week 8 is a recovery week, with easier workouts and a shorter long run.

Weeks 9–12 are race-specific, with longer pace-change and intervals workouts. During the taper in week 12, reduce any easy runs or cross training to less than 50 per cent of your usual volume.



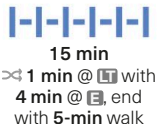


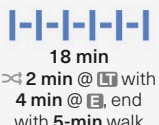
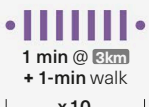
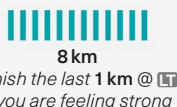
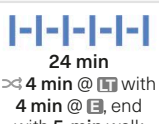

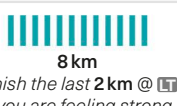
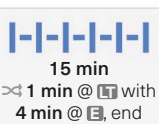

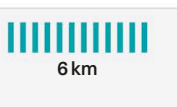
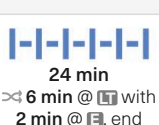
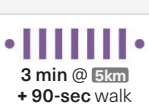
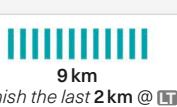

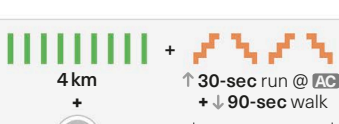
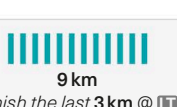
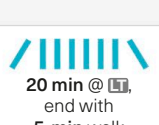
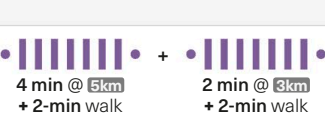
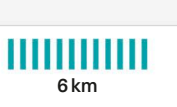

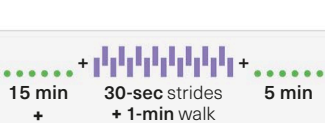
## TRAINING VOLUME PER WEEK

The training volume builds gradually, peaking in week 10. Weeks 4 and 8 are recovery weeks, and week 12 is tapered.

FOR KEY TO WORKOUT SYMBOLS SEE PP.188-89

	WORKOUT 1	WORKOUT 2	WORKOUT 3
1	15 min + 30-sec strides + 1-min walk x6 + 5 min	15 min + 30-sec strides + 1-min walk x6 + 5 min	5 km
2	20 min + 30-sec strides + 1-min walk x8 + 5 min	20 min + 30-sec strides + 1-min walk x8 + 5 min	6 km
3	25 min + 30-sec strides + 1-min walk x10 + 5 min	25 min + 30-sec strides + 1-min walk x10 + 5 min	7 km
4	15 min + 30-sec strides + 1-min walk x4 + 5 min	15 min + 30-sec strides + 1-min walk x4 + 5 min	5 km



		WORKOUT 1	WORKOUT 2	WORKOUT 3
SUPPORT	5	 <p>15 min                      ▷ 1 min @ T1 with                      4 min @ T2, end                      with 5-min walk</p>	 <p>4 km                      +                      ↑ 30-sec run @ AC,                      + ↓ 90-sec walk                      x6</p>	 <p>7 km                      Finish the last 1 km @ T1                      if you are feeling strong</p>
	6	 <p>18 min                      ▷ 2 min @ T1 with                      4 min @ T2, end                      with 5-min walk</p>	 <p>1 min @ 3 km                      + 1-min walk                      x10</p>	 <p>8 km                      Finish the last 1 km @ T1                      if you are feeling strong</p>
	7	 <p>24 min                      ▷ 4 min @ T1 with                      4 min @ T2, end                      with 5-min walk</p>	 <p>4 km                      +                      ↑ 30-sec run @ AC,                      + ↓ 90-sec walk                      x8</p>	 <p>8 km                      Finish the last 2 km @ T1                      if you are feeling strong</p>
	8	 <p>15 min                      ▷ 1 min @ T1 with                      4 min @ T2, end                      with 5-min walk</p>	 <p>15 min                      +                      30-sec strides                      + 1-min walk                      x6                      + 5 min</p>	 <p>6 km</p>
RACE-SPECIFIC	9	 <p>24 min                      ▷ 6 min @ T1 with                      2 min @ T2, end                      with 5-min walk</p>	 <p>3 min @ 5 km                      + 90-sec walk                      x6</p>	 <p>9 km                      Finish the last 2 km @ T1                      if you are feeling strong</p>
	10	 <p>20 min                      ▷ 8 min @ T1 with                      2 min @ T2, end                      with 5-min walk</p>	 <p>4 km                      +                      ↑ 30-sec run @ AC,                      + ↓ 90-sec walk                      x10</p>	 <p>9 km                      Finish the last 3 km @ T1                      if you are feeling strong</p>
	11	 <p>20 min @ T1,                      end with                      5-min walk</p>	 <p>4 min @ 5 km                      + 2-min walk                      x3                      + 2 min @ 3 km                      + 2-min walk                      x3</p>	 <p>6 km</p>
TAPER	12	 <p>15 min                      ▷ 1 min @ T1 with                      4 min @ T2, end                      with 5-min walk</p>	 <p>15 min                      +                      30-sec strides                      + 1-min walk                      x6                      + 5 min</p>	RACE DAY

2-3 days before race

# ADVANCED 10 KM PROGRAMME

If you have competed in 10-km races before, this programme is designed to help you improve your race times by building up the intensity and duration of the workouts. You should be able to run continuously for 15 km before starting this programme.

In this programme, any workout that begins with marathon pace or faster (see pp.188–89) should be preceded by a 3-km easy run and a dynamic warm-up.

## INTRODUCTION PHASE

This phase prepares you for the base-building phase by building up to 60 per cent of peak volume. This may take longer than three weeks, depending on your starting point, so repeat a week if needed.

## BASE-BUILDING PHASE

Weeks 4–9 will raise aerobic volume, introduce aerobic intensity, and improve your running skills. Workout 1 focuses on interval training on hills and on the flat;

workout 2 consists of short and medium fast continuous runs with increasing intensity; while the long runs of workout 3 increase in volume and aerobic intensity.

## SUPPORT PHASE

In week 10, workouts 1 and 2 are lighter, to aid recovery. Weeks 11–15 continue to increase aerobic volume, and aim to improve your speed endurance, lactate threshold speed, and ability to clear lactate. In workout 1, the short and medium runs become more difficult, and longer hill workouts at  $VO_2$  max effort are added. Workout 2 introduces  $VO_2$  max and anaerobic capacity intervals. Workout 3 expands the time spent at half marathon pace and increases the pace of the steady recoveries during these runs.

## RACE-SPECIFIC PHASE

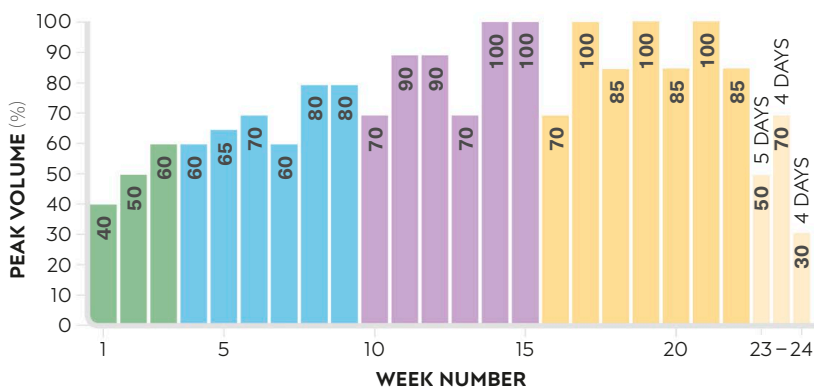
Following lighter workouts in week 16 to aid recovery, weeks 17–24 prepare you to run at goal race pace and keep lactate levels

relatively low so that your muscles can clear any accumulated lactate quickly. Workouts 1 and 2 consist of pace-change runs at 10 km, fast continuous runs that increase in duration, short hill sprints to maintain power, and interval training to maintain speed. For workout 3, during pace-change runs at half marathon pace (HMP), keep the steady pace sections as close to HMP as possible.

## TAPER PHASE

The 13-day taper in weeks 23 and 24 is divided into 3 parts: an initial 5-day taper kick-starts your recovery after the peak training phase; the next 4 days increase the load slightly to include workouts that maintain your fitness without stressing the body; and a final 4-day taper during which you should perform only an activation session before your race.

**FOR KEY TO WORKOUT SYMBOLS  
SEE PP.188–89**







### PHASE OF PROGRAMME

- Introduction
- Base-building
- Support
- Race-specific
- Taper

### TRAINING VOLUME PER WEEK

Training volume peaks in week 14 and is maintained (not increased) until a 13-day taper, which is split into 3 parts.

	WORKOUT 1	WORKOUT 2	WORKOUT 3
1 2 3 INTRODUCTION	30 min	30 min	10 km
	40 min + 	40 min + 	12 km
	50 min + 	50 min + 	14 km
4 5 6 7 8 BASE-BUILDING	30-sec sprint + 60-90-sec walk x8	30 min x4 1 min @ 10 sec < LT with 2 min @ E	14 km x4 12 km @ E with 2 km @ HMP
	↑ 10-sec run @ 100, + ↓ 2-min walk x5 + 30-sec sprint + 60-90-sec walk x5	30 min 10 min @ 40 sec < LT + 8 min @ 30 sec < LT + 6 min @ 20 sec < LT + 4 min @ 10 sec < LT + 2 min @ LT	15 km x4 4 km @ E with 1 km @ LT
	↑ 10-sec run @ 100, + ↓ 2-min walk x8 + 30-sec sprint + 60-90-sec walk x4	50 min 30 min @ E + 10 min @ LT + 10 min @ E	5 x 3-km runs @ 60 sec < HMP + @ 45 sec < HMP + @ 30 sec < HMP + @ 15 sec < HMP + @ HMP
	↑ 15-sec run @ 100, + ↓ 2-min walk x8 + 30-sec accelerations + 60-90-sec walk x4	30 min x4 90 sec @ 10 sec > LT with 90 sec @ E	18 km 6 km @ E + 6 km @ MP + 6 km @ E
	↑ 15-sec run @ 100, + ↓ 2-min walk x10 + 30-sec accelerations + 60-90-sec walk x4	5 x 6-min runs @ 40 sec < LT + @ 30 sec < LT + @ 20 sec < LT + @ 10 sec < LT + @ LT	3 km + 16 km x4 1 km @ LT with 3 km @ E

	WORKOUT 1	WORKOUT 2	WORKOUT 3
9	<p><b>BASE-BUILDING</b></p> <p>↑ 15-sec run @ 100% + ↓ 2-min walk x10</p> <p>30-sec accelerations + 60-90-sec walk x6</p>	<p>50 min 20 min @ E + 20 min @ LT + 10 min @ E</p>	<p>4 x 5-km runs @ 60 sec &lt; MP + @ 40 sec &lt; MP + @ 20 sec &lt; MP + @ MP</p>
10	<p>30 min ⋈ 4 min @ LT with 2 min @ E, end with 5-min walk</p> <p>30 sec @ 3km-1500m, 1-min walk x4</p>	<p>20-30 min + ↑ 10-sec run @ 100% + ↓ 2-min walk x4</p>	<p>15 km 5 km @ E + 5 km @ HMP + 5 km @ E</p> <p><i>or substitute with a 3-5 km race</i></p>
11	<p>↑ 15-sec run @ 100% + ↓ 2-min walk x4</p> <p>↑ 1-min run @ VO<sub>2</sub> + ↓ 2-min jog x12</p>	<p><b>ACTIVATION</b></p> <p>300 m @ 1500m + ●●●●● walk/jog x5</p> <p>200 m @ 800m + ●●●●● walk/jog x5</p>	<p>4 km + 18 km ⋈ 1 km @ LT with 2 km @ E</p>
12	<p>↑ 15-sec run @ 100% + ↓ 2-min walk x4</p> <p>21 min ⋈ 1 min @ 10 sec &gt; LT with 2 min @ S</p>	<p>800 m @ 3km + ●●●●● walk/jog x5</p> <p>200 m @ 1500m + ●●●●● walk/jog x4</p>	<p>5 x 3-km runs @ 40 sec &lt; HMP + @ 30 sec &lt; HMP + @ 20 sec &lt; HMP + @ 10 sec &lt; HMP + @ HMP</p>
13	<p>↑ 15-sec run @ 100% + ↓ 2-min walk x4</p> <p>↑ 90-sec run @ VO<sub>2</sub> + ↓ 3-min jog x8</p>	<p>400 m @ 1500m + ●●●●● walk/jog x5</p> <p>200 m @ 800m + ●●●●● walk/jog x5</p>	<p>22 km 5 km @ E + 5 km @ MP + 5 km @ E</p>
14	<p>↑ 15-sec run @ 100% + ↓ 2-min walk x4</p> <p>4 x 6 min runs + @ 30 sec &lt; LT + @ 20 sec &lt; LT + @ 10 sec &lt; LT + @ LT</p>	<p>1000 m @ 3km + ●●●●● walk/jog x4</p> <p>200 m @ 1500m + ●●●●● walk/jog x4</p>	<p>16 km ⋈ 3 km @ LT with 1 km @ E</p>
15	<p>↑ 15-sec run @ 100% + ↓ 2-min walk x4</p> <p>↑ 2-min run @ VO<sub>2</sub> + ↓ 2-min jog x6</p>	<p>600 m @ 1500m + ●●●●● walk/jog x4</p> <p>200 m @ 800m + ●●●●● walk/jog x5</p>	<p>4 x 6-km runs @ 45 sec &lt; MP + @ 30 sec &lt; MP + @ 15 sec &lt; MP + @ MP</p>
16	<p><b>RACE-SPECIFIC</b></p> <p>30 min ⋈ 4 min @ LT with 2 min @ E, end with 5-min walk</p> <p>30 sec @ 3km + 1-min walk x4</p>	<p>20-30 min + ↑ 10-sec run @ 100% + ↓ 2-min walk x4</p>	<p>16 km 4 km @ E + 8 km @ HMP + 4 km @ E</p> <p><i>or substitute with a 5-8 km race</i></p>

	WORKOUT 1	WORKOUT 2	WORKOUT 3
17	 ↑ 10-sec run @ 100i + ↓ 2-min walk x4 12 km ⚡ 1 min @ 10km with 1 min @ E	 1000 m @ 5km + ○ walk/jog x6 200 m @ 1500m + ●● walk/jog x4	 4 km + 20 km ⚡ 1 km @ LT with 1 km @ E
18	 ↑ 10-sec run @ 100i + ↓ 2-min walk x4 60 min ⚡ 4 min @ LT with 2 min @ S	 400 m @ 10km with 400 m @ S 200 m @ 1500m + ●● walk/jog x4	 4 x 4-km runs @ 30 sec < HMP + @ 20 sec < HMP + @ 10 sec < HMP + @ HMP
19	 ↑ 10-sec run @ 100i + ↓ 2-min walk x4 12 km ⚡ 2 km @ 10km with 1 km @ E	 1200 m @ 5km + ○ walk/jog x5 200 m @ 1500m + ●● walk/jog x4	 3 km + 21 km ⚡ 18 km @ MP 3 km @ E
20	 ↑ 10-sec run @ 100i + ↓ 2-min walk x4 40 min @ LT	 600 m @ 10km with 400 m @ S, end with 5-min walk 200 m @ 1500m + ●● walk/jog x4	 15 km ⚡ 4 km @ LT with 1 km @ E
21	 ↑ 10-sec run @ 100i + ↓ 2-min walk x4 12 km ⚡ 3 km @ 10km with 1 km @ E	 1600 m @ 5km + ○ walk/jog x4 200 m @ 1500m + ●● walk/jog x4	 4 x 6-km runs @ 30 sec < MP + @ 20 sec < MP + @ 10 sec < MP + @ MP
22	 ↑ 10-sec run @ 100i + ↓ 2-min walk x4 4 x 9-min runs + @ 10 sec < LT + @ 5 sec < LT + @ LT + @ 5 sec > LT	 800 m @ 10km with 400 m @ S, end with 5-min walk 200 m @ 1500m + ●● walk/jog x4	 3 km + 15 km 12 km @ HMP + 3 km @ E
23	 ↑ 10-sec run @ 100i + ↓ 2-min walk x4 30 min ⚡ 4 min @ LT with 2 min @ E	 20 min 20 min @ LT end with 5-min walk 200 m @ 1500m + ●● walk/jog x4	 16 km ⚡ 3 km @ E with 1 km @ LT
24	 8 km ⚡ 600 m @ 10km with 400 m @ E, end with 5-min walk 200 m @ 3km + ●● walk/jog x4	 20-30 min + ↑ 10-sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x4	RACE DAY
	5 days before race	ACTIVATION 1-2 days before race	

# BEGINNER HALF MARATHON PROGRAMME

This programme trains you to complete a first half marathon. Before starting, you should be capable of a continuous 10-km run, be running 3 times a week, and have built up an exercise volume equivalent to 60 per cent of the programme's peak volume.

In this programme, any workout starting faster than easy pace should be preceded by a 10-minute easy run and a dynamic warm-up.

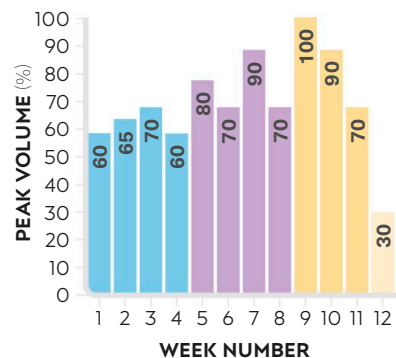
## PROGRAMME GOALS

During base-building in weeks 1–4, the aims are to build volume via long runs, introduce intensity with

short and long pace-change runs, and to improve form with strides, sprints, and hill workouts.

Weeks 5–8 (support phase) introduce interval training at 3-km pace and 1500-m pace. Easy continuous runs are longer, and the ratio of fast to easy pace running becomes harder.

Weeks 9–12 are race-specific. The long runs and fast continuous runs both become longer and the ratio of fast to easy pace running increases. Interval training shifts to 5-km pace. Begin the 7–8-day taper in week 12 the weekend before your race, after the long run in week 11.



## TRAINING VOLUME PER WEEK

The training volume builds to a peak in week 9. Week 12 drops to 30 per cent volume, so you are fresh for your race.

FOR KEY TO WORKOUT SYMBOLS  
SEE PP.188–89

	WORKOUT 1	WORKOUT 2	WORKOUT 3
1	<p>18 min ⌘ 2 min @ <b>LT</b> with 4 min @ <b>E</b>, end with 5-min walk</p> <p>30-sec strides + 1-min walk x4</p>	<p>↑ 10-sec run @ <b>1000</b>, + ↓ 2-min walk x2</p> <p>30-sec sprint + 60-90-sec walk x6</p>	<p>10 km</p>
2	<p>18 min ⌘ 1 min @ 10 sec &gt; <b>LT</b> with 2 min @ <b>E</b>, end with 5-min walk</p> <p>30-sec strides + 1-min walk x4</p>	<p>5 km</p>	<p>12 km ⌘ 3 km @ <b>E</b> with 1 km @ <b>HMP</b></p>
3	<p>24 min ⌘ 4 min @ <b>LT</b> with 4 min @ <b>E</b>, end with 5-min walk</p> <p>30-sec strides + 1-min walk x4</p>	<p>↑ 10-sec run @ <b>1000</b>, + ↓ 2-min walk x4</p> <p>30-sec sprint + 60-90-sec walk x8</p>	<p>14 km</p>
4	<p>24 min ⌘ 2 min @ 10 sec &gt; <b>LT</b> with 2 min @ <b>E</b>, end with 5-min walk</p> <p>30-sec strides + 1-min walk x4</p>	<p>7 km</p>	<p>12 km ⌘ 1 km @ <b>HMP</b> with 1 km @ <b>S</b></p>

		WORKOUT 1	WORKOUT 2	WORKOUT 3
SUPPORT	5	<p>↑ 10-sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x4</p> <p>20 min x 8 min @ LT with 2 min @ E</p>	<p>200m @ 3km + ● walk x16</p>	<p>16 km</p>
	6	<p>24 min x 2 min @ LT 10 sec &gt; LT with 2 min @ S, end with 5-min walk</p> <p>30-sec strides + 1-min walk x4</p>	<p>8 km</p>	<p>12 km x 2 km @ HMP with 1 km @ S</p>
	7	<p>↑ 10-sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x4</p> <p>20 min @ LT</p>	<p>400m @ 3km + ● walk x8</p> <p>200m @ 1500m + ●● walk x4</p>	<p>18 km</p>
	8	<p>4 x 5-min runs @ 20 sec &lt; LT + @ 10 sec &lt; LT + @ LT + @ 10 sec &gt; LT, end with 5-min walk</p> <p>30-sec strides + 1-min walk x4</p>	<p>9 km</p>	<p>12 km x 3 km @ HMP with 1 km @ S</p>
RACE-SPECIFIC	9	<p>↑ 10-sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x4</p> <p>25 min x 3 min @ LT 10 sec &gt; LT with 2 min @ S</p>	<p>400m @ 5km + ○ walk x12</p> <p>200m @ 1500m + ●● walk x4</p>	<p>20 km</p>
	10	<p>8.4 km x 800m @ 10km with 400m @ E, end with 5-min walk</p> <p>200m @ 1500m + ●● walk x4</p>	<p>10 km</p>	<p>15 km x 4 km @ HMP with 1 km @ S</p>
	11	<p>↑ 10-sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x4</p> <p>30 min @ LT</p>	<p>800m @ 5km + ○ walk x6</p> <p>200m @ 1500m + ●● walk x4</p>	<p>14 km</p>
TAPER	12	<p>15 min x 2 min @ LT with 1 min @ E, end with 5-min walk</p> <p>30-sec strides + 1-min walk x4</p>	<p>20-30 min + ↑ 10-sec @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x4</p>	RACE DAY
ACTIVATION 2 days before race				

# ADVANCED HALF MARATHON PROGRAMME

This programme is ideal when you have completed a major race and want to prepare for the next half marathon. Over 24 weeks, this training programme aims to help you reach your goal race time.

In this programme, any workout that begins with marathon pace or faster (see pp.188–89) should be preceded by a 3-km easy run and a dynamic warm-up.

## INTRODUCTION PHASE

Your goal in this phase is to recover from the previous race and achieve 60 per cent of peak training volume before starting the next phase. This may take longer than three weeks, so repeat a week if needed.

## BASE-BUILDING PHASE

In weeks 4–9, workout 1 improves running skills with short sprints (on hills and on the flat); workout 2 introduces aerobic intensity with short and medium fast continuous

runs; and workout 3 builds aerobic volume and intensity with long fast continuous runs.

## SUPPORT PHASE

Recover in Week 10 with lighter sessions for workouts 1 and 2. Weeks 11–15 aim to improve your aerobic volume, speed endurance, lactate threshold speed, and lactate clearance. For workout 1, the pace-change and progression runs become harder, and longer hill workouts are introduced. Workout 2 introduces  $VO_2$  max and anaerobic capacity intervals. The long runs for workout 3 are designed to help you practise half marathon goal pace.

## RACE-SPECIFIC PHASE

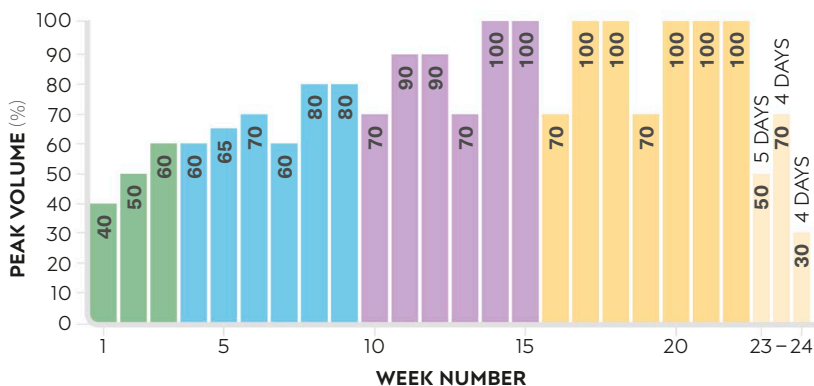
Lighter workouts in week 16 will help you to recover before weeks 17–22, during which you will spend longer running at goal race pace. Workout 1 increases the difficulty of the pace-change runs to improve your ability to clear

lactate from the muscles, and includes short sprints to maintain power. Workout 2 contains short hill sprints and medium fast continuous runs that increase in intensity. Workout 3 focusses on long runs at half marathon pace (HMP); aim to keep the steady pace sections of these runs as close to HMP as possible.

## TAPER

The 13-day taper in weeks 23 and 24 is divided into 3 parts: an initial 5-day taper kick-starts your recovery after training at peak volume in weeks 20–22; the next 4 days increase the load slightly to include workouts that maintain your fitness without stressing the body; and a final 4-day taper during which you should perform only an activation session before your race.

**FOR KEY TO WORKOUT SYMBOLS SEE PP.188–89**










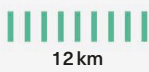





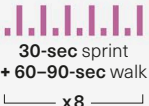
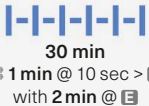

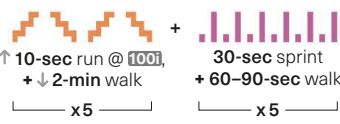

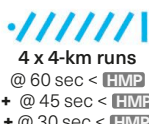

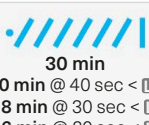
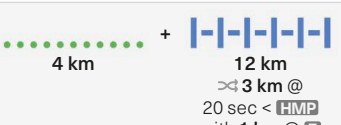
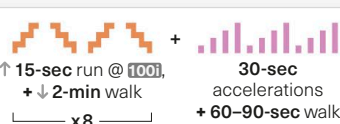
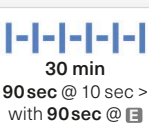
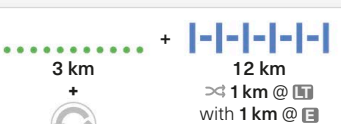

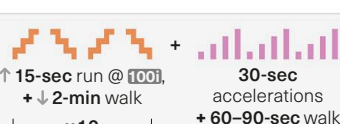

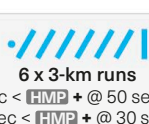
### PHASE OF PROGRAMME

- Introduction
- Base-building
- Support
- Race-specific
- Taper











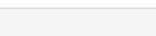





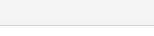
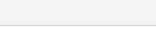
### TRAINING VOLUME PER WEEK

Training volume peaks in week 14 and is maintained (not increased) until a 13-day taper, which is split into 3 parts.



	WORKOUT 1	WORKOUT 2	WORKOUT 3
1 2 3 INTRODUCTION	 30 min	 30 min	 10 km
	 40 min + 	 40 min + 	 12 km
	 50 min + 	 50 min + 	 14 km
4 5 6 7 8 BASE-BUILDING	 30-sec sprint + 60-90-sec walk x8	 30 min ⌘ 1 min @ 10 sec < LT with 2 min @ E	 5 km + 9 km ⌘ 1 km @ LT with 2 km @ E
	 ↑ 10-sec run @ 100, + ↓ 2-min walk x5 + 30-sec sprint + 60-90-sec walk x5	 50 min 30 min @ E + 10 min @ LT + 10 min @ E	 4 x 4-km runs @ 60 sec < HMP + @ 45 sec < HMP + @ 30 sec < HMP + @ 15 sec < HMP
	 ↑ 10-sec run @ 100, + ↓ 2-min walk x8 + 30-sec sprint + 60-90-sec walk x4	 30 min 10 min @ 40 sec < LT + 8 min @ 30 sec < LT + 6 min @ 20 sec < LT + 4 min @ 10 sec < LT + 2 min @ LT	 4 km + 12 km ⌘ 3 km @ 20 sec < HMP with 1 km @ E
	 ↑ 15-sec run @ 100, + ↓ 2-min walk x8 + 30-sec accelerations + 60-90-sec walk x4	 30 min ⌘ 90 sec @ 10 sec > LT with 90 sec @ E	 3 km + 12 km ⌘ 1 km @ LT with 1 km @ E 
	 ↑ 15-sec run @ 100, + ↓ 2-min walk x10 + 30-sec accelerations + 60-90-sec walk x4	 50 min 20 min @ E + 20 min @ LT + 10 min @ E	 6 x 3-km runs @ 60 sec < HMP + @ 50 sec < HMP + @ 40 sec < HMP + @ 30 sec < HMP + @ 20 sec < HMP + @ 10 sec < HMP

	WORKOUT 1	WORKOUT 2	WORKOUT 3
9	<p><b>BASE-BUILDING</b></p> <p>↑ 15-sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x 10</p> <p>30-sec accelerations + 60-90-sec walk x 6</p>	<p>5 x 6-min runs @ 40 sec &lt; Lt + @ 30 sec &lt; Lt + @ 20 sec &lt; Lt + @ 10 sec &lt; Lt + @ Lt</p>	<p>3 km + 15 km</p> <p>∞ 4 km @ 20 sec &lt; HMP with 1 km @ E</p>
10	<p>30 min ∞ 4 min @ Lt with 2 min @ E, end with 5 min walk</p> <p>30 sec @ 3km-1500m, 1-min walk x 4</p>	<p>20-30 min + 10-sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x 4</p> <p><b>ACTIVATION</b></p>	<p>14 km ∞ 1 km @ HMP with 1 km @ S</p> <p><i>or substitute with a 5-8 km race</i></p>
11	<p>↑ 15-sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x 4</p> <p>↑ 1-min run @ VO2, + ↓ 2-min jog x 12</p>	<p>1000m @ 5km + ○ walk/jog x 6</p> <p>200m @ 1500m + ●● walk/jog x 4</p>	<p>20 km + 14 km @ 20 sec &lt; HMP + 3 km @ E</p>
12	<p>↑ 15-sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x 4</p> <p>20 min ∞ 1 min @ 10 sec &gt; Lt with 2 min @ S, end with 5-min walk</p>	<p>800m @ 3km + ● walk/jog x 5</p> <p>200m @ 1500m + ●● walk/jog x 4</p>	<p>5 x 4-km runs @ 60 sec &lt; HMP + @ 45 sec &lt; HMP + @ 30 sec &lt; HMP + @ 15 sec &lt; HMP + @ HMP</p>
13	<p>↑ 15-sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x 4</p> <p>↑ 90-sec run @ VO2, + ↓ 3-min jog x 8</p>	<p>1200m @ 5km + ○ walk/jog x 5</p> <p>200m @ 1500m + ●● walk/jog x 4</p>	<p>15 km ∞ 2 km @ HMP with 1 km @ S</p>
14	<p>↑ 15-sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x 4</p> <p>4 x 6-min runs @ 30 sec &lt; Lt + @ 20 sec &lt; Lt + @ 10 sec &lt; Lt + @ Lt</p>	<p>1000m @ 3km + ● walk/jog x 4</p> <p>200m @ 1500m + ●● walk/jog x 4</p>	<p>22 km + 14 km @ 15 sec &lt; HMP + 4 km @ E</p>
15	<p>↑ 15-sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x 4</p> <p>↑ 2-min run @ VO2, + ↓ 4-min jog x 6</p>	<p>1600m @ 5km + ○ walk/jog x 4</p> <p>200m @ 1500m + ●● walk/jog x 4</p>	<p>4 x 5-km runs @ 45 sec &lt; HMP + @ 30 sec &lt; HMP + @ 15 sec &lt; HMP + @ HMP</p>
16	<p><b>RACE-SPECIFIC</b></p> <p>30 min ∞ 4 min @ Lt with 2 min @ E, end with 5-min walk</p> <p>30 sec @ 3km + 1-min walk x 4</p>	<p>20-30 min + 10-sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x 4</p> <p><b>ACTIVATION</b></p>	<p>16 km ∞ 3 km @ HMP with 1 km @ S</p> <p><i>or substitute with a 10-15 km race</i></p>

	WORKOUT 1	WORKOUT 2	WORKOUT 3
RACE-SPECIFIC	 +  <b>30 min</b> > 2 min @ <b>LT</b> 10 sec > <b>LT</b> with 3 min @ <b>S</b> , end with 5-min walk x6	 +  ↑ 10-sec run @ <b>100i</b> , + ↓ 2-min walk x4	 +  <b>5 km</b> + (optional) 
	 +  <b>12 km</b> > 1 km @ <b>10km</b> with 1 km @ <b>E</b> , end with 5-min walk x6	 +  ↑ 10-sec run @ <b>100i</b> , + ↓ 2-min walk x4	 <b>4 x 6-km runs</b> @ 45 sec < <b>HMP</b> + @ 30 sec < <b>HMP</b> + @ 15 sec < <b>HMP</b> + @ <b>HMP</b>
	 +  <b>30 min</b> > 3 min @ <b>LT</b> 10 sec > <b>LT</b> with 3 min @ <b>S</b> , end with 5-min walk x6	 +  ↑ 10-sec run @ <b>100i</b> , + ↓ 2-min walk x4	 <b>15 km</b> > 4 km @ <b>HMP</b> with 1 km @ <b>S</b>
	 +  <b>12 km</b> > 2 km @ <b>10km</b> with 1 km @ <b>E</b> , end with 5-min walk x6	 +  ↑ 10-sec run @ <b>100i</b> , + ↓ 2-min walk x4	 +  <b>5 km</b> + (optional) 
	 +  <b>30 min</b> > 3 min @ <b>LT</b> 10 sec > <b>LT</b> with 2 min @ <b>S</b> , end with 5-min walk x6	 +  ↑ 10-sec run @ <b>100i</b> , + ↓ 2-min walk x4	 <b>4 x 6-km runs</b> @ 30 sec < <b>HMP</b> + @ 20 sec < <b>HMP</b> + @ 10 sec < <b>HMP</b> + @ <b>HMP</b>
	 +  <b>12 km</b> > 3 km @ <b>10km</b> with 1 km @ <b>E</b> , end with 5-min walk x6	 +  ↑ 10-sec run @ <b>100i</b> , + ↓ 2-min walk x4	 <b>14 km @ HMP</b>
TAPER	 +  <b>30 min</b> > 4 min @ <b>LT</b> with 2 min @ <b>E</b> , end with 5-min walk x4	 +  ↑ 10-sec run @ <b>100i</b> , + ↓ 2-min walk x4	 <b>16 km</b> > 3 km @ <b>E</b> with 1 km @ <b>HMP</b>
	 +  <b>8 km</b> > 1 km @ <b>HMP</b> with 1 km @ <b>E</b> , end with 5-min walk x6	 +  <b>20-30 min</b> + 	RACE DAY
5 days before race	ACTIVATION 1 or 2 days before race		

# BEGINNER MARATHON PROGRAMME

This programme prepares you for a first marathon. Before starting, you should be capable of running 21 km continuously, be running at least 3 times a week, and have built up an exercise volume equivalent to 60 per cent of the programme's peak volume.

In this programme, any workout beginning with a pace other than easy should be preceded by a 10-minute easy run and a dynamic warm-up.

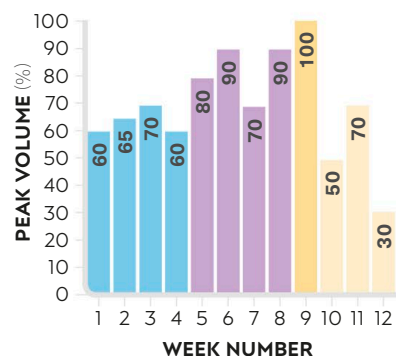
## PROGRAMME GOALS

During base-building, weeks 1 to 4, long runs increase in intensity and

distance, while strides, sprints, and hill training are introduced to improve speed and power.

In weeks 5–8, the support phase introduces anaerobic capacity and VO<sub>2</sub> max intervals to improve lactate clearance. The volume of fast continuous and long runs increases to help improve your endurance.

The race-specific phase, weeks 9–12, focuses on aerobic intensity, with workouts ranging from marathon pace to slightly faster than lactate threshold pace. Allowing time for rest and recovery before the race are the main goals in the final three weeks.



## TRAINING VOLUME PER WEEK

The training volume builds gradually to a peak in week 9. A long taper period allows adequate recovery before racing.

FOR KEY TO WORKOUT SYMBOLS SEE PP.188-89

	WORKOUT 1	WORKOUT 2	WORKOUT 3
1	<p>18 min                      &gt; 2 min @ <b>LT</b>                      with 4 min @ <b>E</b>,                      end with 5-min walk</p> <p>30-sec strides                      + 1-min walk                      x4</p>	<p>30-sec sprint                      + 60-90-sec walk                      x8</p>	<p>21 km</p>
2	<p>24 min                      &gt; 2 min @                      10 sec &gt; <b>LT</b>                      with 2 min @ <b>E</b>,                      end with 5-min walk</p> <p>30-sec strides                      + 1-min walk                      x4</p>	<p>10 km</p>	<p>16 min                      &gt; 1 km @ <b>MP</b>                      with 1 km @ <b>E</b></p>
3	<p>24 min                      &gt; 4 min @ <b>LT</b>                      with 4 min @ <b>E</b>,                      end with 5-min walk</p> <p>30-sec strides                      + 1-min walk                      x4</p>	<p>↑ 10-sec run @ <b>100%</b>,                      + ↓ 2-min walk                      x4</p> <p>30-sec sprint                      + 60-90-sec walk                      x6</p>	<p>24 km</p>
4	<p>↑ 10-sec run @ <b>100%</b>,                      + ↓ 2-min walk                      x4</p> <p>24 min                      &gt; 2 min @                      10 sec &gt; <b>LT</b>                      with 2 min @ <b>S</b></p>	<p>12 km</p>	<p>18 min                      &gt; 2 km @ <b>MP</b>                      with 1 km @ <b>S</b></p>

	WORKOUT 1	WORKOUT 2	WORKOUT 3
SUPPORT	<p>↑ 10 sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2 min walk x4</p> <p>20 min ⊃ 8 min @ LT with 2 min @ E</p>	<p>●       ● 200m @ 3km + ● walk x16</p>	<p>        27 km</p>
	<p>↑ 10 sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2 min walk x4</p> <p>+ ●      </p> <p>5 x 4-min runs @ 20 sec &lt; LT + @ 15 sec &lt; LT + @ 10 sec &lt; LT + @ 5 sec &lt; LT + @ LT</p>	<p>●       ● + ●       ● 400m @ 5km + ○ walk x12</p> <p>200m @ 1500m + ● ● walk x4</p>	<p>        30 km</p>
	<p>●       ● + ●       ● 400m @ 3km + ○ walk x8</p> <p>200m @ 1500m + ● ● walk x4</p>	<p>        15 km</p>	<p> - - - -  20 km ⊃ 4 km @ MP with 1 km @ S</p>
	<p>↑ 10 sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2 min walk x4</p> <p>20 min @ LT</p>	<p>●       ● + ●       ● 800m @ 5km + ○ walk x6</p> <p>200m @ 1500m + ● ● walk x4</p>	<p>        33 km</p>
RACE-SPECIFIC	<p>↑ 10 sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2 min walk x4</p> <p>25 min ⊃ 3 min @ LT 10 sec &gt; LT with 2 min @ S</p>	<p>        +       10 km @ MP, end with 5 min walk</p> <p>30 sec strides + 1 min walk x6</p>	<p>        36 km</p>
	<p> - - - -  +       24 min ⊃ 4 min @ LT with 2 min @ E, end with 5 min walk</p> <p>30 sec strides + 1 min walk x4</p>	<p>● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● 8 km</p>	<p> - - - -  24 km ⊃ 5 km @ MP with 1 km @ S</p>
TAPER	<p>↑ 10 sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2 min walk x4</p> <p>4 x 4-min runs @ 20 sec &lt; LT + @ 10 sec &lt; LT + @ LT + 10 sec &gt; LT</p>	<p>        +       12 km @ MP, end with 5 min walk</p> <p>30 sec strides + 1 min walk x6</p>	<p>        15-18 km</p>
	<p> - - - -  +       15 min ⊃ 2 min @ LT with 1 min @ E, end with 5 min walk</p> <p>30 sec strides + 1 min walk x4</p>	<p>● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● + ↑ 10 sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2 min walk x4</p> <p>20-30 min +</p> <p>ACTIVATION 2 days before race</p>	<p>RACE DAY</p>

# ADVANCED MARATHON PROGRAMME

If you have completed a major race, this programme is tailored to prepare you for the next one. Over the course of 24 weeks, it aims to improve your race time.

In this programme, any workout that begins with marathon pace or faster (see pp.188–89) should be preceded by a 3-km easy run and a dynamic warm-up.

## INTRODUCTION PHASE

This phase helps you to recover from the last major race. Build up to 60 per cent of peak training volume with easy continuous runs and dynamic warm-ups before starting the next phase. This may take longer than three weeks, so repeat a week if needed.

## BASE-BUILDING PHASE

Weeks 4–9 will increase aerobic volume, introduce aerobic intensity, and improve your running skills. Workout 1 introduces short sprints on hills and on the flat for interval training. Workout 2 consists of

short to medium fast continuous runs that increase in intensity. The long runs of workout 3 become fast continuous runs that increase in volume and aerobic intensity.

## SUPPORT PHASE

Recover in Week 10 with lighter sessions for workouts 1 and 2. Weeks 11–15 aim to continue increasing aerobic volume, and to improve speed endurance, lactate threshold speed, and lactate clearance. In workout 1,  $VO_2$  max intervals are introduced, recovery sections of the pace-change runs get faster, and hill runs become longer. In workout 2, the fast continuous runs become longer or faster in pace. Workout 3 increases the volume of the long runs, with more running at marathon pace.

## RACE-SPECIFIC PHASE

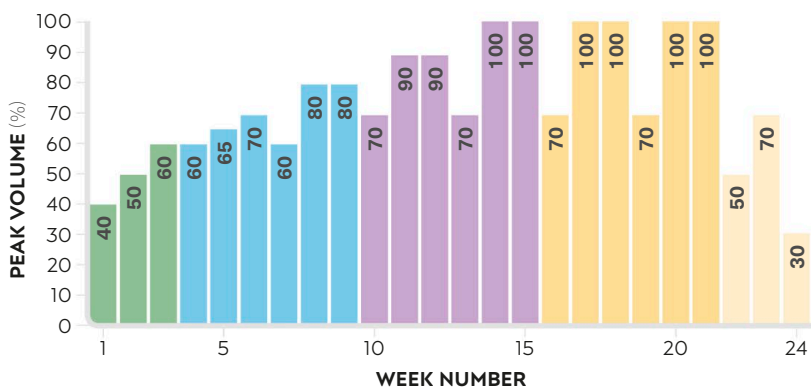
This phase begins with lighter workouts in week 16, to aid recovery, then focusses on aerobic intensity with paces between marathon pace and slightly faster

than lactate threshold (LT) pace. The short fast continuous runs of workout 1 focus on LT pace; for workout 2, the fast continuous runs get longer, becoming medium to long runs; while the workout 3 long fast continuous runs are at marathon goal pace. In weeks 17, 19, and 21, make sure you leave 2–3 days of recovery between marathon tempo runs for workout 2 and long runs for workout 3.

## TAPER

The 3-week taper should kick-start recovery after the peak training weeks. Week 22, the initial taper, drops to 50 per cent training volume; week 23 maintains your fitness with workouts that do not overly stress the body; and week 24 prevents sluggishness with a couple of easy workouts before your race day.

**FOR KEY TO WORKOUT SYMBOLS  
SEE PP.188–89**






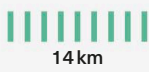


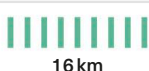



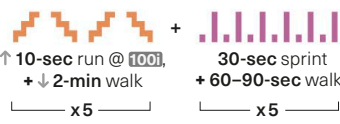





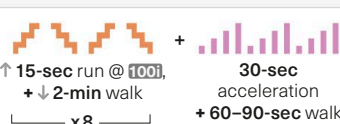


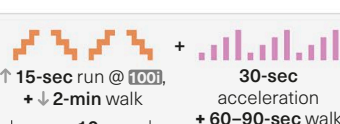




### PHASE OF PROGRAMME

- Introduction
- Base-building
- Support
- Race-specific
- Taper

### TRAINING VOLUME PER WEEK










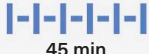
















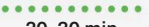








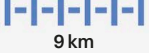



You will reach peak training volume by week 14, which is maintained (not increased) in the race-specific phase.

	WORKOUT 1	WORKOUT 2	WORKOUT 3
1 2 3 INTRODUCTION	 30 min	 30 min	 12 km
	 40 min +	 40 min +	 14 km
	 60 min +	 60 min +	 16 km
4 5 6 7 8 BASE-BUILDING	 30-sec sprint + 60-90-sec walk x8	 30 min x4 1 min @ 10 sec > LT with 2 min @ E	 18 km x4 5 km @ E with 1 km @ MP
	 ↑ 10-sec run @ 100% + ↓ 2-min walk x5 + 30-sec sprint + 60-90-sec walk x5	 30 min 10 min @ 40 sec < LT + 8 min @ 30 sec < LT + 6 min @ 20 sec < LT + 4 min @ 10 sec < LT + 2 min @ LT	 21 km 8 km @ E + 5 km @ 20 sec < MP + 8 km @ E
	 ↑ 10-sec run @ 100% + ↓ 2-min walk x8 + 30-sec sprint + 60-90-sec walk x4	 50 min 30 min @ E + 10 min @ LT + 10 min @ E	 15 km 5 km @ 40 sec < MP + 4 km @ 30 sec < MP + 3 km @ 20 sec < MP + 2 km @ 10 sec < MP + 1 km @ MP
	 ↑ 15-sec run @ 100% + ↓ 2-min walk x8 + 30-sec acceleration + 60-90-sec walk x4	 30 min x4 90 sec @ 10 sec > LT with 90 sec @ E	 24 km x4 5 km @ E with 1 km @ MP
	 ↑ 15-sec run @ 100% + ↓ 2-min walk x10 + 30-sec acceleration + 60-90-sec walk x4	 5 x 6-min runs @ 40 sec < LT + @ 30 sec < LT + @ 20 sec < LT + @ 10 sec < LT + @ LT	 15 km 5 km @ E + 10 km @ 20 sec < MP

MP sections can increase towards LT if you're feeling strong

	WORKOUT 1	WORKOUT 2	WORKOUT 3
9	<p><b>BASE-BUILDING</b></p> <p>↑ 15-sec run @ 100% + ↓ 2-min walk x10</p> <p>30-sec acceleration + 60-90-sec walk x6</p>	<p>50 min 20 min @ E + 20 min @ LT + 10 min @ E</p>	<p>24 km 12 km @ 40 sec &lt; MP + 8 km @ 30 sec &lt; MP + 4 km @ 20 sec &lt; MP</p>
10	<p>30 min ⊗ 4 min @ LT with 2 min @ E</p>	<p>20-30 min +</p> <p>↑ 10-sec run @ 100% + ↓ 2-min walk x4</p>	<p>18 km ⊗ 1 km @ MP with 1 km @ S</p> <p><i>or substitute with 10 km race</i></p>
<b>ACTIVATION</b>			
11	<p>↑ 15-sec run @ 100% + ↓ 2-min walk x4</p> <p>↑ 1-min run @ VO<sub>2</sub> + ↓ 2-min jog x6</p> <p>1 min @ 3km + 1-min walk/ slow jog x6</p>	<p>40 min ⊗ 6 min @ 10 sec &gt; LT with 2 min @ E</p>	<p>25 km 5 km @ E + 15 km @ 10 sec &lt; MP + 5 km @ E</p>
12	<p>↑ 15-sec run @ 100% + ↓ 2-min walk x4</p> <p>2 min @ 5km + 1-min walk/ slow jog x10</p>	<p>30 min ⊗ 1 min @ 10 sec &gt; LT with 2 min @ S</p>	<p>4 x 5-km runs @ 45 sec &lt; MP + @ 30 sec &lt; MP + @ 15 sec &lt; MP + @ MP</p>
13	<p>↑ 15-sec run @ 100% + ↓ 2-min walk x4</p> <p>↑ 90-sec run @ VO<sub>2</sub> + ↓ 3-min jog x8</p>	<p>5 x 6-min runs @ 30 sec &lt; LT + @ 20 sec &lt; LT + @ 10 sec &lt; LT + @ LT + @ 10 sec &gt; LT</p>	<p>27 km ⊗ 5 km @ E with 3 km, then 4 km, then 5 km @ MP</p> <p><i>MP sections can increase towards LT if you're feeling strong</i></p>
14	<p>↑ 15-sec run @ 100% + ↓ 2-min walk x4</p> <p>3 min @ 5km + 90-sec walk/ slow jog x6</p>	<p>48 min ⊗ 10 min @ 5 sec &gt; LT with 2 min @ E</p>	<p>21 km ⊗ 2 km @ MP with 1 km @ S</p>
15	<p>↑ 15-sec run @ 100% + ↓ 2-min walk x4</p> <p>↑ 2-min run @ VO<sub>2</sub> + ↓ 4-min jog x6</p>	<p>30 min ⊗ 90 sec @ 10 sec &gt; LT with 90 sec @ S</p>	<p>30 km 5 km @ E + 20 km @ 10 sec &lt; MP + 5 km @ E</p>
16	<p>30 min ⊗ 4 min @ LT with 2 min @ E</p>	<p>20-30 min +</p> <p>↑ 10-sec run @ 100% + ↓ 2-min walk x4</p>	<p>5 x 5-km runs @ 40 sec &lt; MP + @ 30 sec &lt; MP + @ 20 sec &lt; MP + @ 10 sec &lt; MP + @ MP</p> <p><i>or substitute with half marathon race</i></p>
<b>ACTIVATION</b>			
<b>RACE-SPECIFIC</b>			



	WORKOUT 1	WORKOUT 2	WORKOUT 3
17	 30-45 min +   ↑ 10-sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x 10	 3-6 km +   12 km @ MP	 32 km ⇨ 3 km @ E with 3 km, then 4 km, then 5 km, then 6 km @ MP
18	 ↑ 10-sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x 4  5 x 6-min runs @ 30 sec < LT + @ 20 sec < LT + @ 10 sec < LT + @ LT + @ 10 sec > LT	 45 min ⇨ 3 min @ 5 sec > LT with 2 min @ S	 24 km ⇨ 3 km @ MP with 1 km @ S
19	 30-45 min +   ↑ 10-sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x 10	 15 km @ MP	 34 km 10 km @ 30 sec < MP + 8 km @ 20 < MP + 8 km @ 10 sec < MP + 8 km @ MP
20	 ↑ 10-sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x 4  30 min ⇨ 2 min @ 10 sec > LT with 2 min @ S	 5 x 10-min runs @ 35 sec < LT + @ 25 sec < LT + @ 15 sec < LT + @ 5 sec < LT + @ 5 sec > LT	 25 km ⇨ 4 km @ MP with 1 km @ S
21	 30-45 min +   ↑ 10-sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x 10	 18 km @ MP	 36 km ⇨ E with MP for 3 km each + 5 km each + 10 km each
22	 30 min ⇨ 4 min @ LT with 2 min @ E	 20-30 min +   ↑ 10-sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x 4	 24 km @ MP
	ACTIVATION		
23	 ↑ 10-sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x 4  5 x 7-min runs @ 35 sec < LT + @ 25 sec < LT + @ 15 sec < LT + @ 5 sec < LT + @ 5 sec > LT	 12 km @ MP	 3 km  15 km ⇨ 1 km @ MP with 2 km @ E
24	 9 km ⇨ 2 km @ MP with 1 min @ E the third MP section can increase towards LT if you're feeling strong 5 days before race	 20-30 min +   ↑ 10-sec run @ 100i, + ↓ 2-min walk x 4 ACTIVATION 1-2 days before race	RACE DAY

# RACING TIPS

**Being prepared for race day** will allow you to capitalize on all the hard work you have put in during training. Taking in the right fuel before the race, checking that your hydration levels are optimal, and putting a race strategy into action are all steps that can help you achieve your best.

“ ”

*Most people begin running for health and fitness, but once they gain experience, often want to improve their performance in races*

## NUTRITION

Proper fuelling, both before and during the race, is essential to power your body for the intense efforts ahead.

### PRE-RACE CARB LOADING

In the days before a race, meals should be high in carbohydrates in order to build up stores of glycogen in your muscles. Your body will use this for fuel during the race.

For races longer than 90 minutes, have a big lunch the day before (about 18 hours before the race) to allow time to process the carbohydrates. Follow with a light dinner of simple carbohydrates, and hydrate with a sports drink. Avoid high-fibre foods. For shorter races, eat a carbohydrate-filled dinner. If your race is not in the morning, eat light meals of simple carbohydrates throughout the day.

Top up glycogen stores with a small meal 2–3 hours before the race; experiment with optimal food and portion size in training, so that your pre-race meal is not new.

### DURING THE RACE

Your body can store only a limited amount of fuel, and you will need to replenish during races that last

longer than 90 minutes. Aim for approximately 60g (2oz) of carbohydrate intake per hour, using easily absorbed sports drinks, gels, or similar foods. Determine your optimal intake during training (see box, below).

### RACE SUPPLEMENTS

Legal performance-enhancing supplements may provide marginal gains, but should never substitute for proper training and nutrition. For distance runners, caffeine and nitrate (found in beetroot juice) are two currently recommended supplements. However, test your tolerance of them during training, as they do not suit everyone.

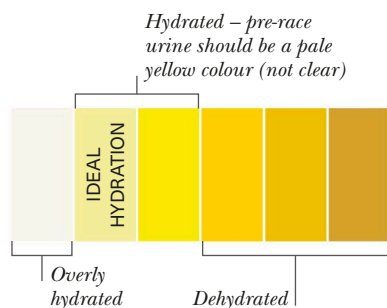
### Gut motility

Gastrointestinal complaints affect up to 70 per cent of long-distance runners. During intense exercise, blood is directed away from your gut and toward the working muscles, which impairs the gut's ability to process food while you are running. Your gastrointestinal tract will be more able to absorb and process nutrition during a race if you have practised taking on nutrition during your training sessions.

# HYDRATION

How much you drink before and during a race will depend on environmental factors and the length and intensity of the race.

Drinking to thirst cues is better than overhydrating before and during the race. If you are well-hydrated (see hydration test, below)



and it is not a hot day, you should not need to drink much in the race. Many runners drink excessively, which can result in gastrointestinal issues and hyponatraemia (see p.173). Ensure you replenish electrolytes lost through sweating during the race, and not just water. In longer races, fluid intake is often paired with fuelling in the form of sports drinks. Experiment with how many and what type of calories you can absorb this way during training before trying it in a race.

## HYDRATION TEST

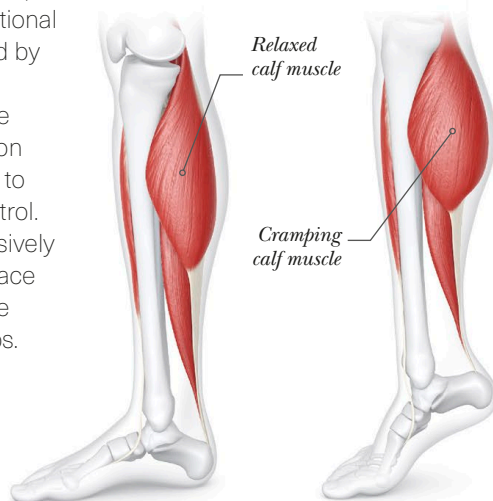
Urine colour is a good indicator of hydration. Use this colour chart to assess your hydration levels before the race.

# MUSCLE CRAMPING

Cramps are painful, involuntary muscle contractions that can incapacitate you if they happen during a race. Calf and foot cramps are the most common, but they also occur in hamstrings and quadriceps. New research refutes the traditional theory that cramps are caused by dehydration. Current theories suggest that fatiguing exercise causes sustained motor-neuron firing, resulting in cramps due to abnormal neuromuscular control. For immediate treatment, passively stretch the muscle (hold it in place or use the floor to maintain the stretch) until the cramping stops.

## INVOLUNTARY CONTRACTION

A cramped calf muscle contracts suddenly and forcefully, causing the heel to plantarflex.



## Racing in a different time zone

If you are travelling to race in a time zone that is more than 3 hours different to your original time zone, jet lag can cause decreased performance. This can be more severe the more time zones you cross, if you travel in an easterly direction, if you are an older adult, or if you lack travel experience. The following tips can help your body clock synchronize with a new environment.



**Go for an easy jog** shortly after arrival. This helps you to acclimatize and wakes your brain up after the flight.



**Expose yourself to light** at your destination, whether in the evening when travelling west to later time zones, or in the morning when travelling east to an earlier time zone.



**Avoid light** at your destination if you have travelled more than 8 time zones, either by wearing sunglasses until the late morning if travelling east, or avoiding early evening sunlight if travelling west.



**Keep hydrated** but avoid alcohol before and during the flight. Eat meals according to your destination's time zone to help your body clock adjust.



**Take short-acting sedatives** to aid sleep, caffeine to keep you awake, or the sleep hormone melatonin to help you fight jet lag.



**Adjust your sleep schedule** 1–2 days in advance of travelling. Go to bed 1–2 hours before your usual bedtime if travelling east, or 1–2 hours later if travelling west.

# RACE STRATEGY

Before your race, set some A, B, and C goals. Your A goal should be what you can achieve if all goes to plan and conditions are good. Your B goal should be a backup, and your C goal should be something that you can still be proud of if your race does not go according to plan.

The best way to ensure that you perform well on race day is to know what your body is capable of and how to pace appropriately, and you will have learnt these by

following a structured training programme. You should also have prepared for the terrain, for example, by doing hill training to get ready for a hilly course.

However, unpredictable weather conditions or terrain may prevent you from following your plan. If this is the case, adjust your race strategy to suit the course and conditions so that you run by effort (in other words, by what you know your goal pace feels like) rather than continuing to hold onto a predetermined pace.



## Why you may race faster than you train

If you have prepared well and tapered your training effectively, you should reach race day well rested and in an energy-rich state.

Heightened feelings of excitement on race day cause the sympathetic nervous system's "fight-or-flight" response (see p.42) to release a surge of adrenaline, which allows your body to perform at a higher level than in training. The simple motivation of it being a race and not just another workout can also have a dramatic effect on your performance.

## Planning your race

One useful strategy is to divide the race into four phases: Pace, Position, Drive, Kick. Each phase has a goal that you can match to your overall plan. You may decide to pace yourself evenly, or to start slower and increase pace later. This will depend on the terrain and conditions, and your belief in your ability to hold a chosen pace.

### RACE BREAKDOWN

Split your race distance into stages at which you can implement your strategy. Divide the first three phases equally, but the final "Kick" should be saved for the last stretch.

### PACE

**AIM:** *Settle into your planned pace*

- **Have in mind a starting pace** (or effort) that you know you can sustain.
- **At the starting line**, it is easy to get swept up in the excitement and start too fast. This can interfere with your pacing early in the race, so it is important to stay calm, run your own race, and settle into your pace.
- **Get comfortable** at your planned pace and monitor how your perceived effort is matching up with your planned pace. Try not to pay too much attention to what is going on around you.

### POSITION

**AIM:** *Find a good position for your strategy*

- **Look around you.** If there are people running at your pace, latch on to a group to reduce the mental burden and share the pacemaking.
- **If your goal is to win** or place well, play to your strengths. Runners with good speed may choose to "sit and kick" by staying behind the leader and speeding past them at the end. A runner with good endurance may choose to lead and increase the pace, exhausting other competitors until they cannot keep up.

### 5 KM

1.5 KM

1.5–3 KM

### 10 KM

3.5 KM

3.5–6.5 KM

### HALF MARATHON

7 KM

7–14 KM

### MARATHON

14 KM

14–28 KM



## Race recovery

Competing in a race takes maximal effort, and you should plan to take a couple of days to a couple of weeks off training to recover, depending on the length and intensity of the race. Your recovery should be active, but make sure your activities are low in impact and intensity (see p.174).

The training programme leading up to a race, especially a marathon, can take its toll both mentally and physically. Take care of any ailments that may have cropped up during the build-up or in the race. Use this time to catch up on work, social engagements, and other things

that may have taken a back seat in your life while you focussed on the race. Most importantly, make sure you reward yourself for all the hard work you have put in and what you have accomplished.

Deciding when to return to training will depend on how your body is feeling in the aftermath of the race. You should start with easy continuous running until you feel your legs feel recovered, then add some strides or short sprints to your workouts to activate your neuromuscular system. Build this recovery time into your seasonal plan (see p.161).



## Racing highs and lows

Your body can react to the exertion of racing in extreme ways. You may be lucky, or unlucky, enough to experience these two phenomena.

**Runners' high**, a feeling of euphoria induced by long-distance running, is a legend told by runners around the world. Until recently, there was little science to explain this phenomenon. Now, advances in brain imaging can verify that endurance running does elicit a flood of hormones in the brain. Known as endorphins, these hormones are associated with mood uplift and elation. This endorphin release appears to be an example of a neurological "reward" response to intense aerobic activity, which is likely part of our evolutionary history.

The "wall" is a physiological state caused by depleting glycogen stores in the liver and muscles. When this happens, you may feel sudden and extreme fatigue, heaviness, loss of coordination in the legs, blurry vision, and a lack of concentration. Most marathon runners can relate to "hitting the wall" in the later stages of a race. While the condition can be mitigated by adequate fuelling (see p.210) and pacing, recent research suggests that your physiology and metabolism actually change after approximately 90 minutes of running, making what seemed to you like a sustainable pace now difficult to maintain.

### DRIVE

**AIM:** *Maintain your plan and set yourself up for a big finish*

- **As you fatigue**, focussing on relaxation cues and practising self-talk can help get you through those tough moments when you want to quit.
- **Dig deep** into your energy reserves and increase your pace – if you are able to – or at least maintain your pace. Push yourself for a personal best or top placing.

### KICK

**AIM:** *Finish as fast as possible*

- **Use that last rush** of adrenaline and motivation to sprint for the finishing line.
- **Prepare to accelerate** when you reach the last 500 m of the race. In a shorter race, you may be able to "kick" up the pace for up to 400 m; at the end of a marathon, you may only be able to sprint the last 100 m.

3–4.5 KM

500 M

6.5–9.5 KM

500 M

14–20.6 KM

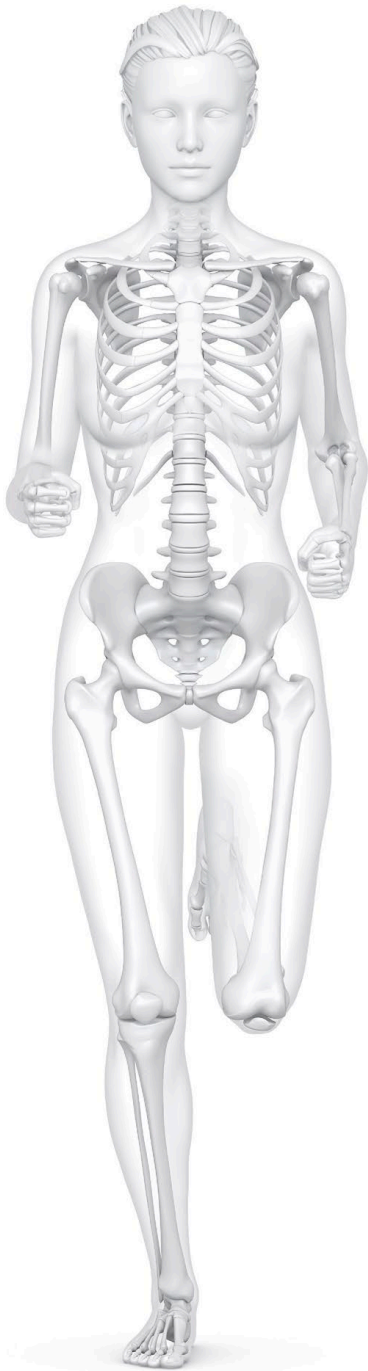
500 M

28–41.7 KM

500 M



# GLOSSARY



**adenosine triphosphate (ATP)** The molecule that stores, transports, and releases the energy used to power muscle contractions.

**aerobic respiration** The primary method of energy production during endurance exercise, when the body uses oxygen to convert glucose into ATP.

**alactic** The most immediately available energy system, it powers sudden or explosive movements.

The anaerobic alactic system is fueled by stored ATP and creatine phosphate.

**anaerobic respiration** The method of energy production the body uses during strenuous exercise when there is a shortage of oxygen. Results in lactate accumulation so can only last a short time.

**biomechanics** The study of forces and movements of the body during running – also known as “running form”.

**concentric** A type of muscle contraction during which the muscle is shortened.

**distal** Bodily structures sited further away from the core of the body.

**early loading phase** The beginning of the running cycle; involves the first 15–20 per cent of stance as the leading foot makes initial contact with the ground.

**eccentric** A type of muscle contraction during which the muscle lengthens.

**external load** An objective measure of the volume of work done by the body, such as distance, time, or steps taken.

**float phase** The period of time in running during which both feet are off the ground. This is a sub-phase of the swing phase in the running cycle, and is also known as ‘flight phase’.

**footstrike pattern** The location on the foot that first makes contact with the ground. Footstrike patterns are classified as rearfoot, midfoot, or forefoot.

**goal pace** The estimated pace in minutes per km or mile you must run to achieve a goal race time.

**ground reaction force (GRF)** The equal and opposite force applied to the body during contact with the ground.

**heart rate reserve (HRR)** The range of heart activity available to you for exercise; the difference between your resting heart rate (RHR) and your maximum heart rate.

**internal load** The measure of effort you put in during a workout or race, such as heart rate, breathing rate, or RPE.

**isometric** A type of muscle contraction during which the muscle does not change in length.

**kinematics** The measurement of motion of the human body without respect to forces (e.g. joint angles).

**kinetic chain** A concept that describes the body as a chain of linked segments. Each segment contributes individual movements that link up with adjoining segments into larger movements along the chain.

**kinetic energy** Energy created by motion.

**lactate threshold** The highest intensity of exercise you can manage before your body begins to exponentially accumulate lactate.

**midstance phase** The period during which the centre of mass (COM) is directly over the top of the base of support, when the maximum vertical GRF occurs and the braking force transitions to a propulsive force.

**moment or torque** A measure of how much a force acting on an object causes that object to rotate about an axis.

**PB** Personal Best

**proximal** Bodily structures sited closer to the core of the body.

### **rate of perceived exertion (RPE) scale**

A quantitative measure of the effort imparted during exercise. RPE is measured on an 11-point scale.

**running economy** The energy demand for a given velocity of submaximal running, determined by measuring the steady-state consumption of oxygen ( $VO_2$ ) and the respiratory exchange ratio. Variables such as genetics, environmental conditions, running shoes, fitness, and biomechanics can affect the amount of oxygen used at a given speed.

**running form** *see* biomechanics

**stance phase** The period during which the foot is in contact with the ground. It comprises approximately 40 per cent of the running cycle (less as speed increases).

**swing phase** The period of running during which the foot is not in contact with the ground. It comprises approximately 60 per cent of the running cycle (more with increasing speed).

**terminal stance phase** The final sub-phase of the stance phase when the hip, knee, and ankle are in maximal extension to propel the body forwards.

**toe-off** The moment the foot leaves the ground to drive the body forward.

**training load** An overall measure of stress on the body due to training. This is calculated as the product of the volume (external load) and intensity (internal load) of your workouts.

**training volume** The measure of the quantity and effort involved in training, often measured in kilometres, miles, or by duration.

**$VO_2$  max** A measure of how much oxygen the body can consume during maximal effort.

## **MUSCLE GROUPS**

**deep six muscles** A group of hip external rotator muscles that is commonly tight in distance runners.

**distal hamstrings** The end of the hamstring muscles closest to the knee; their action is to flex the knee.

**external rotators (of the hip)** Muscles that rotate the hip outwards.

**hip abductors** Muscles that help to maintain pelvic stability in the frontal plane during running. Hip abductors resist contralateral pelvic drop.

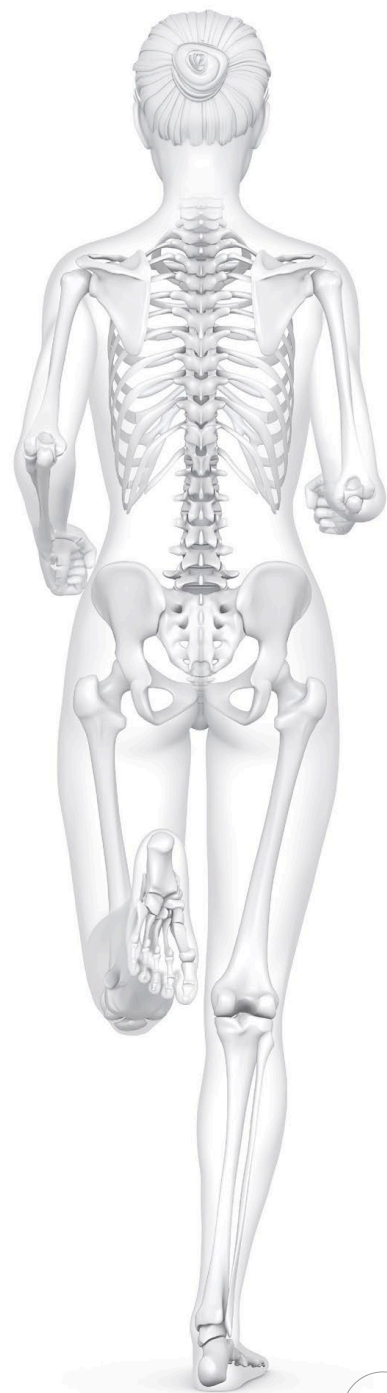
**hip adductors** Muscle group on the inside of the thigh that pulls the thigh in towards the midline. Includes adductor longus, adductor brevis, adductor magnus, pectineus, and gracilis.

**hip extensors** Muscle group that extends the hip and draws the thigh back. Includes gluteals, adductor magnus, and hamstrings.

**hip flexors** Muscle group that flexes the hip and raises the thigh up toward the chest. Includes iliopsoas (iliacus and psoas major), rectus femoris, sartorius, and tensor fasciae latae (TFL).

**internal rotators (of the hip)** Muscles that rotate the hip inwards.

**proximal hamstrings** The end of the hamstring muscles closest to the hip. Proximal hamstrings extend the hip.



# INDEX

- 5km programme, beginners 190–91  
 10km programme  
   advanced programmes 194–95  
   beginners 192–93
- A**
- abdominal muscles  
   anatomy 16, 30–31  
   diagonal elastic support 49, 146, 148–49  
   *see also* core
- abduction 10
- abductors 215
- accelerations 188
- Achilles tendinopathy 55, 58, 99
- Achilles tendon  
   anatomy 23  
   evolution 40  
   function in running 18–19  
   strength training 108–11, 154–55
- activation sessions 188
- adduction 10
- adductors 16, 17, 215
- adenosine triphosphate (ATP) 33, 34, 214
- adipose tissue 32
- adrenal glands 38, 43
- adrenaline 43, 212
- advanced programmes  
   10km 194–95  
   half-marathon 198–201  
   marathons 206–9
- aerobic base 160
- aerobic cell respiration 33, 34–35, 214
- aerobic training 37
- age, injury prevention 65
- air pollution 51
- lactic system 214
- altitude 51
- American College of Sports Medicine 50
- amino acids 32–33
- anaerobic base 160
- anaerobic capacity training 37, 185
- anaerobic cell respiration 33, 34–35, 214
- anatomy 14–51
- ankle dorsiflexors 16
- ankle evertors 112–13, 116
- ankle invertors 114–15, 117
- ankle plantar flexors 17
- ankles  
   anatomy 22–23  
   ground reaction force (GRF) 48  
   injury risks 55  
   instability 99, 100, 116, 117  
   movement terminology 10–11  
   muscles 16–17, 22–23  
   pronation 73  
   sprains 99  
   strength training 100–107, 112–17  
   subtalar neutral position 103
- antenatal care 65
- arches *see* foot arches
- arms  
   diagonal elastic support 49, 148  
   muscles 16–17  
   posture 74
- arteries 36
- arthritis 9
- ATP (adenosine triphosphate) 33, 34, 214
- atrial natriuretic peptide 43
- autonomic nervous system (ANS) 38, 42
- B**
- back anatomy 17  
   *see also* spine
- back pain, lower 31
- balance 40–41, 144–47
- ball-and-socket joint 21
- ball exercises  
   hamstring ball roll-in 140–41  
   piriformis ball release 94–95  
   single leg ball squat 136–39  
   TFL ball release 92–93
- ball release stretches 92–95
- beetroot juice 210
- beginners  
   5km programme 190–91  
   10km programme 192–93  
   half-marathon programme 196–97  
   marathon programme 202–5  
   training plans 160, 176
- biceps 16
- biomechanics  
   definition 214  
   injury prevention 64  
   injury risks 54  
   monitoring 169  
   running economy 165
- blood circulation 36–37
- blood lactate  
   concentration 35
- blood pressure 43
- blood vessels  
   capillaries 34  
   vasoconstriction 44
- vasodilation 45
- bone marrow 43
- bones  
   feet and ankles 22–23  
   hips 26–27  
   injury recovery time 56  
   joints 20  
   knees 24–25  
   pelvis 28–29  
   spine 30–31  
   strength training 152  
   stress fractures 63, 152
- bounding drill 88
- box jump 150–53
- braces 56
- brain  
   central governor model 170  
   control network 38  
   pain response 170–71  
   psychological-  
     motivational model 171
- braking forces 46
- breathing  
   plank exercises 146  
   regulation 42
- bunions 107
- burnout 171
- buttocks 62–63  
   *see also* gluteal muscles
- C**
- cadence  
   footwear 64  
   ground reaction force (GRF) 47  
   increasing 70
- caffeine 210, 211
- calcaneus 23
- calf muscles  
   cramps 211  
   dynamic stretching 82–83



function in running 18–19  
strength training 108–11,  
136–39, 150–55  
torque 48  
capillaries 34, 36  
carbohydrates 32, 172, 210  
carbon dioxide 36  
carioca drill 89  
cartilage 20  
cartilage repair 56  
cell respiration 33, 34–35  
cells 34  
central nervous system  
(CNS) 41, 43  
centre of mass (COM)  
running cycle 14  
spring-mass model 46–47  
cerebellum 39  
cerebral cortex 38, 41  
cerebrum 38  
cervical extensors 17  
childbirth  
pelvic floor 147  
post-partum running 65  
children, training load 65  
cold (atmosphere),  
adjusting for 51  
collagen 17  
COM *see* centre of mass  
competition  
training plans 159  
*see also* races  
compression 56  
compression garments 174  
concentric contraction 19,  
51, 214  
connective tissue 19  
contraction of muscles  
18–19  
cool down 76  
Cooper test 166  
coordination 40–41, 144–47  
core  
anatomy 30–31  
posture 74  
strength training 136–41,  
144–53

*see also* abdominal  
muscles  
core temperature 44–45  
coronal plane 10  
cortisol 43  
cramps 211  
cross training 187  
cryotherapy 174  
cytoplasm 35

## D

data 168  
deadlifts 132–33  
deep gluteal syndrome  
62–63  
dehydration 45, 173  
deltoids 17  
depletion training 178  
diabetes 42  
diagonal elastic support  
49, 146, 148–49  
diet 32–33, 172, 210  
distal muscles 135, 214  
distance goals 182–83,  
184–85  
distance runs 180  
distraction techniques 170  
dorsiflexion 10, 48  
drafting 50  
drag 50  
drills 77, 84–89  
drinking 173, 211  
dumbbells 99

## E

ears 41  
eccentric contraction 18,  
51, 214  
economy 165, 215  
“elastic strain energy” 46  
elbow flexors 16  
elbow joint 20  
electrolyte depletion 173,  
211  
electrostimulation 174

elevation 56  
endocrine system 38  
endorphins 43, 213  
endurance, aerobic cell  
respiration 34  
endurance training  
capillaries 34  
immune system 175  
“energy release phase” 46  
energy sources 32–33  
“energy storage phase” 46  
energy systems 33  
epinephrine (adrenaline)  
43, 212  
erythropoietin 43  
eversion 10  
evolution 40  
exercise  
equipment 99  
terminology 10–11  
*see also* training  
Exercise Associated  
Hyponatraemia (EAH)  
173, 211  
exertion monitoring 162  
extension 11  
external load 169, 214  
eyes 41

## F

fartlek runs 183  
fasting 178  
fast-twitch muscle fibres 19  
fat (body) 32  
fat (diet) 32  
fatigue  
“hitting the wall” 35, 213  
lactate accumulation 34  
monitoring 168  
training assessment 165  
fat metabolism 35  
fatty acids 32, 35  
feet  
anatomical variations 54  
anatomy 22–23  
bunions 107  
cramps 211  
injury risks 55  
joints 20  
movement terminology  
10–11  
muscles 16, 22–23, 102  
posture 74  
pronation 73  
step width 71  
strength training 100–107  
stress fractures 63  
subtalar neutral position  
103  
windlass mechanism 111  
*see also* foot arches;  
heels  
femoroacetabular  
impingement (FAI)  
27, 128  
“fight-or-flight” response  
42, 43, 212  
fitness  
assessment 162–67, 168  
development 160, 169  
tests 166–67  
training principles 178  
flexion 11  
float sub-phase 15, 69, 214  
food 32–33, 172, 210  
foot arches  
anatomy 22, 23  
strength training 100–107,  
110–11, 112–17  
foot doming 100–103  
footstrike pattern  
deep gluteal syndrome  
214  
footwear 64  
forefoot 9, 47, 48, 72  
ground reaction force  
(GRF) 47, 72  
myths 9  
rear-foot 47, 48, 72  
running cycle 14  
footwear 64  
forces, impact 46–47, 214  
fuelling 172

## G

gait  
contralateral pelvic drop 73, 129  
footstrike pattern 72  
knee valgus 73  
pain effects 56  
pronation 73  
stride patterns 70–71  
gastrointestinal tract 210  
gender differences  
hormones 43  
injury prevention 65  
injury sites 55  
gliding joint 20  
glucose 32, 33, 34  
gluteal muscles  
anatomy 17, 26, 29  
strength training 118–35, 136–37, 140–43, 150–55  
gluteal tendinopathy 55, 62–63  
glycogen 32, 34, 172, 210  
glycogenolysis 33  
glycolysis 34–35  
goal pace 164, 181, 189, 212, 214  
gonads 38  
GPS monitors 169  
gravity 51  
greater trochanteric bursitis *see* gluteal tendinopathy  
ground reaction force (GRF)  
anatomy 18, 22  
definition 214  
footstrike pattern 47, 72  
impact absorption improvements 98  
injuries 46  
running cycle 14  
spring-mass model 46–47  
torque 48  
growth hormone 43  
gut motility 210

## H

haemoglobin 37  
half-marathons  
advanced programme 198–201  
beginners programme 196–97  
hallux valgus 107  
hamstrings  
anatomy 16, 17  
cramps 211  
distal and proximal 215  
function in running 18–19  
strength training 120–35, 140–41  
hamstring tendinopathy 55, 99  
health benefits 6  
health checks 162  
heart  
anatomy 37  
hormones 43  
regulation 42  
heart rate 163, 165  
heart rate reserve (HRR) 163, 214  
heat acclimation protocol 45  
Heat and Humidity Guidelines (American College of Sports Medicine) 50  
heat (atmosphere), adjusting for 45, 50  
heat exposure 45  
heatstroke 45  
heel drop 108–11  
heel offset 64  
heels  
Achilles tendinopathy 58  
anatomy 23  
plantar heel pain 55, 60, 99  
strength training 108–11  
height, Q-angles 24  
hills  
changes in muscle actions 51  
running power 164  
training 186–87  
hinge joint 20–21  
hips  
anatomy 16, 17, 26–27  
deep gluteal syndrome 62–63  
gluteal tendinopathy 62–63  
hip socket impingement 27  
iliotibial band pain 61  
injury risks 55  
joints 21  
modified pigeon stretch 90–91  
movement terminology 10–11  
muscles 16–17, 26–27, 29  
piriformis ball release 94–95  
strength training 118–31, 136–39, 150–55  
stress fractures 63  
TFL ball release 92–93  
“hitting the wall” 35, 213  
homeostasis 42  
hormones 42–43, 65, 211, 213  
HRR (heart rate reserve) 163, 214  
humidity 50  
hydration 173, 211  
hyperbaric therapy 174  
hyponatraemia 173, 211  
hypothalamus 39, 44, 45  
hypothyroidism 42

## I

ice 56, 174  
iliotibial band pain 61, 71, 99  
immune system 175  
impact absorption 98  
impact forces 46–47

initial contact 14  
injuries  
ground reaction force (GRF) 46  
myths 9  
overuse 51  
prevention 64–65, 76, 99, 158  
recovery times 56  
rehabilitation 99, 187  
risk factors 6, 54  
running cycle 66–69  
self-help 56  
sites at risk 55  
insulin 42, 43  
intercostal muscles 16  
internal load 169, 214  
interneurons 41  
interval training 184–85, 188  
intestines 38, 210  
inversion 10  
isometric contraction 101, 105, 214  
IT band pain 61, 71, 99

## J

joints  
movement terminology 10–11  
types 20–21

## K

kidneys 43  
kinematics 214  
kinetic chain 49, 136, 214  
kinetic energy 46–47, 214  
knees  
alignment 124  
anatomy 20, 24–25, 54  
bodyweight load 11  
ground reaction force (GRF) 48  
iliotibial band pain 61  
injury risks 55  
movement terminology 11

myths 9  
 patellofemoral pain 55,  
 57, 71, 99  
 step width 71  
 strength training 120–29,  
 142–43, 150–55  
 knee valgus 73  
 “knock knees” 73

## L

lactate 34, 37, 183  
 lactate threshold (LT)  
 34–35, 166–67, 181,  
 183, 214  
 legs  
 calf stretch 82–83  
 forward leg swing 78–79  
 muscles 16  
 side leg swing 80–81  
*see also* calf muscles;  
 quadriceps  
 ligament grafts 56  
 ligaments  
 core 30–31  
 feet and ankles 22–23  
 hips 26–27  
 joints 20, 21  
 knees 24–25  
 nuchal 40  
 pelvis 28–29  
 ligament sprain, recovery  
 time 56  
 liver  
 glycogen storage 32  
 nutrient distribution  
 32–33  
 oxygen circulation 36  
 loading *see* training load  
 loading phase 46, 66, 214  
 loads, internal and external  
 169, 214  
 long runs 180  
 LT *see* lactate threshold  
 lunge 142–43  
 lungs, oxygen circulation 36  
 lypolysis 35

## M

marathons  
 advanced programme  
 206–9  
 beginners programme  
 202–5  
 “hitting the wall” 213  
 pace calculator 164  
 training 161, 176,  
 180–81, 183, 185  
 massage 175  
 maximum heart rate  
 (MHR) 163  
 medial tibial stress  
 syndrome (MTSS) 55, 59  
 meditation 175  
 medium runs 180  
 melatonin 211  
 menisci 20, 24, 25  
 mental health 175  
 metabolism 33–35, 44  
 metatarsal bones 22, 23,  
 63, 111  
 MHR (maximum heart  
 rate) 163  
 microtears 19  
 midsole cushioning 64  
 midstance 14, 67, 214  
 mitochondria 34, 37  
 mobility 174  
 moment *see* torque  
 momentum 161  
 monitoring of training  
 162–64, 168–69  
 motivation 159, 170, 171,  
 175, 213  
 motor control 38  
 motor cortex 39, 41  
 motor neurons 39, 41, 211  
 mountain climber exercise  
 144–47  
 movement  
 control 38–39  
 planes of motion 10  
 terminology 10–11  
 unconscious 42

MTSS 55, 59  
 muscle cramping 211  
 muscle fibres  
 anatomy 16, 19, 31  
 training adaptations 37  
 muscles  
 calf 18–19  
 contraction 18  
 core 16, 30–31  
 distal 135, 214  
 energy sources 32–33  
 feet and ankles 16–17,  
 22–23, 102  
 glycogen storage 32, 210  
 groups 215  
 heart 37, 43  
 hips 16–17, 26–27, 29  
 knees 24–25  
 pelvis 28–29  
 proximal 135, 215  
 repair 19  
 response to nervous  
 system 18, 39  
 skeletal 16–17  
 training adaptations 37  
 working 18–19  
 muscle soreness/strain,  
 recovery time 56  
 muscle spindles 41  
 myoglobin 37  
 myths 9

## N


neck muscles 17  
 nerves  
 movement impulses 18  
 sciatic 29  
 nervous system 38–39,  
 40–41, 42  
 net moment 48  
 neuro-endocrine system 38  
 neuromuscular junctions 39  
 neurons 39  
 nitrate 210  
 nuchal ligament 40  
 nutrition 32–33, 172, 210

## O

oestrogen 42, 43  
 optimal loading 56  
 orthotics 56, 60  
 oscillation, vertical 71  
 osteoarthritis 9  
 ovaries 43  
 overhydration 173  
 overstriding 70  
 overtraining syndrome 42,  
 54, 165, 169  
 overuse injury 51, 76  
 oxygen  
 aerobic respiration 34  
 altitude 51  
 delivery systems 36–37

## P

pace  
 goal pace 164, 181, 189,  
 212, 214  
 lactate threshold (LT)  
 166–67, 181  
 monitoring 164, 169  
 pace-change runs 183  
 progression runs 182  
 race strategies 212–13  
 tempo runs 181  
 training programmes  
 159, 189  
 pain  
 lower back 31  
 monitoring 168  
 rating 56  
 relief 56  
 thresholds and training  
 170  
 pancreas 38, 43  
 parasympathetic nervous  
 system 42, 175  
 parathyroid 38  
 patella 20, 24, 25  
 patellofemoral pain 55, 57,  
 71, 99  
 pectoral muscles 16



pelvic floor 65, 147  
pelvis  
  anatomy 28–29  
  contralateral pelvic drop 73, 129  
  diagonal elastic support 49, 148–49  
  hip hike 118–19  
  pelvic alignment 128  
  pelvic rotation 139  
peripheral nervous system (PNS) 38  
pineal gland 39  
piriformis muscle 27, 62, 90–91, 94–95  
piriformis syndrome *see* deep gluteal syndrome  
pituitary gland 39, 43  
planes of motion 10  
plank exercises 144–49  
plantar fascia 22, 111  
plantar fasciitis 60  
plantarflexion 10, 48  
plantar flexor muscles, strength training 108–11  
plantar heel pain 55, 60, 99  
pollution 51  
post-partum running 65, 147  
posture 74–75  
pregnancy 65, 147  
progression runs 182  
pronation 10, 73  
proprioceptors 40  
propulsion 98, 102, 108  
protein 32, 172  
proximal muscles 135, 214  
pyruvic acid 34–35

## Q

Q-angles 24  
quadriceps  
  anatomy 16  
  cramps 211  
  function in running 18–19

ground reaction force (GRF) 48, 125  
strength training 120–25, 132–35, 138, 142–43, 150–55

## R

races  
  advanced programmes 176–77  
  beginner programmes 176–77  
  hydration 211  
  muscle cramping 211  
  nutrition 172, 210  
  recovery 213  
  recovery time 161  
  strategy tips 212–13  
  training plans 159, 161  
rain 50  
rate of perceived exertion (RPE) 162, 165, 166–67, 215  
recovery runs 180  
recovery stretches 77  
recovery time 171, 174–75, 179, 213  
refuelling 172  
rehabilitation 99, 161, 187  
Relative Energy Deficiency in Sport (RED-S) 42, 63  
repair process in muscles 19  
repetition training 184–85  
resistance training 9, 64  
resisted toe 104–7  
resting heart rate (RHR) 163  
rhomboid muscles 17  
Romanian deadlift 134  
rotation 10, 11, 48–49  
routines 76–77  
RPE (rate of perceived exertion) 162, 165, 166–67, 215  
“runner’s high” 43, 213

“runner’s knee” *see* patellofemoral pain  
running cycle 14–15, 46, 66–69  
  *see also* spring-mass model  
running economy 165, 215  
running form  
  injury prevention 74–75  
  injury risks 54  
  training plans 158  
  *see also* biomechanics  
running gait *see* gait  
running power 164

## S

sacrum, stress fractures 63  
sagittal plane 10  
sciatic nerve 29, 62–63  
sedatives 211  
sensors for monitoring 169  
sensory control 38  
sensory cortex 41  
sensory neurons 41  
sensory receptors 44  
shin  
  injury risks 55  
  stress fractures 63  
shins, medial tibial stress syndrome (MTSS) 55, 59  
shivering 44  
shoes, myths 9  
short runs 180  
shoulder joint 21  
side flexion 11  
skeletal muscles 16–17, 18  
skeleton, joints 20–21  
sleep 43, 171, 175, 211  
slipstream 50  
slow-twitch muscle fibres 19, 37  
sodium levels 173  
soleus 17, 22, 24, 110  
somatic nervous system 38  
speed  
  anaerobic cell respiration 35  
  strength training 135  
  training plans 159  
spinal cord 38, 39, 41  
spine  
  anatomy 30  
  movement terminology 11  
  muscles 17  
  rotation 147  
  spinal alignment 135  
  vertebrae 20  
spring-mass model 46–47  
sprints  
  hills 186  
  race strategies 213  
  training plans 188  
squats 103, 124, 136–39  
stability  
  anatomy 22, 26, 27, 28  
  ankles 99, 100, 116, 117  
  core 31  
  hip abductors 71, 118, 126  
  legs 85, 136  
  upper body function 66  
stance phase 15, 46–47, 67–68, 215  
step down exercise 120–21, 124  
step length, ground reaction force (GRF) 47  
step rate *see* cadence  
step up exercise 122–23, 125  
step width 71  
stiffness (leg springs) 98, 150–55  
strength training  
  ankles and feet 100–117  
  cautions 98, 108, 132, 136, 142, 144, 151, 155  
  eccentric 48  
  equipment 99  
  injury prevention 64  
  myths 9  
  planning drills 98–99  
  progression 99

reasons for 98  
 stress 42, 43  
 stress fractures 63, 152  
 stretching  
   calf stretch 82–83  
   dynamic 9, 76, 78–83  
   forward leg swing 78–79  
   mobility 174  
   modified pigeon 90–91  
   piriformis ball release 94–95  
   recovery 77, 90–95  
   side leg swing 80–81  
   static 76, 90–95  
   TFL ball release 92–93  
   warm-up 9, 76  
 stride patterns 70–71  
 strides  
   drill 87  
   training programmes 188  
 stroke volume 37  
 subtalar joint  
   movement 10  
 subtalar neutral position 103  
 supplements  
   hormones 42  
   races 210  
   time-zone adjustments 211  
 surface variability 51  
 sweating 45, 173  
 swing phase 15, 69, 215  
 sympathetic nervous system 42  
 synovial joints 20

## T

taping 56  
 tarsal bones 20, 22  
 temperature (atmosphere),  
   adjusting for 45, 50–51  
 temperature (body),  
   regulation 40, 42, 44–45  
 tempo runs 181  
 tendinitis, recovery time 56

tendinopathy 55  
 tendinosis, recovery time 56  
 tendons  
   function 18  
   injury recovery times 56  
   stiffness 98  
   structure 17  
   targeted strength training 98  
 tensor fascia latae (TFL)  
   muscles 27, 92–93  
 terminal stance phase 68, 215  
 terrain 51  
 testes 43  
 testosterone 43  
 thermoregulation 44–45  
 thighs  
   injury risks 55  
   strength training 136–39  
 thirst 173, 211  
 thyroid 38, 42, 43  
 thyroxine 42, 43  
 tibia 23, 25, 59  
 tibialis anterior 25, 48  
 time trials 166  
 time-zone differences 211  
 toe-off 15, 215  
 toes 104–7  
 toe spacers 107  
 torque 48, 214  
 trainers 64  
 training  
   activation sessions 188  
   advanced programmes 176–77, 194–95, 198–201, 206–9  
   advancing 161  
   altitude adaptation 19  
   beginners 160, 176–77, 190–93, 196–97, 202–5  
   benefits of planning 158–59  
   cautions 98, 108, 132, 136, 142, 144, 151, 155

cross training 187  
 depletion training 178  
 easy continuous running 180  
 effort 189  
 fast continuous running 181–83  
 fitness assessment 162–67  
 goals 160–61, 182–85  
 hills 186–87  
 injury risks 54  
 intensity 178  
 interval 184–85  
 monitoring 162–64, 168–69  
 muscle fibre types 19  
 pace 189  
 pain management 170  
 personalization 158, 178  
 phases 177  
 physical adaptations 19, 37, 45, 159, 178  
 planning 176–77, 179  
 principles 178  
 programme selection 176, 188–89  
 recovery 159, 161, 171, 174–75, 179, 189  
 volume increases 178  
 warm-up 188  
 weaknesses 161  
 workout symbols chart 189  
 workout types 178  
*see also* endurance training; resistance training; strength training  
 training load 56, 64, 161, 169, 178, 215  
 training volume 188, 215  
 transverse plane 10  
 trapezius 17  
 treadmill tests 166  
 triceps 17  
 triglycerides 32, 35

## U-V

urine 211  
 variable surfaces 51  
 vasoconstriction 44  
 vasodilation 45  
 veins 36  
 vertebrae 20, 30, 39  
 vertical oscillation 71  
 vestibulocochlear nerve 41  
 vision 41  
 VO<sub>2</sub> max  
   altitude 51  
   blood lactate concentration 35  
   definition 37, 215  
   heat training 50  
   tests 166  
   training 184

## W

walk to 5K programme 190–91  
 warm-up  
   stretching 9, 76  
   training programmes 188  
 weaknesses, training plans 161  
 weather 50–51  
 weight (as risk factor) 65  
 weights (for exercise) 99, 132–35  
 Wet Bulb Globe Temperature 50  
 white blood cells, muscle repair 19  
 wind 50  
 windlass mechanism 111

# BIBLIOGRAPHY

## INTRODUCTION

**6** *“Running has one of the highest participation rates of any sport.”*

M. van Middelkoop et al., “Risk factors for lower extremity injuries among male marathon runners”, *Scand J Med Sci Sports* 18 (2008).  
*“Even in low doses, running is associated with a substantial reduction in cardiovascular disease.”* C.J. Lavie et al., “Exercise and the cardiovascular system”, *AHA Circulation Research* 117 (2015).

**8** *“If you have osteoarthritis, running may not make it worse, and could, in fact, improve symptoms.”* G.H. Lo et al., “Running does not increase symptoms or structural progression in people with knee osteoarthritis”, *Clinical Rheumatology* 37 (2018).

**9** *“A heavy resistance training programme, twice weekly for six weeks or longer, has been shown to improve running performance and reduce injury risk.”* J. B. Lauenstein et al., “The effectiveness of exercise interventions to prevent sports injuries”, *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 48 (2014).

## RUNNING ANATOMY

**24** *“A larger Q-angle has been associated with an increased injury risk, and in particular to patellofemoral pain, but research does not support this link.”* G.P. Almeida et al., “Q-angle in patellofemoral pain: relationship with dynamic knee valgus, hip abductor torque, pain and function”, *Revista Brasileira de Ortopedia* 51 (2016).

N.E. Lankhorst, S.M. Bierma-Zeinstra, M. van Middelkoop, “Risk factors for patellofemoral pain syndrome”, *Journal of Orthopaedic & Sports Physical Therapy* 42 (2012).

E. Pappas, W.M. Wong-Tom, “Prospective predictors of patellofemoral pain syndrome”, *Sports Health* 4 (2012).

**30** *“A well-functioning core allows you to control your trunk over your planted leg, maximizing the production, transfer, and control of force and motion to your lower limbs.”* W. B. Kibler et al., “The role of core stability in athletic function”, *Sports Medicine* 36 (2006).

**31** *“Running has been shown to improve the health of the intervertebral discs.”* D.L. Belavy et al., “Running exercise strengthens the intervertebral disc”, *Scientific Reports* 7 (2017).

**46** *“Some studies have linked the vertical GRF loading rate with injury, while others have found associations between injury and the braking (anterior-posterior) force.”* H. van der Worp et al., “Do runners who suffer injuries have higher vertical ground reaction forces than those who remain injury-free?”, *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 50 (2016).

C. Napier et al., “Kinetic risk factors of running-related injuries in female recreational runners”, *Scand J Med Sci Sports* 28 (2018).

**50** *“As little as 10 days training in the heat has been shown to boost VO<sub>2</sub> max values by 5 per cent.”* S. Lorenzo et al., “Heat acclimation improves exercise performance”, *Journal of Applied Physiology* 109 (2010).

*“Running economy improves while drafting behind someone, especially when running into a headwind.”* I. Shinichiro, “Aerodynamic Effects by Marathon Pacemakers on a Main Runner”, *Transactions of the Japan Society of Mechanical Engineers, Part B* 73 (2007).

C.T. Davies, “Effects of wind assistance and resistance on the forward motion of a runner”, *Journal of applied physiology: respiratory, environmental and exercise physiology* 48 (1980).

**51** *“Even exposure to high levels of traffic-related pollution does not outweigh the beneficial effects of physical activity.”* Z.J. Andersen, A. de Nazelle, M.A. Mendez et al., “A study of the combined effects of physical activity and air pollution on mortality in elderly urban residents”, *Environmental Health Perspectives* 123 (2015).

## PREVENTING INJURY

**54** *“Improving your running form may help to protect against injury.”* Z.Y.S. Chan, J.H. Zhang, I.P.H. Au et al., “Gait Retraining for the Reduction of Injury Occurrence in Novice Distance Runners: 1-Year Follow-up of a Randomized Controlled Trial”, *American Journal of Sports Medicine* 46 (2018).

**64** *“Stride parameters and footstrike patterns remained unchanged after a six-month transition to minimalist footwear... there are also conflicting findings on the effect of minimalist shoes on loading rates.”* J.T. Fuller, D. Thewlis, M.D. Tsiros et al., “Longer-term effects of minimalist shoes on running performance, strength and bone density: a 20-week follow-up study”, *European Journal of Sport Science* (2018).

J.P. Warne, A.H. Gruber AH, “Transitioning to minimal footwear: a systematic review of methods and future clinical recommendations”, *Sports Medicine* 3 (2017).

**65** *“Females are more prone to knee injuries and males suffer more ankle, foot, and shin injuries.”* P. Francis, C. Whatman, K. Sheerin K et al., “The Proportion of Lower Limb Running Injuries by Gender, Anatomical Location and Specific Pathology”, *Journal of Sports Science and Medicine* 18 (2019).

**72** *“The notions that a rearfoot strike increases injury risk and that a forefoot strike is more economical have both been refuted by recent research.”* J. Hamill and A.H. Gruber, “Is changing footstrike pattern beneficial to runners?”, *J Sport Health Sci* 6 (2017).

**73** "Contralateral pelvic drop was the most important variable for running-related injuries." C. Braham C, S. J. Preece, N. Gill et al., "Is There a Pathological Gait Associated With Common Soft Tissue Running Injuries?", *American Journal of Sports Medicine* 46 (2018).

## STRENGTH EXERCISES

**97** "Strength training has a beneficial effect not just on injury risk, but also on performance." B. R. Rønnestad et al., "Optimizing strength training for running and cycling endurance performance", *Scand J Med Sci Sports* 24 (2014).

**102** "The foot provides up to 17 per cent of the energy required to power a stride." L. A. Kelly et al., "Intrinsic foot muscles contribute to elastic energy storage and return in the human foot", *Journal of Applied Physiology* 126 (2019).

**116** "Approximately one in five people with acute ankle sprains go on to develop chronic ankle instability." O.A. Al-Mohrej et al., "Chronic ankle instability: Current perspectives", *Avicenna Journal of Medicine* 6 (2016).

**128** "The degree of anterior pelvic tilt during running affects the amount of hip extension achieved in toe-off." A.G. Schache et al., "Relation of anterior pelvic tilt during running to clinical and kinematic measures of hip extension", *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 34 (2000).

**152** "Long-distance running does not decrease the risk for stress fracture" P. Mustajoki et al., "Calcium metabolism, physical activity and stress fractures", *The Lancet* 322 (1983).

A. Swissa et al., "The effect of pretraining sports activity on the incidence of stress fractures among military recruits", *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research* 245 (1989).

M. Fredericson, J. Ngo, and K. Cobb, "Effects of ball sports on future risk of stress fractures in runners", *Clinical Journal of Sports Medicine* 15 (2005).

"Exercises that rapidly subject the body to high loads, such as hopping or jumping off a box are recommended to stiffen bone and reduce stress fracture risk." C. Milgrom et al., "Using Bone's Adaptation Ability to Lower the Incidence of Stress Fractures", *American Journal of Sports Medicine* 28 (2000).

## HOW TO TRAIN

**168** "Lactate threshold can be measured in a lab, but another simple way is to use the RPE scale." J.L. Dantas et al., "Detection of the lactate threshold in runners: what is the ideal speed to start an incremental test?", *Journal of Human Kinetics* 45 (2015).

**170** "Listening to fast-paced music, can help push your body further while your brain is occupied." J. Waterhouse, P. Hudson, B. Edwards, "Effects of music tempo upon submaximal cycling performance", *Scand J Med Sci Sports* 20 (2010).

**171** "When things get tough, telling yourself "I can do this" or "I can work through the pain" can improve your race performance." A.W. Blanchfield, J. Hardy, H.M. De Morree et al., "Talking yourself out of exhaustion: the effects of self-talk on endurance performance", *Medicine & Science in Sports & Exercise* 46 (2014).

**175** "Although evidence suggests that it does not increase blood flow or help with removal of metabolic waste products (both often said to be benefits of massage), the positive psychological effects of massage are consistently reported in scientific studies."

O. Dupuy et al., "An Evidence-Based Approach for Choosing Post-exercise Recovery Techniques to Reduce Markers of Muscle Damage, Soreness, Fatigue, and Inflammation", *Frontiers in Physiology* (2018).

"Proper sleep hygiene can enhance sleep quality and quantity." S.L. Halson et al., "Monitoring training load to understand fatigue in athletes", *Sports Medicine* 44 (2014).

**182** "Physiologically, these workouts increase the oxygen uptake in a higher percentage of muscle fibres, accelerating turnover by engaging first the slow-twitch muscle fibres and then the fast-twitch fibres in the later stages of the run." R. Canova, *Marathon Training: A Scientific Approach*, IAF, 1999 (p.51).

**183** "The slow-twitch muscles that are activated in the slower sections clear the lactate build-up, improving your muscles' ability to use lactate as fuel." R. Canova, *Marathon Training: A Scientific Approach*, IAF, 1999 (p.53).

"Being able to keep the pace of the recoveries as close to the fast pace as possible, or to decrease their duration, indicates that your muscles have improved ability to clear lactate." R. Canova, *Marathon Training: A Scientific Approach*, IAF, 1999 (p.52).

**185** "Marathoners with fast 5 km and 10 km race times will be better served with training that is closer to lactate threshold." R. Canova, *Marathon Training: A Scientific Approach*, IAF, 1999 (pp.60–62).

**210** "Gastrointestinal complaints affect up to 70 per cent of long-distance runners." H.P. Peters et al., "Gastrointestinal symptoms in long-distance runners, cyclists, and triathletes: prevalence, medication, and etiology", *The American Journal of Gastroenterology* 96 (1999).

**211** "Drinking to thirst is still your best strategy rather than overhydrating before and during your race." E.D.B. Goulet, M.D. Hoffman, "Impact of Ad Libitum Versus Programmed Drinking on Endurance Performance", *Sports Medicine* 49 (2019).

**213** "Physiology and metabolism change after approximately 90 minutes of running" I.E. Clark et al., "Dynamics of the power-duration relationship during prolonged endurance exercise and influence of carbohydrate ingestion", *Journal of Applied Physiology* 127 (2019).

## ABOUT THE AUTHORS

**Chris Napier** is a clinician, a researcher specialising in running injury prevention, and a keen runner. He is co-owner of Restore Physiotherapy, a private practice in Vancouver, Canada, and a Clinical Assistant Professor in the Department of Physical Therapy at the University of British Columbia (UBC). He is a physiotherapist with Athletics Canada, and has worked with Commonwealth, Pan Am, Olympic, and World Championship teams. As a runner, he earned a silver medal at the Canadian Junior Track & Field Championships in 1996 and a bronze medal at the Canadian University Track & Field Championships in 1997 in the middle distances. Having moved up to the marathon in 2010, he has enjoyed chipping away at his personal best over the years, with the help of his coach and co-author, Jerry Ziak.

**Jerry Ziak** has been a competitive distance runner since 1986, a coach since 2005, and co-owner of the running speciality store Forerunners North Shore, Vancouver, since 2013. His competitive running career began over cross country and on the track, where he specialized in middle distances ranging from 800m to 10,000m. He ran for Auburn University in Alabama, Boise State University in Idaho, and the University of Victoria in British Columbia before settling down at the University of British Columbia. He used this varied experience to self-coach himself over longer distances, ultimately achieving a time of 2:17:24 for the marathon. He also began to coach high school cross country and track as well as half marathon and marathon clinics. He continues to compete over a range of distances into his forties and enjoys sharing his knowledge and passion for the sport via his store, his running clinics, and online coaching.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

### Authors' acknowledgements

**Chris** – I owe a great deal of thanks to many people in my life for making this book possible. To Kate, Bella, and Roewan for your continual support. To my mother, who still inspires me by winning her age group, and to my late father, who first advised me on the “sit and kick” strategy. To my many coaches over the years—especially my co-author and friend, Jerry Ziak—whom I have learned from immensely. To my friends and peers—Paul Blazey, Lara Boyd, and Tara Klassen—who helped in proofreading, editing, and advising. And to the editorial team at DK, who were an absolute pleasure to work with: Salima, Alastair, Clare, Tia, Arran, and many more.

**Jerry** – I would like to thank my family for their ongoing support of my passion for running. I am also indebted to all my former

coaches and particularly to my childhood coach and lifelong friend, Darren Skuja, who ignited my love for the sport at a young age.

**Publisher's acknowledgements:** DK would like to thank Mark Lloyd and Karen Constanti for additional design, Constance Novis for proofreading, Ruth Ellis for indexing, and Myriam Megharbi for invaluable help with picture rights clearance.

**Picture credits:** The publisher would like to thank the following for their kind permission to reproduce their photographs:  
(Key: a-above; b-below/bottom; c-centre; f-far; l-left; r-right; t-top)

**16 Science Photo Library:** Professors P.M. Motta, P.M. Andrews, K.R. Porter & J. Vial (clb). **27 Stuart Hinds:** Based the figure “Types of FAI (Femoral Acetabular Impingement)” (br). **32 Science Photo Library:** Steve Gschmeissner (cb); Professor P.M. Motta & E. Vizza (crb). **33 Science Photo Library:** Professors P. Motta & T. Naguro (clb). **34 Science Photo Library:** CNRI (cla); Ikelos GmbH / Dr. Christopher B. Jackson (clb). **35 Based on fig.7 from Introduction to Exercise Science by Stanley P. Brown (Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000):** (bl). **50 Practically Science:** Based on a figure by Eugene Douglass and Chad Miller from “The Science of Drafting” (bl). **51 The Conversation:** Based on The Impact of altitude on oxygen levels graph by Brendan Scott (b). **55 Journal of Sports Science and Medicine:** Based on fig. 2, 3 and 4 from “The Proportion of Lower Limb Running Injuries by Gender, Anatomical Location and Specific Pathology: A Systematic Review.” Francis, Peter et al. Journal of sports science & medicine vol. 18,1 21–31. 11 Feb. 2019 (r/graph). **72 Springer Nature:** Based on fig. 1(a) and 1(c) from Foot strike patterns and collision forces in habitually barefoot versus shod runners. Lieberman DE, Venkadesan M, Werbel WA, Daoud AI, D'Andrea S, Davis IS, Mang'eni RO & Pitsiladis Y. Nature 463, 531-535 (2010), DOI: 10.1038/nature08723 (b). **147 Data based on fig. from Clinical Biomechanics of the Spine by A. A. White and M. M. Panjabi (Philadelphia: Lippincott, 1978):** (t). **159 © The Running Clinic:** Based on a diagram by The Running Clinic (t). **164 McMillan Running:** data generated by McMillan Running Calculator - mcmillanrunning.com. **170–171 Springer Science and Bus Media B V:** Based on fig.1 in “Do we really need a central governor to explain brain regulation of exercise performance?” Marcora, Samuele (2008). European journal of applied physiology. 104. 929-31; author reply 933. DOI: 10.1007/s00421-008-0818-3. / Copyright Clearance Center - Rightslink (b). **172 University of Colorado Colorado Springs:** Based on The Athlete's Plates developed by Meyer, NL with UCCS' Sport Nutrition Graduate Program in collaboration with the US Olympic Committee's (USOC) Food and Nutrition Services (b).

All other images © **Dorling Kindersley**  
For further information see: [www.dkimages.com](http://www.dkimages.com)